

IBM DS8000 Encryption for Data at Rest, Transparent Cloud Tiering, and Endpoint Security (DS8000 Release 10.0)

Bert Dufrasne

Gregg Arquero

Rinkesh Bansal

Tony Eriksson

Michael Frankenberg

Peter Kimmel

Aditi Prasad

Andreas Reinhardt



Security

Storage



IBM Redbooks

**IBM DS8000 Encryption for Data at Rest, Transparent
Cloud Tiering, and Endpoint Security**

November 2025

Note: Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page vii.

Twelfth Edition (November 2025)

This edition applies to the IBM DS8000 Release 10.0.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2014, 2025. All rights reserved.

Note to U.S. Government Users Restricted Rights -- Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Notices	vii
Trademarks	viii
Preface	ix
Authors	ix
Now you can become a published author, too!	xi
Comments welcome	xii
Stay connected to IBM Redbooks	xii
Summary of changes	xiii
November 2025, Twelfth Edition	xiii
Chapter 1. Encryption overview	1
1.1 Business context	3
1.1.1 Threats and security challenges	3
1.1.2 Data-at-rest encryption	4
1.1.3 Transparent Cloud Tiering encryption	5
1.1.4 IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security	6
1.2 Encryption concepts and terminology	8
1.2.1 Symmetric key encryption	8
1.2.2 Asymmetric key encryption	9
1.2.3 Hybrid encryption	12
1.2.4 Communication protocols: IBM Proprietary Protocol, SSL/TLS 1.3, and Key Management Interoperability Protocol	12
1.3 Encryption challenges	13
Chapter 2. External key managers	17
2.1 External key managers for IBM DS8000 systems	18
2.2 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager	18
2.2.1 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2	19
2.2.2 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Traditional Edition	20
2.2.3 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition	20
2.2.4 Traditional and Container Edition comparison	21
2.2.5 Key serving	21
2.2.6 Protecting IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager data	22
2.3 IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS	23
2.3.1 IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS components	23
2.3.2 Functions performed by IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS	24
2.3.3 Preventing a deadlock situation	25
2.3.4 Installing the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS and keystores	25
2.4 IBM Security Guardium Data Encryption 5.0	28
2.5 Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure	29
2.6 Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager	29
2.7 Thales CipherTrust Manager	29
Chapter 3. IBM DS8000 encryption mechanisms	31
3.1 DS8000 data-at-rest encryption	32
3.2 Key management for IBM Proprietary Protocol with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager	34

3.3	Key management by using KMIP	45
3.4	Encryption deadlock	47
3.5	Working with a recovery key	49
3.5.1	Recovery key management	50
3.5.2	Disabling or enabling a recovery key	53
3.6	Dual key server support (IBM Proprietary Protocol only)	54
3.7	DS8000 TCT encryption key management by using KMIP	56
3.8	DS8000 endpoint encryption key management by using KMIP	60
3.8.1	IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security settings and policies	65
Chapter 4.	Planning and guidelines for IBM DS8000 encryption	67
4.1	About certificates	68
4.2	Planning and implementation process flow	68
4.3	Encryption-capable DS8000 ordering and configuration	69
4.3.1	Local encryption ordering and configuration	69
4.3.2	External encryption ordering and configuration	70
4.4	Licensing	71
4.4.1	Local encryption	71
4.4.2	External encryption	71
4.5	Best practices for external encryption in storage environments	72
4.5.1	Using LDAP authentication	72
4.5.2	Availability	73
4.5.3	Encryption deadlock prevention	73
4.6	Multiple key managers for redundancy	76
Chapter 5.	Implementing IBM DS8000 encryption	79
5.1	Installing IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2	80
5.2	Migrating IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager	81
5.3	Setting up external key managers	81
5.3.1	Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.x	81
5.3.2	Creating an TLS/KMIP server certificate	84
5.3.3	Configuring the Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure platform	111
5.3.4	Configuring Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager	128
5.3.5	Importing the CA certificate chain into Vormetric DSM	135
5.3.6	Configuring Thales CipherTrust Manager	140
5.4	Configuring data-at-rest	150
5.4.1	Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using IBM Proprietary Protocol	150
5.4.2	Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using KMIP	157
5.4.3	DS8000 configuration for data-at-rest encryption by using DS GUI	157
5.4.4	DS8000 CLI configuration for data-at-rest encryption	171
5.4.5	IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager authentication mechanisms	178
5.5	Configuration for TCT encryption	181
5.5.1	Setting up TCT encryption	181
5.6	IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration	191
5.6.1	DS8000 GUI configuration for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security	191
5.6.2	DS8000 CLI configuration for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security	194
5.7	Data-at-rest encryption and Copy Services functions	196
5.8	NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers	196
5.9	Migrating certificates	196
5.9.1	Migrating from a Gen 2 to a Gen 3 certificate for encryption	196
5.10	Using a custom-generated Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate	205

5.10.1 Configuring a custom certificate by using the DS GUI	205
5.10.2 Configuring a custom certificate by using DS CLI.	207
Chapter 6. Maintaining the IBM DS8000 encryption environment	209
6.1 Rekeying the data key for data-at-rest encryption	210
6.1.1 Rekeying the data key when the IBM Proprietary Protocol is used	210
6.1.2 Rekeying the data key when the KMIP protocol is used.	215
6.2 Recovery key usage and maintenance	217
6.2.1 Validating or testing a recovery key	217
6.2.2 Using the recovery key in an emergency-deadlock situation (recovery action) .	219
6.2.3 Rekeying the recovery key	227
6.2.4 Deleting or deconfiguring a recovery key	232
6.3 Recovery key state summary	234
Chapter 7. Local key management	235
7.1 Overview	236
7.1.1 Concept and design	237
7.2 Implementing local encryption.	241
7.2.1 Preparing for local encryption	242
7.2.2 Implementing local encryption.	243
Abbreviations and acronyms	247
Related publications	249
IBM Redbooks	249
Other publications	249
Online resources	249
Help from IBM	249

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the US. This material might be available from IBM in other languages. However, you may be required to own a copy of the product or product version in that language in order to access it.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, MD-NC119, Armonk, NY 10504-1785, US

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you provide in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

The performance data and client examples cited are presented for illustrative purposes only. Actual performance results may vary depending on specific configurations and operating conditions.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

Statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to actual people or business enterprises is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation, registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the web at “Copyright and trademark information” at <http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml>

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation, and might also be trademarks or registered trademarks in other countries.

AIX®	IBM®	Redbooks®
DB2®	IBM FlashSystem®	Redbooks (logo)  ®
Db2®	IBM Security®	Spectrum Fusion™
DS8000®	IBM Z®	Tivoli®
FICON®	Passport Advantage®	WebSphere®
FlashCopy®	POWER®	z/OS®
Guardium®	Power9®	z15®
HyperSwap®	RACF®	

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

The registered trademark Linux® is used pursuant to a sublicense from the Linux Foundation, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the mark on a worldwide basis.

LTO, Ultrium, the LTO Logo and the Ultrium logo are trademarks of HP, IBM Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java, and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Red Hat, OpenShift, are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Preface

The IBM DS8000® supports encryption-capable drives. They are used with key management services (local or external) to allow encryption for data-at-rest (DAR). The use of encryption technology involves several considerations that are critical for you to understand to maintain the security and accessibility of encrypted data.

This edition of this IBM Redpaper publication focuses on IBM Security® Guardium® Key Lifecycle Manager with the DS8000 Release 10.0 code or later and updated DS GUI for encryption functions.

The DS8000 Release 9.2 code introduced support for local key management for DAR encryption and is described in Chapter 7, “Local key management” on page 235.

Important: Failure to follow the requirements that are described in this publication can result in an encryption deadlock.

The DS8000 system supports Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT) data object encryption. With TCT encryption, data is encrypted before it is transmitted to the cloud. The data remains encrypted in cloud storage and is decrypted after it is transmitted back to the IBM DS8000.

The DS8000 system also supports Fibre Channel Endpoint Security when communicating with IBM z15® and newer IBM Z® servers, which includes encryption of data that is in-flight, and link authentication.

Authors

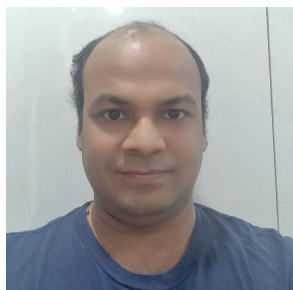
This paper was produced by a team of specialists from around the world.



Bert Dufrasne is an IBM Certified Consulting IT Specialist and Project Leader for IBM System Storage disk and flash products at the ITSO, San Jose Center. He has worked at IBM® in various IT areas. Bert has written many IBM Redbooks® publications and developed and taught technical workshops. Before joining the ITSO, he worked for IBM Global Services as an Application Architect in the retail, banking, telecommunication, and healthcare industries. He holds a master's degree in Electrical Engineering.



Gregg Arquero is an Advisory Software Engineer at IBM. He joined IBM in 2015 working with the IBM z/OS® ICSF team. During his time on the ICSF team, he designed and developed several key crypto solutions on IBM Z, such as early ICSF availability at initial program load (IPL), Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)-DUKPT support, and Quantum-safe algorithm support. He also is an avid innovator with over a dozen patents granted by the USPTO. He received his bachelor's degree in Computer Science from Binghamton University.



Rinkesh Bansal is a Senior Development and Release Manager for Encryption and Key Management products in IBM. He is an expert of the Key Management domain and has more than 18 years of experience. He joined IBM in 2009, working with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager team since 2012. His experience includes roles as an installation package developer, test engineer, test lead, automation lead, Project Manager, and Release Manager. Currently, he manages the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager development team. He is a passionate innovator with 10 patents and an enthusiastic speaker at various conferences, colleges, and schools.



Tony Eriksson works at IBM Systems Lab Services Nordic, based in Stockholm, Sweden. He joined IBM in 1988 as a mainframe IBM service representative. From 1999, he has worked as a product specialist on enterprise storage solutions, including IBM DS8000, IBM SAN Volume Controller, and storage area network (SAN) products. In 2014, he joined an IBM Business Partner as a pre-sales and implementation consultant, mainly migrating to IBM storage products. In 2019, he joined IBM Systems Lab Services Nordic working close with the Swedish technical sales team for storage solutions. He holds a Technical College Graduation in Electrical Engineering.



Michael Frankenberg is a Certified IT Specialist in Germany and joined IBM in 1995. With more than twenty-five years of experience in high-end storage he works in Technical Sales Support for EMEA. His area of expertise includes performance analysis, establishing high availability and disaster recovery (HADR) solutions and implementation of IBM Storage Systems. He supports the introduction of new products and provides advice for IBM Business Partners, Technical Sales, and customers. He holds a degree in Electrical Engineering / Information Technology from University of Applied Sciences Bochum, Germany



Peter Kimmel is a Senior Platform Engineer for Enterprise Storage in the IBM EMEA Client Engineering team Frankfurt, Germany. He joined IBM Storage in 1999, and since then has worked with all DS8000 generations, with a focus on architecture and performance. Peter has co-authored several DS8000 IBM publications. He holds a Diploma (MSc) degree in physics from the University of Kaiserslautern.



Aditi Prasad is an Advisory Software Engineer at IBM. She joined IBM in 2008 and is working with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager team since 2012. She is the Level 3 support lead for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. She has approximately 13 years of experience with more than 7 years in Security Domain. She holds a Masters degree in Computer Science from Pune University, India.



Andreas Reinhardt is an IBM Certified Specialist for high-end disk systems in Frankfurt, Germany and has worked in various IT areas at IBM for more than 20 years. Andreas works for IBM Systems and started as an IBM System Service Representative. He was a member of the DS8000 SME team. Later he moved to the IBM FlashSystem® SME team. Andreas now works for IBM Spectrum Fusion™ support and still supports the IBM EMEA Lab Services department with encryption implementation services.

Thanks to the following people for their contributions to this project:

Igor Popov

DS8000 Development Microcode Development, IBM US

Jacob Sheppard

DS8000 Development Senior Engineer, IBM US

Samantha Utter

DS8000 Development, IBM US

Mike Stenson

Team lead for the DS8000 development field screen team, IBM US

Now you can become a published author, too!

Here's an opportunity to spotlight your skills, grow your career, and become a published author—all at the same time! Join an IBM Redbooks residency project and help write a book in your area of expertise, while honing your experience using leading-edge technologies. Your efforts will help to increase product acceptance and customer satisfaction, as you expand your network of technical contacts and relationships. Residencies run from two to six weeks in length, and you can participate either in person or as a remote resident working from your home base.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at:

ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html

Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our papers to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this paper or other IBM Redbooks publications in one of the following ways:

- Use the online **Contact us** review Redbooks form found at:

ibm.com/redbooks

- Send your comments in an email to:

redbooks@us.ibm.com

- Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, IBM Redbooks
Dept. HYTD Mail Station P099
2455 South Road
Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400

Stay connected to IBM Redbooks

- Find us on LinkedIn:

<http://www.linkedin.com/groups?home=&gid=2130806>

- Explore new Redbooks publications, residencies, and workshops with the IBM Redbooks weekly newsletter:

<https://www.redbooks.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/subscribe?OpenForm>

- Stay current on recent Redbooks publications with RSS Feeds:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/rss.html>

Summary of changes

This section describes the technical changes that are made in this edition of the paper and in previous editions. This edition might also include minor corrections and editorial changes that are not identified.

November 2025, Twelfth Edition

This revision includes the following new and changed information.

Changed information

- ▶ Chapter 5 “Implementing IBM DS8000 encryption” was updated for DS8000 Release 10.0.
- ▶ Updated SGKLM version from 4.1 to 4.2
- ▶ Updated TLS version from 1.2 to 1.3
- ▶ Chapter 7 “Local key management” was updated for DS8000 Release 10.0.
- ▶ Clarified SGKLM configuration models:
 - Standalone (manual synchronization via backup and restore)
 - Multi-Master (continuous availability across multiple servers)
 - Master-Clone with Incremental Replication (recommended when using KMIP for Data-at-Rest (DAR) and Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT).)
- ▶ Added DS8000 requirements for KMIP.
- ▶ Replaced “remote replication” with “Master-Clone with Incremental Replication”.
- ▶ Explicitly noted that backup/restore is not supported in KMIP environments or when using TCT encryption.



Encryption overview

The IBM DS8000 supports hardware-level, self-encrypting drives. Combined with key management software (external or local), the DS8000 can securely encrypt data-at-rest (DAR), while also offering a simple, cost-effective solution for securely erasing any disk or flash drive that is being retired or repurposed (cryptographic erasure).

Starting with DS8000 Release 8.5, the Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT) feature allows encryption before data is transmitted to the cloud.

Starting with Release 9.1, the DS8000 supports encryption for host data communication with IBM Z (IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security). For more information about this feature, see *IBM Storage DS8900F Architecture and Implementation: Updated for Release 9.3.2*, SG24-8456.

Starting with Release 9.2, the DS8000 supports two options for DAR encryption:

- ▶ With external key servers (external encryption)
- ▶ Without external key servers (local encryption)

Important: DAR encryption without external key servers does not require a specific license, but the option to use this feature must be selected during the initial order process of the DS8000. It cannot be activated by way of a license function later. An upgrade to Release 9.2 from a previous version does not enable the availability of local encryption for the DS8000.

Both methods use the same encryption algorithms. They also provide as much data security. However, encryption without external key servers offers a lower level of security for the system than encryption with external key servers does.

DAR encryption without external key servers (local encryption) is a chargeable feature. With the DS8000 R9.2, you can order Feature Code 0405 (Local Key Manager (LKM) for encryption for DAR) for a fee.

Encryption must not be deployed without careful planning and a thorough understanding of encryption techniques and encryption management products.

Important: Improper handling or implementation of encryption with key servers for DAR and for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security with IBM Z can result in a permanent encryption deadlock, which is mostly equivalent to the permanent loss of all encrypted data that a key server manages, as described in 3.4, “Encryption deadlock” on page 47.

To gain access to data, even in a deadlock situation, the DS8000 offers a recovery key (RK) implementation for DAR encryption. The RK can be set only as the first activity when a DS8000 is set up. The RK can be configured as disabled in those environments where you do not want to maintain an RK. With Local Key Encryption, the RK is and must remain disabled.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 1.1, “Business context” on page 3
- ▶ 1.2, “Encryption concepts and terminology” on page 8
- ▶ 1.3, “Encryption challenges” on page 13

1.1 Business context

Businesses need tools to protect against the known threats, but also guard against as yet unknown threats. Effective threat and vulnerability management must be proactive rather than reactive, preventing problems rather than responding to them. To be efficient and effective, businesses must address prevention, detection, and compliance in an integrated way.

1.1.1 Threats and security challenges

Figure 1-1 shows how threats and challenges add to the complexity and the cost of running your business.

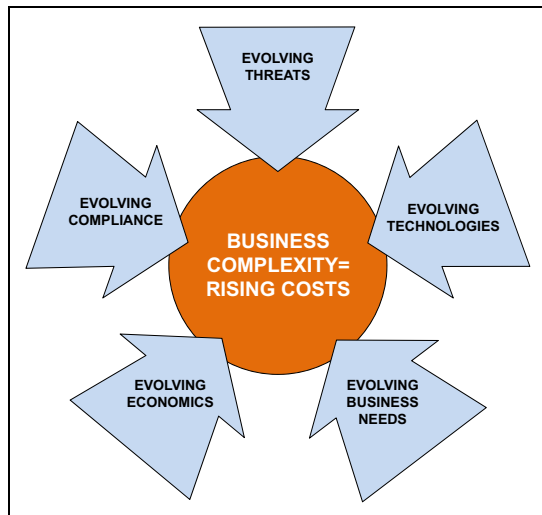


Figure 1-1 Business complexity

Companies face the following threats and security challenges:

- ▶ Increasing number and sophistication of threats. Businesses face more than just viruses and worms. Be able to defend against all threats rather than respond only to intrusions.
- ▶ Prevention of data breaches and inappropriate data disclosure, and ensuring no impact on business and productivity.
- ▶ Intrusions that affect the bottom line in both client confidence and business productivity. Security breaches can destroy your brand image and affect your critical business processes.
- ▶ Growing demand for regulatory compliance and reporting. Meet a growing number of compliance initiatives without diverting resources from core activities.
- ▶ Protecting your data and maintaining appropriate levels of access.
- ▶ Security issues are both internal *and* external. How do you protect against the well-intentioned employee who mishandles information, and the malicious outsider?
- ▶ Having your business comply with a growing number of corporate standards and government regulations. You must have tools that can document the status of your application security.
- ▶ Growing number of regulatory mandates. Prove that your physical assets are secure.

1.1.2 Data-at-rest encryption

In particular, organizations experience a continued push to minimize the risks of data breaches. There is a new focus on privacy management tools with the capability to mask data. This focus reinforces the need for cryptography, and subsequent demand to simplify the complexity of the key-based algorithms and management of keys throughout the lifecycle.

A significant concern is when disk drives leave the company premises, which usually happens when a disk drive fails and the IBM technician replaces it with a new drive. Often, the drive is not damaged and data can still be accessed. IBM has a procedure to delete all data on the drive. However, this task is no longer under the control of the client. Some clients buy back the drives and destroy them themselves. This procedure can be expensive. Another concern is when the whole DS8000 is returned to IBM. The IBM technician erases all data, but this step is not sufficient for some clients. IBM offers a service (IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite) to erase all data (several passes) in compliance with the American Department of Defense regulations (DoD 5220.20-M).

All of these concerns become obsolete when data on the drives is encrypted. Without a decryption key, the data is unreadable.

What should you encrypt and what should you not encrypt? Encrypt everything that you can encrypt and still be able to recover data if there is a disaster. If system data can be separated from application data, encrypting everything with no performance impact is simpler than choosing which data falls into which legislation for encryption, and trying to keep current on the dynamic privacy rights rules and regulations.

Before using any encryption technology, understanding the encryption concepts and the requirements to maintain the security and the accessibility of the encrypted data is essential. You do not want the encryption solution to negatively affect your storage environment and the applications that depend on it. You want an encryption solution that does not degrade application performance or jeopardize your disaster recovery plan. You also need the assurance that encryption does not cause any data loss and that all the appropriate measures are taken to protect and safeguard the encryption keys.

To address these concerns, the DS8000 encryption approach uses drives that include encryption hardware and can perform symmetric encryption and decryption of data with no impact on performance. The drive-based encryption can be combined with or without an enterprise-scale key management infrastructure. That infrastructure is based on IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager or other supported external key managers, which all provide similar capabilities. For more information about encryption with external key servers, see Chapter 2, “External key managers” on page 17.

These security lifecycle management software products help organizations efficiently deploy, back up, restore, and delete keys and certificates securely and consistently. Starting with Release 9.2, the DS8000 also supports encryption for DAR without the need of an external key management infrastructure. For more information about encryption without external key servers, see Chapter 7, “Local key management” on page 235.

Important:

- ▶ The DS8000 provides encryption for data that is at rest on drives. It also allows encryption of data that is transmitted to the cloud when the TCT function is used, and encryption when connecting to an IBM z15 host. If encryption over the network is required, more encryption services must be investigated and deployed for other hosts connectivity or Copy Services traffic.
- ▶ Data encryption is protected by the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithm that uses a 256-bit symmetric encryption key in XTS mode, as defined in the IEEE 1619-2007 standard and NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-38E as XTS-AES-256.

For a successful deployment, following the instructions and guidelines that are outlined in this publication is also imperative. For more information, see [IBM Security](#).

1.1.3 Transparent Cloud Tiering encryption

TCT for IBM DS8000 was introduced to help customers use IBM Z resources more efficiently. Integration with IBM z/OS through DFSMSHsm allows clients to reduce CPU usage by eliminating constraints that are tied to original data migration methodologies.

TCT enables direct data movement from IBM DS8000 to cloud object storage, without the need for data to go through the host. DFSMS communicates with DS8000 through a REST API interface. It issues commands for the DS8000 to move the data directly to and from a public, private, or hybrid cloud.

For more information about TCT, see *IBM DS8000 Transparent Cloud Tiering: DS8000 Release 9.3*, SG24-8381.

Having a storage cloud that uses object storage has several benefits. A storage cloud significantly reduces the complexity of storage systems by simplifying data scaling within a single namespace. The use of high-density, low-cost commodity hardware turns storage clouds into a scalable, cost-efficient storage option.

When data is offloaded to a storage cloud in its original, unencrypted condition, unauthorized access is *not* prevented.

TCT encryption now changes this situation and helps ensure that critical mainframe data is encrypted while it is transferred over the network. It uses the DS8000 internal IBM POWER® servers hardware acceleration with 256-bit AES encryption at full speed, and I/O performance is not affected. The data remains encrypted in the cloud storage and is decrypted when it is transferred back to the DS8000.

If the data set is encrypted by data set-level encryption, DFSMS informs the DS8000, and TCT encryption avoids double encrypting the data.

You can use TCT encryption to offload and decrypt data with any DS8000 storage system. You can also use the same key servers as the system that first encrypted the data. The data remains encrypted, even when it lands on the object storage. Without a decryption key, the data object is unreadable.

In IBM HyperSwap® High Availability and Disaster Recovery scenarios with Metro Mirror (MM) and Global Mirror (GM), all DS8000s must be connected to the same cloud and all must be configured for TCT encryption. The certificates of every DS8000 must be added to the encryption group in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager during setup. This setup is required so that any DS8000 in the encryption group can decrypt data that is migrated from

any other DS8000. Local encryption cannot be used for TCT encryption because the decryption key remains with the DS8000 and is not available to any other external system.

TCT encryption does not require a specific license. It can be used along with or independently from DAR encryption.

Starting with DS8000 R9.2 TCT provides multi-cloud support. Defining multiple cloud network connections allows you to create multiple policies that direct some types of data to a TS7700 object store and other types of data to private or public clouds, along with encryption capability.

1.1.4 IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security

IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is designed to protect data that is transferred over Fibre Channel (FC) storage area networks (SANs) to IBM Z. It consists of the following components:

- ▶ Link authentication
- ▶ Encryption of data in flight (EDIF)

Today, data that is stored and processed in IT systems is one of the core assets of most enterprises or organizations. Losing or exposing data often results in high costs or even irreparable damage. In addition, more regulatory requirements are introduced, which forces organizations to protect the data they store and process and induces severe penalties if requirements are not met or sensitive data is lost or exposed. Thus, organizations are experiencing increased pressure from internal and external sources to protect and govern data.

Data protection features the following main aspects:

- ▶ Protection against loss

Although losing access to data can severely affect an organization's ability to function, such a loss generally has a limited effect on third parties. In the past, most of the efforts of data protection focused on this aspect. Hardware redundancy, back up and restore processes, or disaster recovery solutions are examples of methods that are used here.

- ▶ Protection against unauthorized access and abuse

Losing control of data affects the storing and processing capabilities of an organization and other organizations or persons with which it is interacting. This aspect is gaining significance in recent years because data breaches and abuse are reported more frequently. Here, the most effective methods of protection are access control and encryption.

Starting with the IBM Z z14, IBM introduced the concept of Pervasive Encryption. IBM Z clients should no longer be required to put excessive effort into planning, implementing, and maintaining effective access control and encryption of their data. Pervasive encryption provides the means to encrypt all data at all levels and in all components of the IT infrastructure, without affecting the operation or requiring changes to applications.

Figure 1-2 shows a graphical representation of the layers where encryption can occur.

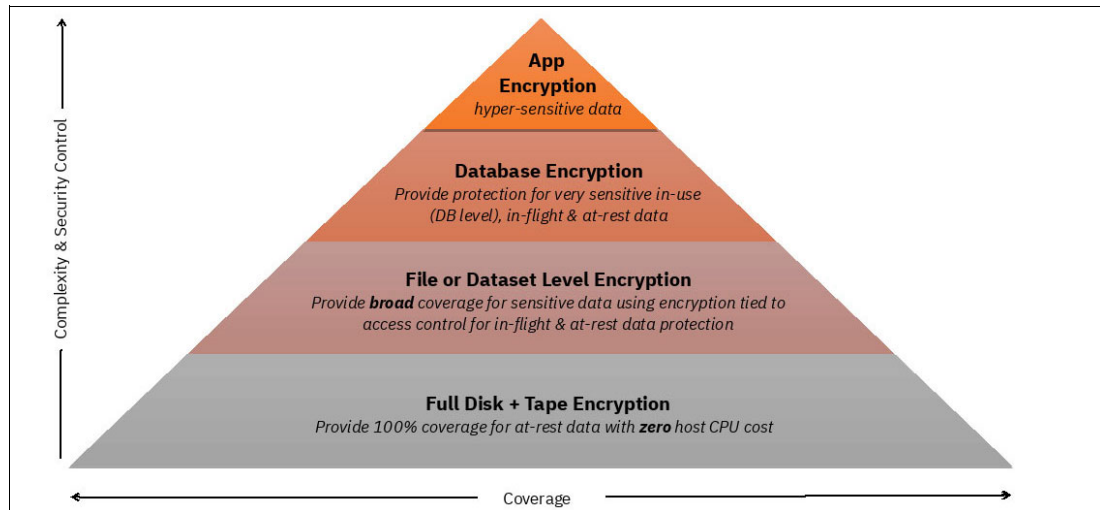


Figure 1-2 IBM Pervasive Encryption pyramid

The width of each layer represents the coverage that can be achieved that is related to overall protection. The vertical positions of the layers represent the granularity of control, but also the complexity of implementation and management. Starting with the top layer, we briefly explain each layer:

- ▶ Application encryption provides encryption and data protection by each individual application. It is highly granular and specific, but also requires the highest efforts because each application needs the necessary encryption capabilities and must be managed individually. It can provide protection of highly sensitive application data, which is not covered by any of the lower levels or if their protection is not sufficient.
- ▶ Database encryption provides the capability to protect key database files and database backup images from inappropriate access. Therefore, it is less granular to manage, but covers only a certain subset of data.
- ▶ File or data set encryption provides broad coverage for sensitive data by using encryption that is tightly integrated with the operating system and managed by policies. It is not apparent to applications and allows for separation of duties within an organization. Security administration can be performed independently of application, database, or storage administration.
- ▶ Disk and tape encryption provide coverage for DAR at the storage infrastructure level. It is an “all or nothing” solution and encrypts DAR within a storage controller without differentiating the type, sensitivity, or importance of data. Therefore, it requires the least organizational effort of all layers with the broadest coverage. It protects against intrusion, tampering, or removal of physical infrastructure.

For more information about Pervasive Encryption, see *Getting Started with z/OS Data Set Encryption*, SG24-8410, and *Getting Started with z/OS Data Set Encryption*, SG24-8410.

For the upper three levels that are shown in the pyramid in Figure 1-2 on page 7, data is encrypted on the host side. Therefore, it is protected at-rest on external storage media and in-flight while being read or written. With conventional disk encryption, data is unprotected if it is outside of the respective storage system.

IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security adds the protection of data in-flight between the IBM Z and the IBM DS8000 storage system. It controls access and encrypts data that is transferred over a SAN.

The IBM Z and the DS8000 must be connected to the same set of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Managers. Local encryption cannot be used for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security because the decryption key remains with the DS8000 and is not available to any other external system.

IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security does not require a specific license. It can be used along with or independently from DAR encryption.

Note: Only data that is transferred between an IBM Z (z15) and IBM DS8900F Storage Systems can be protected with IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

At the time of this writing, data that is in-flight is not protected in the following instances:

- ▶ On PPRC replication links between DS8000 Storage Systems
- ▶ Between an IBM Z system and virtual or physical tape devices

For more information about the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security feature, see *IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for IBM DS8900F and IBM Z*, SG24-8455.

1.2 Encryption concepts and terminology

Encryption transforms data that is unprotected, or *plain text*, into encrypted data, or *ciphertext*, by using a *key*. Without knowledge of the encryption key, the ciphertext cannot be converted back to plain text.

Computer technology enabled increasingly sophisticated encryption algorithms. Working with the US Government National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), IBM invented one of the first computer-based algorithms, Data Encryption Standard (DES), in 1974. Today, several widely used encryption algorithms exist, including 3Key-3DES and the more secure AES for symmetric encryption, Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA), which is commonly used for public keys, and Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) for key derivation functions. There are many more encryption algorithms that are not mentioned here.

1.2.1 Symmetric key encryption

Early encryption methods used the same key to encrypt plain text to generate ciphertext, and to decrypt the ciphertext to regenerate the plain text. Because the same key is used for both encryption and decryption, this method is called *symmetric encryption*. All encryption algorithms that were mentioned use symmetric encryption.

Everyone who obtains knowledge of the key can transform the ciphertext back to plain text. If you want to preserve confidentiality, you must protect your key and keep it a secret. Therefore, symmetric encryption is also called *private* or *secret key encryption*, which is not to be confused with the private key in an asymmetric key system.

Figure 1-3 shows a sample encryption and decryption data flow path. In the figure, the AES_256_ITSO symmetric key is used to encrypt plain text by using the AES encryption algorithm, which yields encrypted data. The decryption of the enciphered text uses the same AES_256_ITSO symmetric key and the AES algorithm to decrypt the data back to its plain text format.

Symmetric key encryption algorithms are faster than asymmetric encryption algorithms, which make symmetric encryption an ideal candidate for encrypting large amounts of data.

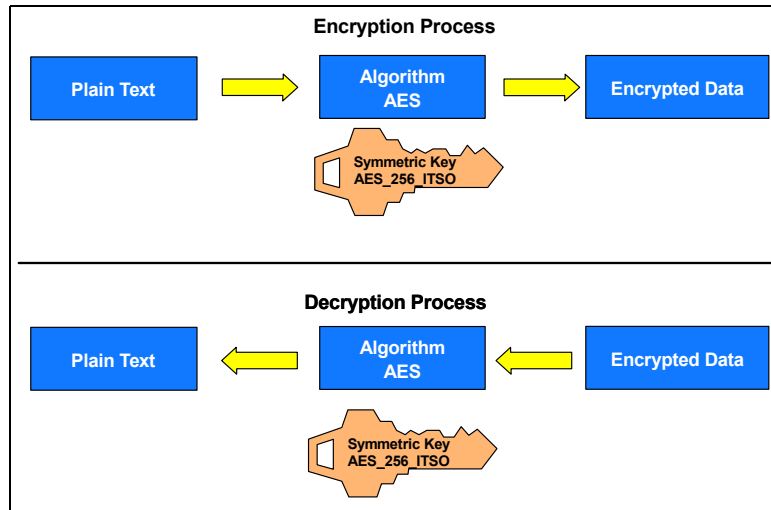


Figure 1-3 Symmetric key encryption

1.2.2 Asymmetric key encryption

In the 1970s, cryptographers invented asymmetric key algorithms for encryption and decryption. Encryption methods that use separate keys for encryption and decryption are called *asymmetric encryption*. Asymmetric encryption addresses certain drawbacks of symmetric encryption, which became more important with computer-based cryptography.

Asymmetric key encryption uses one key for encrypting (*public key*) and one key (*private key*) for decrypting data. Because the key that is used for encrypting a message cannot be used for decrypting, this key does not have to be kept a secret. It can be widely shared and is called a *public key*. Anyone who wants to send secure data to an organization can use its public key. The receiving organization then uses its *private key* to decrypt the data. The private key must always be kept a secret. Because asymmetric encryption uses public/private key pairs, it is also called *public/private key encryption* or *public key encryption*.

Public/private key encryption is widely used on the internet today to secure transactions, including Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS).

To encrypt data requires an algorithm. Today, the RSA algorithm¹ is the most widely used public key technique.

The advantage of asymmetric key encryption is the ability to share secret data without sharing the encryption key. But disadvantages exist too. Asymmetric key encryption is computationally more intensive and slower than symmetric key encryption. In practice, you often use a combination of symmetric and asymmetric encryption. This method is described in 1.2.3, "Hybrid encryption" on page 12. With the DS8000, the IBM solution uses a combination of symmetric and asymmetric encryption methods. This combination (*hybrid encryption*) is prevalent in many security solutions.

Important: The DAR and the TCT encryption solution use only the asymmetric RSA algorithm to encrypt symmetric AES keys that are used for data encryption.

¹ Ronald L. Rivest, Adi Shamir, and Leonard Adleman developed this algorithm in 1977.

Figure 1-4 shows an encryption and decryption data path when using public key encryption.

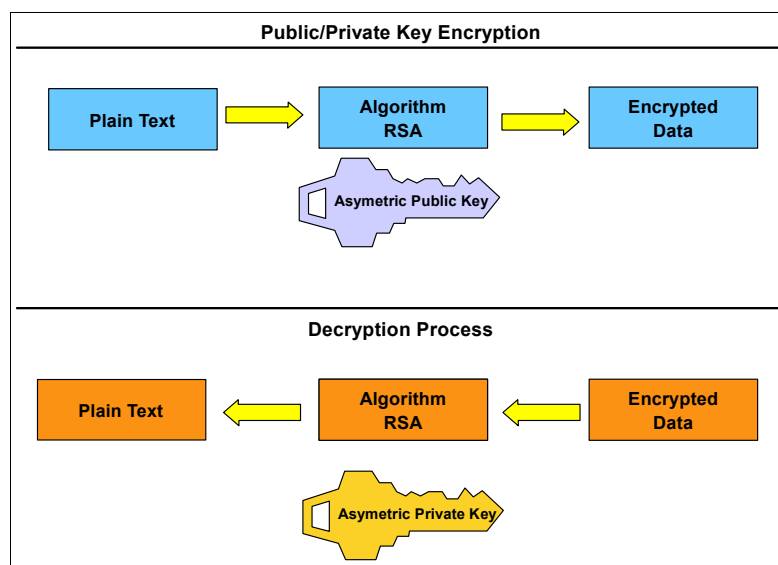


Figure 1-4 Public/private key encryption

Digital signature

You can use public/private key pairs to protect the content of a message and to digitally sign a message. When a digitally signed message is sent, the receiver can be sure that the sender sent it because the receiver can provide proof by using the public key from the sender. In practice, predominantly for efficiency reasons, a hash value of the message is signed rather than the whole message, but the overall procedure is the same.

Note: This section applies to encryption with key servers in place only. It does not apply when encryption without key servers (local key encryption) is in use because no external key exchange occurs.

Figure 1-5 shows how the digital signature is used in the communication between the DS8000 and a key server, such as IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager or other external key managers, by using an asymmetric key pair. It illustrates a mechanism that is used as part of the DS8000 encryption process. The DS8000 has a private key, and the key server has a copy of the DS8000 public key.

The DS8000 sends the key server a message that is encrypted with the DS8000 disk storage system's private key. The key server then uses the DS8000 public key to validate the message that is sent from the DS8000. The key server cannot use the public key to decrypt the encrypted data, but it can, with the DS8000 public key, validate that the message was encrypted with the DS8000 private key. This approach proves to the key server that it is communicating with the DS8000 because only the DS8000 has a copy of its private key. Then, the key server uses the DS8000 public key to encrypt the communication that it wants to protect and sends the data to the DS8000. The DS8000 can use its private key to decrypt the data.

Note: IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager 4.0 and later or other external key managers are a requirement to comply with the NIST SP 800-131a. For more information, see Chapter 2, "External key managers" on page 17.

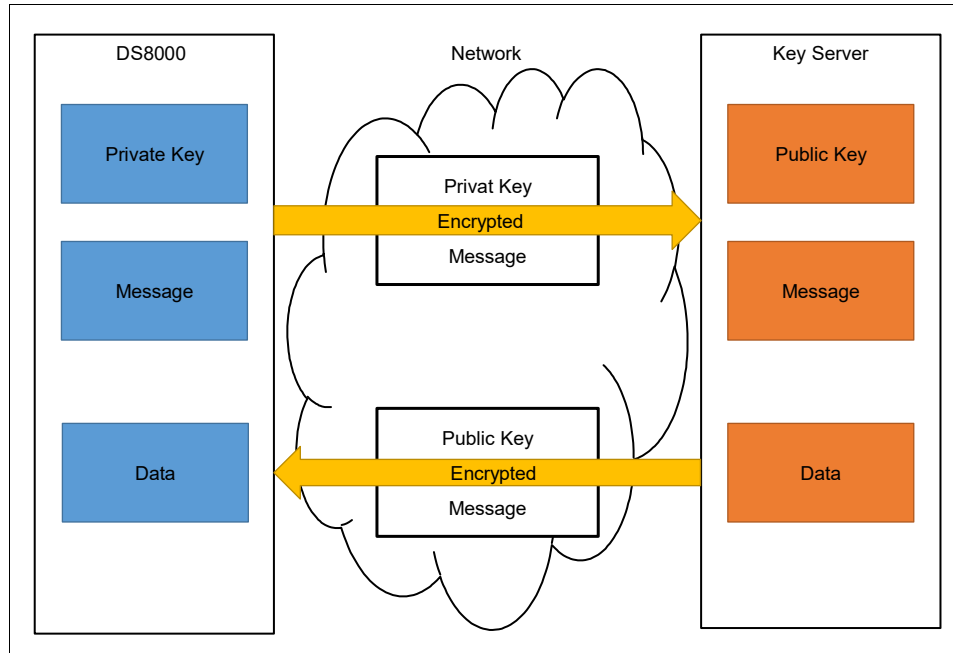


Figure 1-5 Identity verification by using public/private key encryption

Digital certificates

Another possibility is to make sure that the sender can trust the receiver by using a *certificate*, which is signed by a *certificate authority* (CA).

Digital certificates are a way to bind public key information with an identity. The certificates are signed by a CA. If users trust the CA and can verify the CA's signature; then, they also can verify that a specific public key does belong to whomever (a person or an entity) is identified in the certificate.

Note: This section applies to encryption with key servers in place only. It does not apply when encryption without key servers (local key encryption) is in use because no external key exchange occurs.

Part of the information that is stored in a digital certificate includes the following items:

- ▶ Name of the issuer
- ▶ Subject Distinguished Name (DN)
- ▶ Public key belonging to the owner
- ▶ Validity date for the public key
- ▶ Serial number of the digital certificate
- ▶ Digital signature of the issuer

Note: For the DS8000, digital certificates are created and set by manufacturing for each Storage Facility. IBM initially introduced disk encryption on the DS8000 with 80-bit security strength; IBM calls it the Gen 1 certificate.

DS8000 Release 7.2 and later offers 112-bit security strength. IBM calls it the Gen 2 certificate. Any DS8000 that is delivered by manufacturing with Release 8.1 or later *does not* support Gen 1 80-bit security strength certificates.

DS8900F Release 9.0 and later now offers 128-bit to 192-bit security strength, which is the Gen 3 certificate. The DS8900F includes an active Gen 2 certificate and a Gen 3 certificate that is dormant. The Gen 1 certificate no longer exists.

Asymmetric and symmetric key encryption schemes are powerful ways to protect and secure data. For more information about their use with the IBM DS8000 series, see 3.2, “Key management for IBM Proprietary Protocol with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 34 or see 3.8, “DS8000 endpoint encryption key management by using KMIP” on page 60.

1.2.3 Hybrid encryption

In practice, encryption methods often combine symmetric and asymmetric encryption. Thus, the methods can take advantage of fast encryption with symmetric encryption and still securely exchange keys by using asymmetric encryption.

Hybrid methods use a symmetric data key (DK) to encrypt and decrypt data. They do not transfer this symmetric DK in the clear, but use public/private key encryption to encrypt the DK. The recipient can decrypt the encrypted DK and use the DK to encrypt or decrypt a message.

With hybrid encryption methods, you can combine secure and convenient key exchange with fast and efficient encryption of large amounts of data.

The DAR and the TCT encryption solution uses a symmetric AES DK to encrypt and decrypt data. This DK is protected by the asymmetric RSA algorithm and is not available in plain text when the storage device communicates with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager or any other third-party key server, such as Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure (KS). For more information, see Chapter 3, “IBM DS8000 encryption mechanisms” on page 31.

1.2.4 Communication protocols: IBM Proprietary Protocol, SSL/TLS 1.3, and Key Management Interoperability Protocol

This section covers the different protocols that are supported by DS8000 encryption with key servers.

IBM Proprietary Protocol

The DS8000 can support IBM Proprietary Protocol while it communicates with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. It was first developed for tape drives and then, the DS8000 incorporated the IBM Proprietary Protocol into its earliest encryption version and continues to support it. The IBM Proprietary Protocol is wrapped with TLS when it communicates with the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager. IBM Proprietary Protocol is available for DAR encryption only.

Important: TCT encryption and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security do *not* support the IBM Proprietary Protocol.

Secure Sockets Layer/Transport Layer Security 1.2

For the US federal government, a minimum security strength of 80 bits was the recommendation until 2010. This requirement was achieved by the IBM Proprietary Protocol.

At the beginning of 2011, the minimum key strength number increased from 80 bits to 112 bits. However, with the acceptance of a specific amount of risk, the minimum of 80 bits of security strength could be used until the end of 2013.

NIST SP 800-131a requires longer key lengths and stronger cryptography than other standards. The standard requires cryptographic algorithms that feature key strengths of at least 112 bits. IBM Proprietary Protocol is wrapped into SSL secured by TLS when communicating with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and enabling NIST mode.

Strict enforcement of NIST SP 800-131a imposes the usage of the TLS 1.3 protocol for the SSL context.

Note: TLS 1.3 protocol will be officially supported starting with Version 9.4. It is not supported in earlier versions.

Key Management Interoperability Protocol

Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) is an industry standard that aims to be a common language for key management systems and encryption systems of all varieties. Many commercial key server vendors support KMIP. Many systems, ranging from email databases to storage devices that offer encryption, also support KMIP as their communication protocol.

By supporting KMIP, the DS8000 starting with Release 8.5 provides customers with more flexibility and choice in key management. DS8000 customers can now take advantage of encryption if KMIP is a requirement in their infrastructure. KMIP is supported by IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and other external key managers, as described in Chapter 2, “External key managers” on page 17.

1.3 Encryption challenges

Encryption depends on encryption keys. Those keys must be kept secure and available. The following responsibilities must be split:

- **Keys security**

To preserve the security of encryption keys, the implementation must be set up so that no single individual (person or system) can access all the information that is required to determine the encryption key. In a system-based solution, the encryption DKs are encrypted with a wrapping key (another key to encrypt/decrypt the DKs). This wrapped key method is used with the DS8000 by separating the storage of a wrapped DK. The wrapped DK is stored in the DS8000 while the wrap/unwrap keys are stored within a key server.

With local encryption, the DK is obfuscated and stored on DS8000 internal servers rather than being stored on an external key server when DAR encryption is used. The data is safe from any drive theft but might be exposed in the unlikely event of an entire box theft.

- Key availability

More than one individual (person or system) can access any single piece of information that is necessary to determine the encryption key. In a system-based solution, redundancy is provided by having multiple isolated key servers. In addition, backups of the key server's data are maintained.

The DS8000 helps ensure the key availability for DAR encryption without key servers (local encryption).

- Separation of responsibilities

The DS8000 offers a DAR encryption RK to provide access to data if none of the key servers are available. To prevent one person from gaining access to the data, the handling of an RK requires two people with separate roles: the Security Administrator and the Storage Administrator. It is also possible to disable the RK, but it is done at the client's own risk.

Setting up an RK is not available for DAR encryption without key servers.

The sensitivity of possessing and maintaining encryption keys and the complexity of managing the number of encryption keys in a typical environment results in a client requirement for a key server. A key server is integrated with encrypting storage products to resolve most of the security and usability issues that are associated with key management for encrypted storage. p

Lifecycle management tools: IBM offers an enterprise-scale key management infrastructure through the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and lifecycle management tools to help organizations efficiently deploy, back up, restore, and delete keys and certificates in a secure and consistent fashion.

However, the client must still be sufficiently aware of how these products interact to provide the suitable management of the IT environment. Generally speaking, even when you use a key server, at least one encryption key or the RK must be maintained manually. The encryption key might be an overall key that manages access to all other encryption keys or a key that encrypts the data that is used by the key server. However, this requirement of manually maintaining a key does not apply when encryption is used without an external key server.

One critical consideration with a key server implementation is that all code and data objects, which are required to make the key server operational, must not be kept on storage that depends on any key server being accessed.

A situation where all key servers cannot become operational because there is data or code that cannot be accessed without an operational key server is referred to as an *encryption deadlock*. It is analogous to having a bank vault that can be unlocked with a combination, but the only copy of the combination is locked inside the vault.

This situation, and the policies and mechanisms that are required to avoid it, are described in Chapter 3, “IBM DS8000 encryption mechanisms” on page 31.



External key managers

In an enterprise, many symmetric keys, asymmetric keys, and certificates can exist. All these keys and certificates must be managed. Key management can be handled by an external key manager.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 2.1, “External key managers for IBM DS8000 systems” on page 18
- ▶ 2.2, “IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 18
- ▶ 2.3, “IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS” on page 23
- ▶ 2.4, “IBM Security Guardium Data Encryption 5.0” on page 28
- ▶ 2.5, “Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure” on page 29
- ▶ 2.6, “Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager” on page 29
- ▶ 2.7, “Thales CipherTrust Manager” on page 29

2.1 External key managers for IBM DS8000 systems

External key managers provide a centralized encryption and key management solution to minimize the risk of exposure and simplify keys management operations.

Important: For IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2.x is a best practice.

The DS8000 ranks must all be either encrypted or non-encrypted for data-at-rest (DAR) encryption. An environment verification process or solution assurance must be completed to help ensure that best practices regarding the configuration of the encryption solution are taken. This verification can be requested from IBM Lab Services or completed by the client's staff, but it is a prerequisite to activate the encryption solution.

Table 2-1 show a comparison of various external key managers and their support for DS8000 features.

Table 2-1 External key manager comparison

Key managers	DAR over IBM Proprietary Protocol	DAR over Key Management Interoperability Protocol	Transparent Cloud Tiering	IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security
IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Traditional Edition	x	x	x	x
IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition	x			
IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS	x			
IBM Security Guardium Data Encryption		x	x	
Safenet Gemalto KeySecure (KS)		x	x	
Thales CipherTrust Manager		x	x	
Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager (DSM)		x	x	

2.2 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager provides key storage, key serving, and key lifecycle management for storage devices from IBM and other vendors. For more information about supported products, see [this web page](#).

The focus of this publication is IBM key server interoperability with the DS8000. The DS8000 supports DAR encryption with the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature. With Version 8.5, it supports Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT) encryption. IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is supported by Version 9.0 and later.

The FDE drives can encrypt and decrypt at interface speeds, so there is no impact on performance. TCT encryption uses IBM Power9® hardware acceleration with 256-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption at full speed with no impact on performance for encrypting the data before it is transferred over the network.

All drives in the DS8000 are encryption-capable by default. To use the encryption feature, the DS8000 must be configured to communicate with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Managers.

The DS8000 can only be completely encrypted (partial DAR encryption is not possible). An environment verification process or solution assurance must be completed to help ensure that best practices regarding the configuration of the encryption solution are taken. This verification can be requested from IBM Lab Services or completed by the client's staff, but is a prerequisite for activating the encryption solution.

2.2.1 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager v4.2 includes the following key features:

- ▶ Certificate Vision dashboard
 - A unified reporting page for system, client device, and user certificates. It helps identify expiring or critical certificates and take corrective actions.
- ▶ Email notification channel for critical events
 - Configure alerts for certificate expiration or other key lifecycle events. [ibm.com]
- ▶ Oracle Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) integration
 - SGKLM can now act as the external security module for Oracle TDE master keys.
- ▶ Improved certificate management
 - Unified page for server and peripheral certificates; better handling of preinstalled root certificates.
- ▶ Trial version availability
 - A fully functional 90-day trial for evaluation (not for production).
- ▶ Enhanced KMIP support
 - Full support for KMIP 3.0 profile for better interoperability.
- ▶ Multi-Master improvements
 - Better prerequisite checks and manual takeover handling for high availability clusters.
- ▶ Security fixes and updated middleware
 - WebSphere Liberty 23.0.0.9
 - IBM Java SDK 8.0.8.10
 - Multiple CVE patches for improved security.

Note: A Multi-Master configuration is mandatory if you use IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Managers for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. You can also use Multi-Master for DAR or TCT encryption.

For more information about the features of the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager and its predecessors, see [this web page](#).

Note: Use the predefined device group DS8000 for DAR encryption and DS8000_TCT for TCT encryption. A new device group of the type Peer_to_Peer is created automatically for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

2.2.2 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Traditional Edition

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.0 or later is now called IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Traditional Edition. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.1 continues to bundle IBM WebSphere® Application Server, IBM Db2 database, and IBM Java.

2.2.3 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition

Beginning with 4.1, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is available as a Container Edition that is supported on various platforms, such as the following examples:

- ▶ IBM Red Hat OpenShift

When running on IBM Red Hat OpenShift, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager provides deployment scripts that are called *Helm charts*.

On IBM Red Hat OpenShift, the option to select between databases, such as IBM Db2 or PostgreSQL for internal data storage.

- ▶ Kubernetes

When running on IBM Red Hat OpenShift, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager provides deployment scripts called Helm charts.

On Kubernetes, you use PostgreSQL database for internal data storage.

- ▶ IBM zCX

IBM zCX, introduced on z/OS 2.4, enables clients to deploy Linux applications as Docker containers on z/OS as part of a z/OS workload. With zCX, you can select between databases, such as PostgreSQL or IBM Db2 database running on native z/OS for internal data storage.

Carefully review the [Planning for zCX](#) steps before provisioning your zCX instance to help ensure that your IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition deployment has sufficient resources. You can modify some resources after the initial zCX provision by using the reconfiguration workflow in z/OSMF.

Restriction: IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition does not support the Multi-Master feature.

2.2.4 Traditional and Container Edition comparison

Figure 2-1 shows comparison between Traditional edition and containerized edition of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.


Differentiating Parameters	Traditional GKLM	Containerized GKLM
Installation 	Windows, Linux (x86-64, Linux on z, PPC), AIX	Kubernetes, OCP (Linux x86-64 , Linux on z platforms)
Deployment	~1 hour	30-45 seconds
Bundled products	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• WebSphere Traditional• Db2 Standard Edition• JAVA SDK• Installation Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• WebSphere Liberty• JAVA SDK
High Availability and Disaster Recovery	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Backup and Restore• Replication• Multi Master	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Backup and Restore• Replication
Administration Interfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Graphical User Interface• REST• CLI	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Graphical User Interface• REST
Key Serving Interfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• IPP• KMIP• REST based	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• IPP• KMIP• REST based
User management	WebSphere Admin Console	GKLM GUI
Supported Databases	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• DB2 Standard Edition	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PostgreSQL• DB2U (on OCP)• DB2 on z/OS (on zCX)

Figure 2-1 Comparing IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager editions

2.2.5 Key serving

The information about key serving, which is summarized in this section, can help you become familiar with the terms and statements that are used throughout this book.

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager enables the definition and serving of keys, or groups of keys, which can be associated with a device. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager deploys separate key types to separate devices that request them.

Consider the following points:

- ▶ A key can be a member of a single key group, and deleting a key group deletes all keys in that group.
- ▶ The *key metadata* includes information, such as a key alias, algorithm, and activation date. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager stores metadata for a key in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager database.
- ▶ A key or certificate can be in the following states, which define the level of use that is allowed:
 - Pending
 - Pre-active
 - Active

- Compromised
- Deactivated
- Destroyed
- Destroyed-compromised

An object that is no longer active might change states from deactivated to destroyed, deactivated to compromised, compromised to destroyed-compromised, or destroyed to destroyed-compromised.

When a key is generated, the keys, its alias, and metadata are stored in an IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager database. The new key enters an active state immediately. When a certificate request is created, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager creates an entry that is in a pending state. It waits for the return of a certificate that was approved and certified by a certificate authority (CA).

Changing attributes: Information attributes of a key, regardless of its state, can be changed by using REST or command-line interface (CLI).

- Standard and operating system-specific Java keystore methods are supported by IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager to store public/private key and certificate information. The Java Cryptography Extension KeyStore (JCEKS) *keystore type* is supported as the IBM Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) software provider. It can be used for all distributed operating systems.

2.2.6 Protecting IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager data

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager contains critical information that must be protected. It includes the following options:

- Backup: You can back up critical data files on a secure computer at a geographically separate location or on a replica computer that provides another IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server. The replica computer enables quick recovery at times when the primary IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server is not available.
- Restore: A restore operation returns the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server to a known state by using backed-up production data, such as the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager keystore and other critical information.
- Audit: On distributed systems, audit logs are stored in the Common Base Event format or Syslog format by IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.
- Automated clone replication: A master IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server can be configured to replicate data to up to 20 clones. The replicated data includes keys and certificates that are stored in tables in an IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager database, certificates in a truststore keystore, and a master key that is stored in Java keystore and IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager configuration files.

Note: The replicated data is identical to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager backup, except for the replication configuration file. During replication, these items are not backed up or passed to the clones.

- ▶ **Multi-Master:** In a Multi-Master cluster, all IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers are masters. In one cluster, 21 masters can be configured where keys can be created and fetched from any master in real time.
- ▶ **Master key protection:** IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager stored its master key in the Java keystore by default. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager can be configured to use a Hardware Security Module (HSM) or Enterprise Key Management Foundation (EKMF) Web to store the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager master key. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager master key is used to protect all keys and certificates that are stored in the database. This option adds extra protection to the storage and use of the master key.

2.3 IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS

As an alternative to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.1 or later for open systems, you can use the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS product. Previous names for this product were IBM Encryption Key Manager and IBM Tivoli® Key Lifecycle Manager for the z/OS.

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS also helps when you generate, protect, store, and maintain encryption keys that are used to perform the following tasks:

- ▶ Encrypt information that is being written to devices
- ▶ Decrypt information being read from devices

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS supports System Management Facilities (SMFs) for audit records. The IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS is part of the IBM Java environment, and uses the IBM Java Security components for its cryptographic capabilities.

Attention: Do not confuse IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.1 for Open Systems. IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS supports DAR encryption key management *only*. It does not support TCT encryption and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

However, you can install IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager 4.0 in Linux on IBM Z.

2.3.1 IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS components

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS features the following components:

- ▶ Java security keystore
- ▶ Configuration files
- ▶ Device table
- ▶ KeyGroups.xml file

Java security keystore

The keystore is defined as part of the JCE. The keystore is an element of the Java Security components, which are part of the Java runtime environment. A keystore holds the certificates and keys (or pointers to the certificates and keys) that are used by the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS to do cryptographic operations.

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS supports non-hardware and hardware-assisted keystores. Hardware-based JCECCARACFKS keystores need a hardware cryptographic services provider. This support for hardware-assisted keystores makes IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS the preferred key server for a z/OS environment, at least for tape encryption.

Configuration files

With configuration files, you can customize the behavior of IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS to meet the needs of your organization.

Device table

The device table is used by IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS to monitor the devices it supports. The device table is a non-editable, binary file whose location is specified in the configuration file. You can change its location to meet your needs.

KeyGroups.xml file

This password-protected file contains the names of all encryption key groups and the aliases of the encryption keys that are associated with each key group.

2.3.2 Functions performed by IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS requests the generation of encryption keys and passes those keys to TS1120, TS1130, TS1140, TS1150, and LTO Ultrium 4, 5, and 6 tape drives, and DS8000 Storage Systems, to name some of the supported storage devices. When a DS8000 starts, the storage system requests an unlock key from IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS.

If the DS8000 requests a new key for its unlock key, IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS generates an AES key and serves the key to the DS8000 in two protected forms:

- ▶ Encrypted (wrapped), by using Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) key pairs. The DS8000 stores this copy of the key.
- ▶ Separately wrapped for secure transfer to the DS8000, where it is unwrapped upon arrival and the key inside is used to unlock the DS8000.

If the DS8000 requests an existing unlock key, the protected AES key on the DS8000 is sent to IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS, where the wrapped AES key is unwrapped. The AES key is then wrapped with a different key for secure transfer back to the DS8000, where it is unwrapped and used to unlock the system.

The IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS design allows redundancy and offers high availability. You can have multiple IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS sets that service the same devices. In this way, you can have two IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager sets. They are mirror images of each other. They have built-in backup of the critical information about your keystores and serve as a failover options if one IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS set is not available. When you configure your DS8000, you can point it to two sets of IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS. If one IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS set is not available, your DS8000 uses the other IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS set.

You can also keep the two IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS sets synchronized. Be sure that you take advantage of this important function when necessary.

2.3.3 Preventing a deadlock situation

If you use IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS as a key manager for DS8000 DAR encryption, you can run into a deadlock situation if you use key servers that are run only on encrypted DS8000 Storage Systems.

When all z/OS logical partitions (LPARs) are powered down and are restarted, the DS8000 Storage Systems with enabled encryption must “talk” to an encryption server to get the unlock key. However, IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS cannot start because its data is stored on an encrypted DS8000 disk.

A DS8000 must have *all* encrypted data or *no* encrypted data. A mix of encrypted and non-encrypted data is not possible.

To avoid this type of deadlock, be sure that you have one of these setups available:

- ▶ A z/OS attached storage system that is not encrypted for the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS LPAR.
- ▶ A duplicate IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS set at the disaster recovery site with a backup copy of the data files.
- ▶ A stand-alone IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for open systems set as an alternative to IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS with a copy of the keys.

If you have an environment with an IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager on z/OS and a stand-alone IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for open systems, you must create a certificate and a private key on IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS and one on IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for open systems.

Export these certificates and then import the certificates for each other. This task means that the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS certificate goes to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for open systems. Also, the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for open systems certificate goes to IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS. Configure the DS8000 to use both certificates.

The DS8000 must communicate with at least *two* key servers because you cannot configure a DS8000 with encryption enabled if the DS8000 cannot communicate with two key servers. For a power-on operation, it is sufficient for the DS8000 to access only *one* key server.

2.3.4 Installing the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS and keystores

Install IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS as described in [Program Directory for IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS V1.1.0](#).

This section includes only an overview of the installation steps.

You can set up IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS in several ways, depending on the keystore types. IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS supports the following keystores:

- ▶ JCEKS
- ▶ JCECCAKS
- ▶ JCERACFKS
- ▶ JCECCARACFKS

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS requires IBM Java Software Developer Kit 5.0 or 6.0 and later. It also requires the unrestricted policy files for Java. The files are available at [this website](#).

The installation process includes the following overall steps:

1. Install the Java SDK.

A recent version, IBM 64-bit SDK for z/OS Java Technology Edition 8 is preferred. It should already be installed in your z/OS environment.

Verify that the correct version of Java is installed. First, make sure that the Java bin directory is in your PATH by running the **USSexport** command:

```
export JAVA_HOME=/usr/lpp/java84
export PATH="$PATH:${JAVA_HOME}/bin
```

Replace the path with the path where your Java SDK was installed. Then, run the **java -version** command from the UNIX console under z/OS.

2. Copy the unrestricted policy files. Replace the `US_export_policy.jar` and `local_policy.jar` files in the following directory with an unrestricted version of these files:

```
$JAVA_HOME/lib/security
```

3. Select the keystore type:

- Add the Java hardware provider if you want to use hardware cryptography.

If you decide to use a keystore type of either JCECCAKS or JCECCARACFKS so that you can use the security advantages of ICSF, you must add the Java hardware provider.

You cannot use both JCERACFKS and JCECCARACFKS keystore types concurrently in the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS configuration file. Specify only one of these types in the configuration file.

To add the Java hardware provider, you must edit the following file and complete the following steps:

```
$JAVA_HOME/lib/security/java.security
```

- i. If you want the RSA key to be secure and not visible in the clear, create your RSA keys in the ICSF PKDS by using either the **RACDCERT PCICC** option or **hwkeytool** with the **-hardwaretype** PKDS flag.
- ii. If you want the data encryption key (DEK) to be secure and not visible in the clear, change the configuration to set the `requireHardwareProtectionForSymmetricKeys` property to true.
- iii. Ensure that the IBM JCE CCA provider is installed in the `java.security` provider list.
- If you are not using hardware cryptography, use a JCEKS keystore type by completing the following steps:
 - i. Obtain a list of all the aliases (or key labels) for the RSA keys that you want to use. For more information, see your keystore documentation.
 - ii. Obtain a list of all the type Drive Serial Numbers that you need to register. This step is optional if you set `drive.acceptUnknownDrives = true` for automatic addition of tape drives to the device table and `ds8k.acceptUnknownDrives=true` to automatically accept new DS8000 drives.
 - iii. Edit the `ISKLMConfig.properties.zos` file, as shown in *Configuration Basics*, to customize the entries that are appropriate for your installation.

4. Set up a user to run IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS.

In our case, we used the ISKLMSRV user ID (UID). This UID must have an Open MVS (OMVS) segment with a UID and group ID (GID) that is defined. The UID does not need to be zero; it can be any value. The home directory of this UID OMVS segment is where IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS is started. The UID must also run the standard shell at login (/bin/sh), and be connected to a default group that has a GID. You can allow IBM RACF® to automatically assign the UID or explicitly define the UID. The ISKLMSRV UID is a protected user. It cannot be used as a TSO UID.

Note: In OMVS, the configuration file permission is set so that only the owner can read or write the configuration file. If you log on and you are not the owner of the configuration file, you do not have permission to write to the configuration file. You might encounter an error similar to the following one:

```
- java.io.FileNotFoundException:  
/u/isklmsrv/JA0/ISKLMConfig.properties.zos.JCECCARACFKS (EDC5111I Permission  
denied.)
```

You might encounter the same error when stopping the server, running the refresh operation, or changing passwords. As a best practice, log on by using the UID with owner permissions.

5. Get digital certificates.

6. Set up the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS configuration file.

Edit ISKLMSrvConfig.properties.zos to update the following values (IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS must not be running when you edit the ISKLMSrvConfig.properties.zos file):

- a. Audit.handler.file.directory: Specify a location where audit logs are stored.
- b. Audit.metadata.file.name: Specify a fully qualified path and file name for the metadata XML file.
- c. config.drivetable.file.url: Specify a location for information about drives that are known to IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS. This file is not required before starting the server or CLI client. If it does not exist, it is created during shutdown of the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS server.
- d. TransportListener.ssl.keystore.name: Specify the path and file name of the keystore that is created in step 1 on page 26.
- e. TransportListener.ssl.truststore.name: Specify the path and file name of the keystore that is created in step 1 on page 26.
- f. Admin.ssl.keystore.name: Specify the path and file name of the keystore that is created in step 3 on page 26.
- g. Admin.ssl.truststore.name: Specify the path and file name of the keystore that is created in step 3 on page 26.
- h. config.keystore.file: Specify the path and file name of the keystore that is created in step 3 on page 26.
- i. drive.acceptUnknownDrives: Specify true or false. A value of true allows new tape drives that contact IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS to be automatically added to the device table. The default is false.
- j. ds8k.acceptUnknownDrives: Specify true or false. A value of true allows a new DS8000 that contacts IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS to be automatically added to the device table. The default is false.

The following optional password entries can be added or omitted. If these entries are not specified in `ISKLMConfig.properties.zos`, IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS prompts for the keystore password during the start of the server. When added to the `ISKLMConfig.properties.zos` file, IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS obfuscates these passwords for extra security. Obfuscating the passwords helps ensure that they do not appear in the clear in the properties file.

- `Admin.ssl.keystore.password`: Specify the password of the keystore that is created in step 3 on page 26.
- `config.keystore.password`: Specify the password of the keystore.
- `TransportListener.ssl.keystore.password`: Specify the password of the keystore.

7. Define IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS as a started task. Use option 6 from the ISPF primary screen to enter the following TSO commands:

```
SETOPTS GENERIC(STARTED)
RDEFINE STARTED ISKLM*.* STDATA(USER(ISKLMSRV) GROUP(STCGROUP) TRACE(YES))
SETOPTS CLASSACT(STARTED) SETOPTS RACLIST(STARTED)
SETOPTS RACLIST(STARTED) GENERIC(STARTED) REFRESH
```

To start IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager, run the **S ISKLM** command from SDSF or any z/OS console (the output of the command is shown after the command):

```
S ISKLM
$HASP100 ISKLM ON STCINRDR
IEF695I START ISKLM WITH JOBNAME ISKLM IS ASSIGNED TO USER ISKLMSRV, GROUP SYS1
$HASP373 ISKLM          STARTED
ISKLM console interaction is now available. 546
```

To submit commands to the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager from the console, run the following command:

```
F ISKLM,APPL='ISKLM command'
```

To stop the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager, run the following command:

```
P ISKLM
Loaded drive keystore successfully
Starting the Encryption Key Manager 2.0-20070
Processing Arguments
Processing
Server is started
Server is running. TCP port: 3801, SSL port: 4
```

For more information, see the *IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS Version 1.1 Planning, and User's Guide*, SC14-7628.

2.4 IBM Security Guardium Data Encryption 5.0

IBM Security Guardium Data Encryption is another external key manager that is supported for DS8000 DAR encryption over Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) and TCT encryption to cloud storage.

IBM Security Guardium Data Encryption consists of an integrated suite of products that are built on a common infrastructure. These highly scalable solutions provide encryption, tokenization, data masking, and key management capabilities to help protect and control access to databases, files, and containers across the hybrid multicloud. This protection secures assets that are in cloud, virtual, big data, and on-premises environments.

For more information, see [IBM Guardium Data Encryption](#).

2.5 Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure

Gemalto SafeNet KS is a third-party, centralized key management platform. It offers an alternative to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for clients and is fully supported by DS8880 Release 8.5 and later for DAR encryption and TCT encryption.

Gemalto SafeNet KS is provided as a hardware and virtual software appliance. At the time of writing, the current version is 8.3.2 RevA. It supports the KMIP 1.1 (used with DS8000 Release 8.1), PKCS #11, JCE, MS-CAPI, ICAP, and .NET APIs. LDAP and Active Directory authentication are included too, and multiple network management protocols.

Like IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, Gemalto SafeNet KS supports 128-bit encryption and provides a GUI named “Gemalto SafeNet KS Management Console” and an SSH CLI.

Gemalto SafeNet KS can manage up to 1,000,000 keys and 1,000 devices, and it supports HSM for storing the master key.

For more information about Gemalto SafeNet KS, see [Cloud Protection and Licensing Solutions](#).

2.6 Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager

The Thales Vormetric DSM is another external key manager that is supported for DS8000 DAR encryption and TCT encryption to cloud storage.

For organizations that opt for the Thales Vormetric DSM platform products, Vormetric DSM is the central management point of the platform. DSM creates, stores, and manages the encryption keys that protect data, and it also enables organizations to manage every aspect of their data security platform implementation. Thales Vormetric DSM allows administrators to specify data access policies, administer DSM users and logical domains, generate usage reports, register hosts, access security logs, and manage third-party keys and digital certificates.

For more information, see [Vormetric Data Security Manager](#).

2.7 Thales CipherTrust Manager

Thales CipherTrust Manager (formerly known as Next Generation KS) is another external key manager that is supported for DS8000 DAR encryption and TCT encryption to cloud storage.

Thales CipherTrust Manager offers an industry-leading enterprise key management solution that organizations can use to centrally manage encryption keys, provide granular access control, and configure security policies. Thales CipherTrust Manager is the central management point for the Thales CipherTrust Manager data security platform. It manages key lifecycle tasks that include generation, rotation, destruction, import, and export, and it provides role-based access control (RBAC) to keys and policies, supports robust auditing and reporting, and offers a developer-friendly REST API.

For more information, see [CipherTrust Manager](#).



IBM DS8000 encryption mechanisms

This chapter provides information about the DS8000 disk encryption mechanisms that use an external key server. For more information about local encryption, see Chapter 7, “Local key management” on page 235.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 3.1, “DS8000 data-at-rest encryption” on page 32
- ▶ 3.2, “Key management for IBM Proprietary Protocol with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 34
- ▶ 3.3, “Key management by using KMIP” on page 45
- ▶ 3.4, “Encryption deadlock” on page 47
- ▶ 3.5, “Working with a recovery key” on page 49
- ▶ 3.6, “Dual key server support (IBM Proprietary Protocol only)” on page 54
- ▶ 3.7, “DS8000 TCT encryption key management by using KMIP” on page 56
- ▶ 3.8, “DS8000 endpoint encryption key management by using KMIP” on page 60

3.1 DS8000 data-at-rest encryption

The DS8000 supports data encryption in systems that are equipped with Full Disk Encryption (FDE) capable hard disk drives (HDDs) and flash drives, such as in the High-Performance Flash Enclosure (HPFE).

All drives (disk or flash) in the DS8880 or DS8900F systems are encryption-capable (DS8900F supports only flash drives). Those drives include drive encryption hardware and can perform symmetric encryption and decryption of data with no effect on performance.

The drive encryption hardware is used with various key managers.

All compatible key managers support the Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) by using the direct key method to deliver keys to encrypting storage devices. Without these keys, which are managed by the key servers, the data on disk *cannot* be decrypted.

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager also supports running IBM Proprietary Protocol by using a wrapped key method. The DS8000 uses an external key server method to secure keys by separating the storage of a data key (DK) that is stored within the device from the storage of the keys within the key server. The wrap/unwrap keys are also referred to as the key encryption/key decryption keys. Without these keys, which are managed by the key servers, the data on disk *cannot* be decrypted.

Cryptographically erased: If all copies of the decryption key are lost (whether intentionally or accidentally), no feasible way exists to decrypt the associated ciphertext, and the data that is contained in the ciphertext is said to be *cryptographically erased*. The data is lost because it cannot be decrypted without the key. This issue is relevant for data-at-rest (DAR) and Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT) encryption, but does not apply to IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security where the keys are used only to encrypt data while over the wire (data in flight).

For more information about encryption key management, see 3.2, “Key management for IBM Proprietary Protocol with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 34, and 3.8, “DS8000 endpoint encryption key management by using KMIP” on page 60.

An encryption-capable DS8000 can be configured to enable or disable encryption for DAR for all data that is stored on drives.

Attention: Enabling DAR encryption cryptographically erases all data on the disks. Therefore, encryption must be enabled directly at the beginning of the process before data is stored in the DS8000.

The DS8000 must be configured to communicate with *at least two* key servers to enable encryption. Two key servers are required for redundancy. The communication between the DS8000 and the key server is done through the Hardware Management Console (HMC).

The physical connection between the DS8000 HMC and the key server is through a Internet Protocol network, as shown in Figure 3-1.

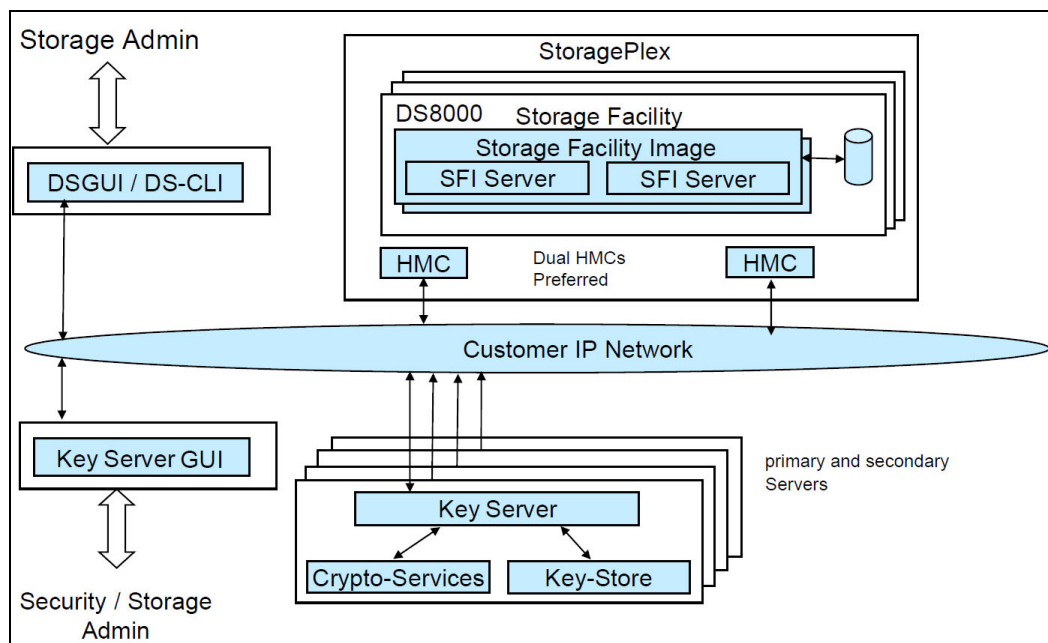


Figure 3-1 Connection between the DS8000 HMC key servers

Before explaining the various keys that are used by DS8000 and key servers for encryption and how messages can be exchanged between two systems in a secure way (generically), you must learn about the concept of digital signatures.

Digital signatures are used to authenticate a sender. The digital signatures are generated by using the private and public keys. Complete the following steps:

1. The sender writes its message.
2. According to a mathematical formula, a digital string, usually of a fixed length, is derived from the message. This string is called a *hash*. Although a hash is derived from and uniquely linked to the data, deriving the data from the hash is not possible.
3. The hash is encrypted with the *sender's private key*. The encrypted hash is called a *digital signature*.
4. The digital signature is attached to the message.
5. Both message and digital signature are encrypted with the receiver's public key.
6. The encrypted message is sent to the receiver.
7. The receiver decrypts the message and signature combination.

Now, the receiver reproduces the message hash in the following ways:

- The receiver decrypts the digital signature with the sender's public key to get the original hash.
 - The receiver calculates the hash from the received message.
8. If both hashes match, the receiver has good reason to trust the message.

Figure 3-2 shows these steps.

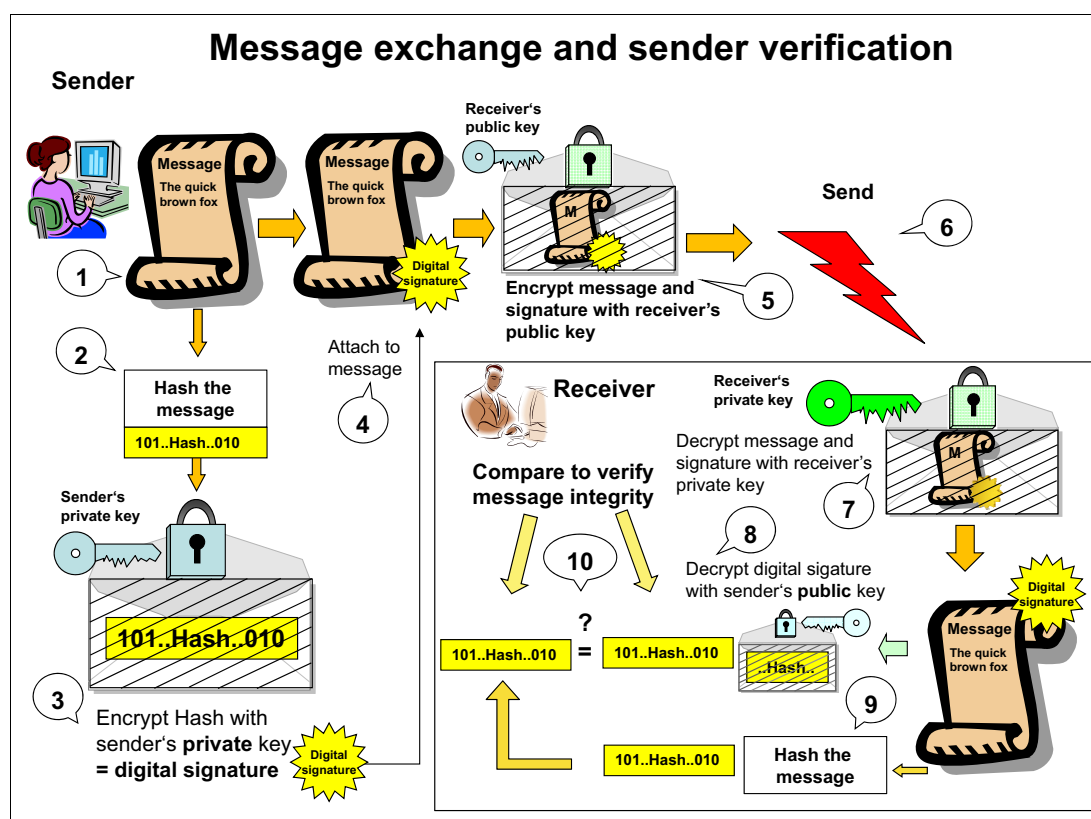


Figure 3-2 Authentication with digital signatures

3.2 Key management for IBM Proprietary Protocol with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

In this section, we describe how the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server manages and creates the encryption keys that are used by the DS8000 during key label, encryption group, rank creation, and DS8000 power-on time. This section also describes the IBM Proprietary Protocol.

Important: Key negotiation and authentication between the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and DS8000 occurs at DS8000 power-on time only. Traffic does not increase in an encrypted DS8000 at run time that is created by key negotiation.

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server uses the wrapped key method to serve keys to an encryption-enabled DS8000. The wrap and unwrap keys on the key server are a public/private asymmetric key pair. The wrap key is referred to as the *public key encrypting key* (KEK) and the unwrap key is referred to as the *private key encrypting key* (KEK').

The configuration processes on the key server and the storage device (the DS8000) define one or more key labels. For more information, see 5.2, "Migrating IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager" on page 81.

Note: Most figures in this section still show Security Key Lifecycle Manager as the key manager because the process remained the same under the product new name as IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

The key label is a user-specified text string that is associated with the asymmetric key label pair (KEK/KEK'), which is generated by the key server when the key label is configured (see Figure 3-3). The key generation and propagation processes on the key server associates a key label with each wrap/unwrap key pair. This key label is a user-specified text string that is retained with each wrap/unwrap key pair. The KEK-pair key is kept secret by IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

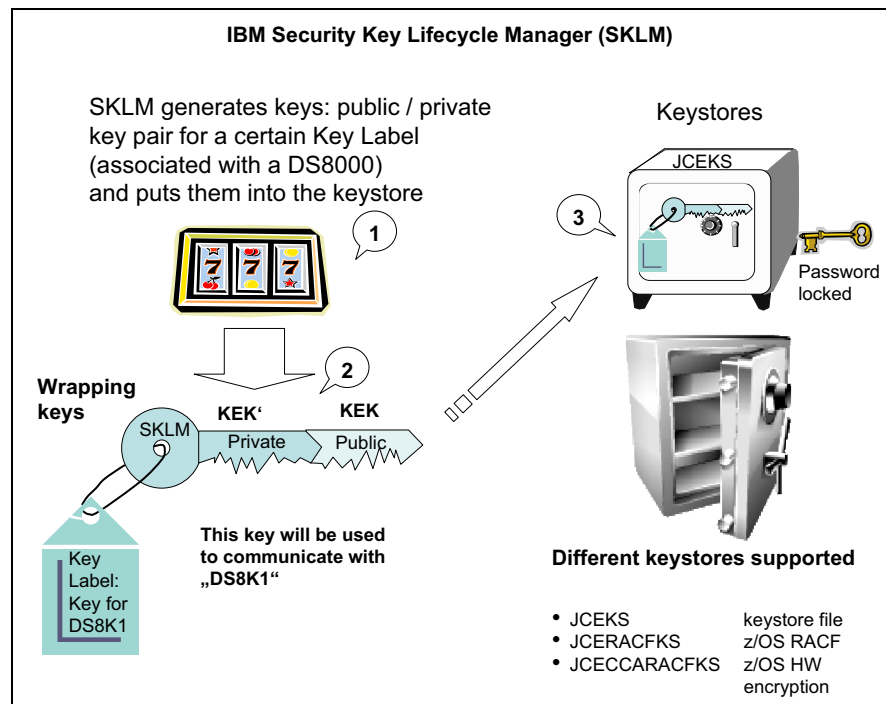


Figure 3-3 Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key label

Rekey Data Key feature: With this feature, a user can change the DK labels (see 6.1, “Rekeying the data key for data-at-rest encryption” on page 210).

Now, the user (storage administrator) can use the DS8000 GUI or DS command-line interface (DS CLI) to register the key server on the DS8000. Next, still by using the DS8000 GUI or DS CLI, an encryption group is created. For more information, see “DS8000 enabling data-at-rest encryption” on page 162).

As part of creating the encryption group with IBM Proprietary Protocol, you must specify the key label that was set when configuring the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server is configured, which was configured for a particular DS8000.

Note: The DS8000 must have separate encryption groups: one encryption group for DAR encryption, one for TCT, and one for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption. Only DAR supports the IBM Proprietary Protocol.

While creating the encryption group, the DS8000, which is referred to as DS8K1 in our illustrated scenario, generates a “Device Session Key pair (device session public key/device session private key, respectively noted as DSK/DSK’) from a random number. The public/private key pair is associated with a key label. The DSK’ is kept secret by the DS8000.

The key label, DSK, and the DS8000 storage facility certificate, which was set and stored on the DS8000 by manufacturing, are sent to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager on the key server to request a DK (see Figure 3-4).

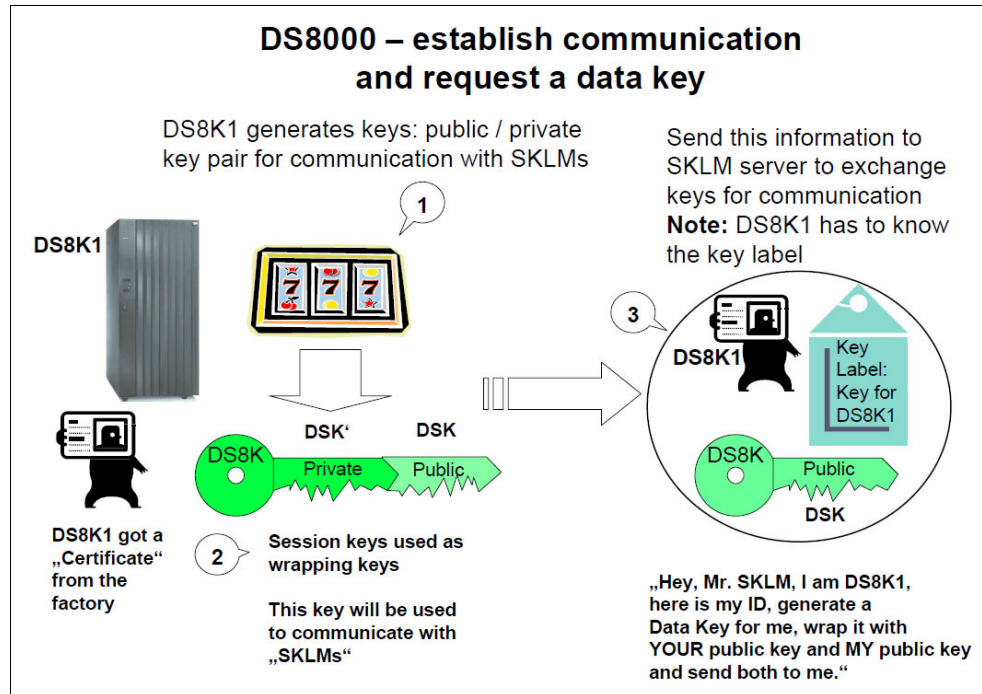


Figure 3-4 DS8000 creates session keys and requests a data key

Upon reception of these elements, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager completes the following steps (see Figure 3-5):

1. It validates the DS8000 certificate.
2. It generates the DK.
3. The DK is wrapped with DS8000 disk storage system's DSK and stored in a structure that is referred to as the session encrypted data key (SEDK).
4. From the key label, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager retrieves the KEK/KEK' pair for the specified key label. The DK is wrapped with the KEK and stored in a structure that is referred to as the externally encrypted data key (EEDK).

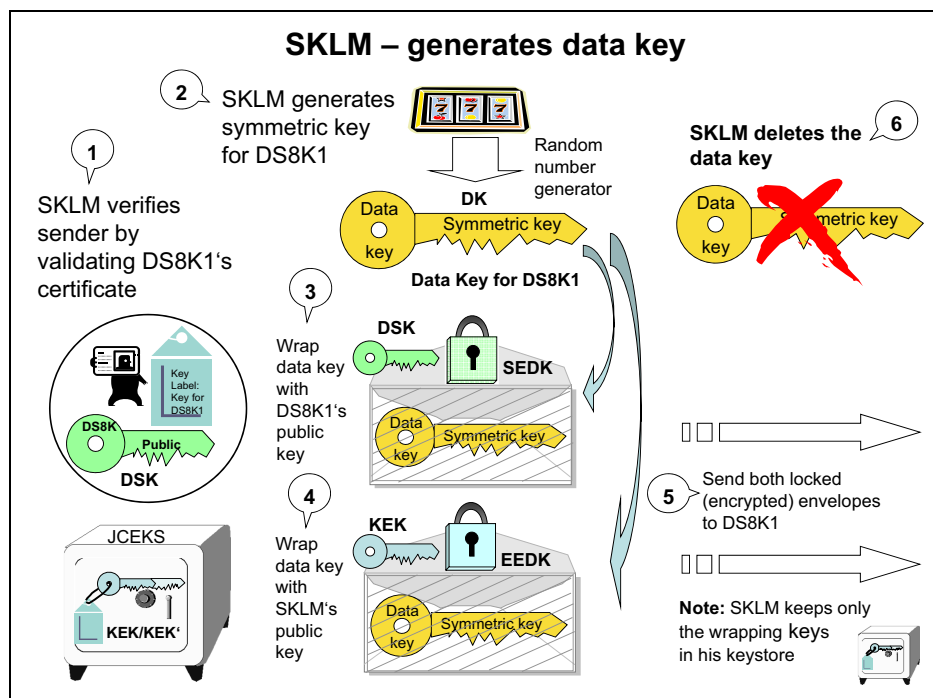


Figure 3-5 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager generates data key

Now, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager transfers the SEDK and EEDK to the DS8000 and the following steps occur at the DS8000:

1. The DS8000 receives the encrypted structures with the DK in it.
2. To re-create the DK at the DS8000, the SEDK is unwrapped with the DS8000 disk storage system's DSK'. The DS8000 holds the DK in memory, as shown in Figure 3-6.

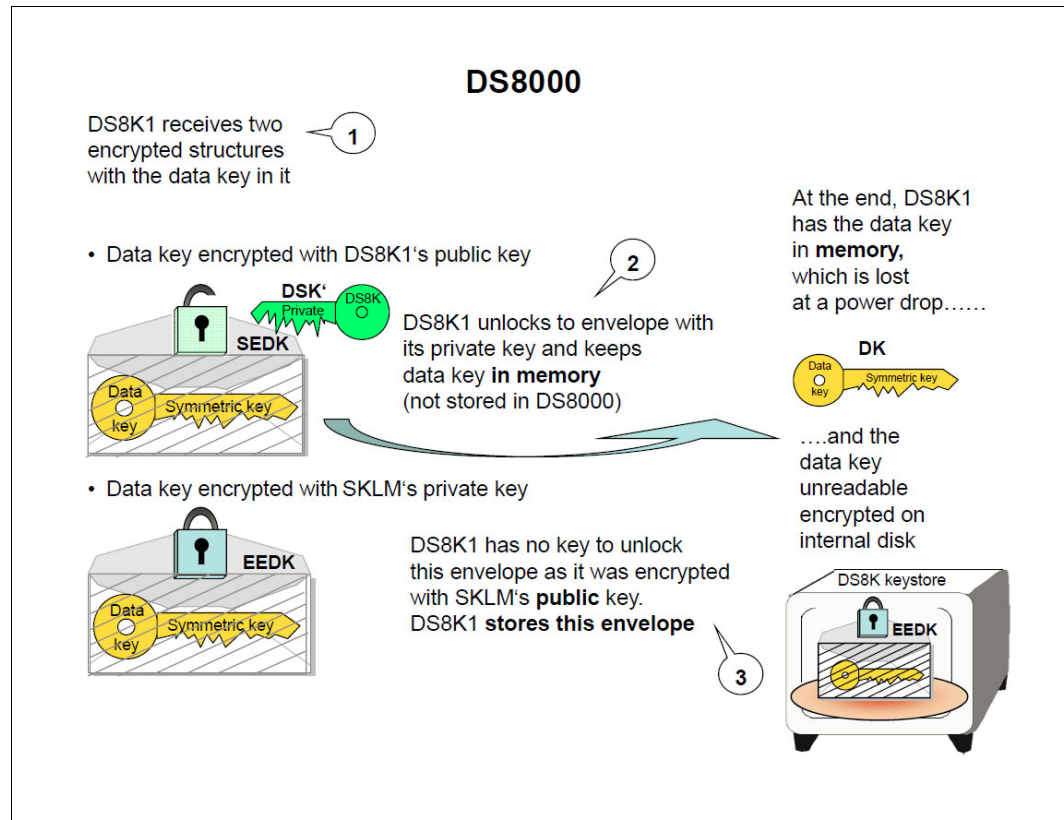


Figure 3-6 DS8000 unwraps data key and stores encrypted data key

3. The EEDK is stored in the DS8000 Storage System keystore. The DS8000 does not have the key to unlock this structure.

4. The DS8000 generates a random 256-bit group key (GK) for the encryption group. See Figure 3-7.

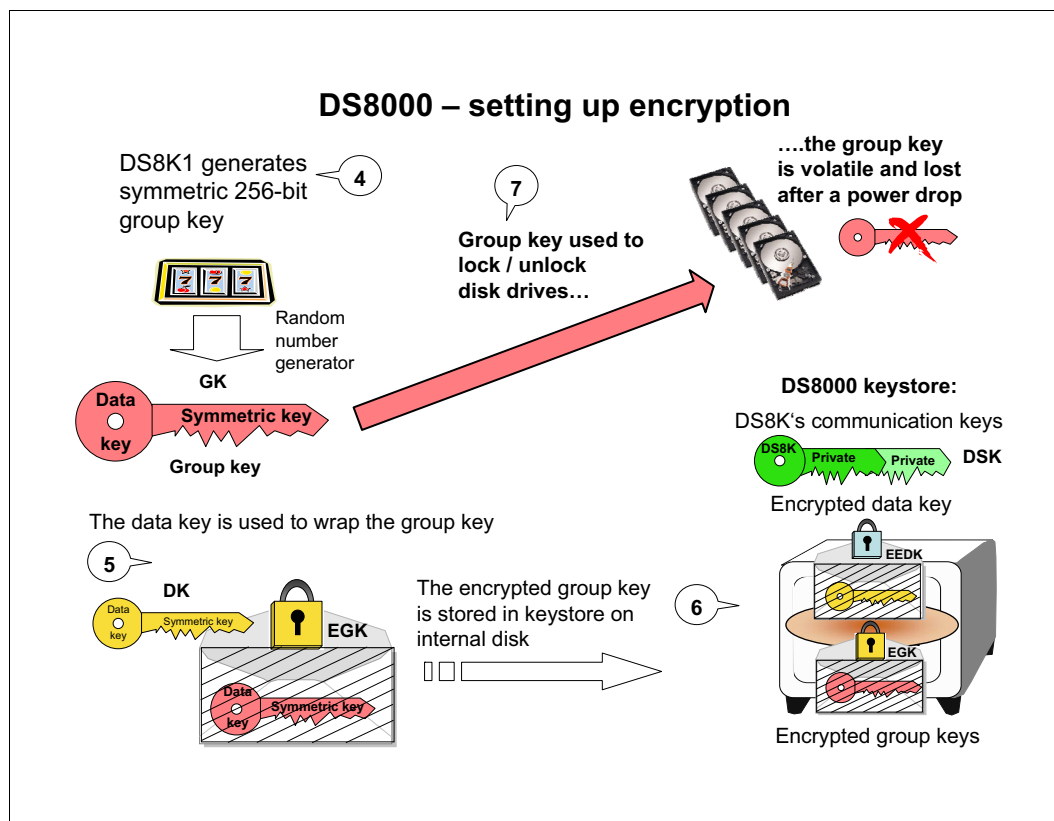


Figure 3-7 Setting up encryption

5. The GK is wrapped with the DK and stored in a structure that is referred as the encrypted group key (EGK).
6. The EGK is persistently stored in the key repository (KR) of the DS8000. The EEDK and the EGK are stored in multiple places in the DS8000 for reliability.

This dual control (from the DS8000 and IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager) improves security. The DS8000 does not maintain a persistent copy of the DK on disk in the clear. It also cannot encrypt or decrypt data without access to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

The DK is *erased* by the DS8000 at power off, such that each time it is powered on, the DS8000 must communicate with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager to obtain the DK again.

When the user configures a rank, the DS8000 creates, for each DDM in this rank, an access credential to lock the drive, as shown in Figure 3-8. The following steps occur during the configuration of the rank:

1. The DS8000 reads the serial number of each disk.
2. The serial number is hashed with the GK to create the access credential.
3. The access credential is sent to the drive.
4. In the drive, its encryption key is wrapped with the access credential. A hash of the access credential is also stored on the drive.

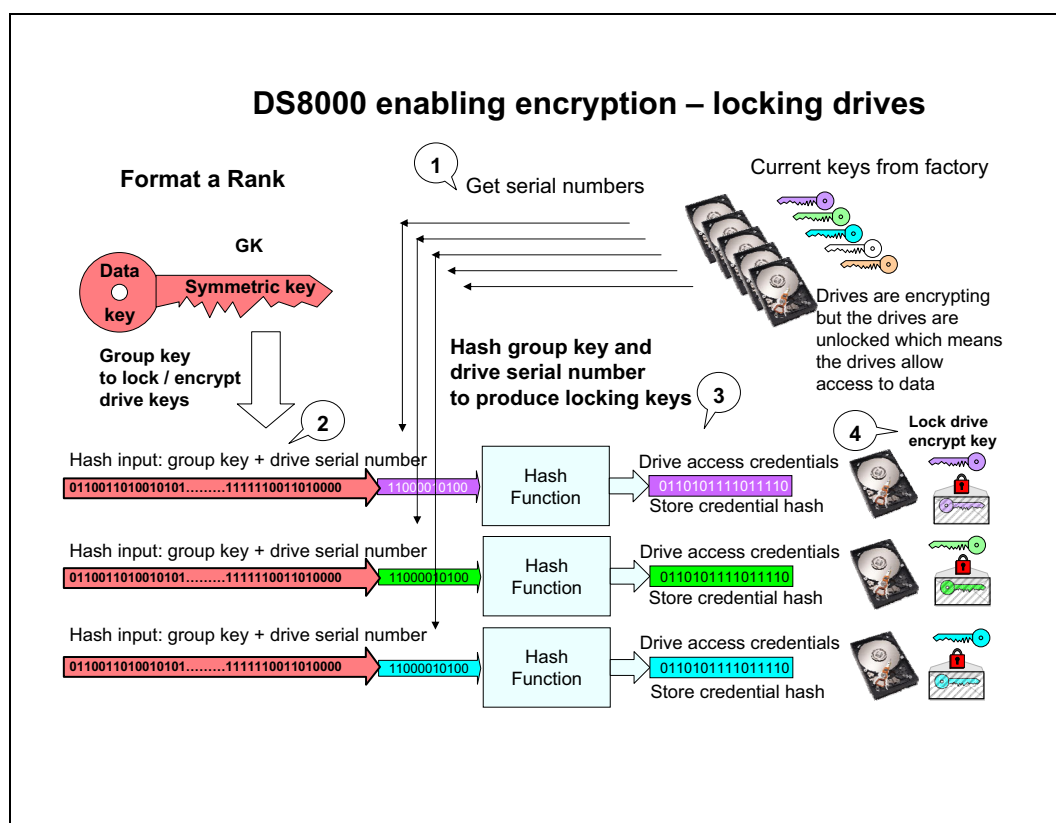


Figure 3-8 Setting up encryption: Locking the drives

The drives are locked now, which means after a power-off and a power-on, the drives grant access to data only when the encrypted encryption key that is stored on the drives is unlocked by providing access credentials and an unlock key, as shown in Figure 3-9 on page 41.

Disk encryption details

Each FDE drive has an encryption key for the area of the drive that contains client data (Band 1). As shown in Figure 3-9 on page 41, Band 0 is for internal global data, which is also encrypted.

When the client data area is *unlocked*, the FDE drive still encrypts/decrypts the data with a data encryption key (DEK) and this DEK is also wrapped (encrypted) with access credentials. Here, a default encryption key is used to encrypt the DEK, but it is done transparently to the initiator (the DS8000). However, if someone takes the disk plate without the interface, trying to read from the disks is impossible because the data is encrypted.

The DEK for the data area is *wrapped* (encrypted) with an access credential that is produced with the GK. This access credential is converted to a secure hash and stored on the disk. At that stage, the client data area is *locked*.

After a disk power loss, the read/write access to the data on a locked area is blocked until the DS8000 is authenticated by supplying the currently active access credential, that is, the GK, as shown in Figure 3-9. (The DS8000 first must unlock keys for the GK from the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server). The following steps occur:

1. The disk drive verifies the access credentials (containing the GK).
2. The drive validates the access credentials with the one stored on the disk drive.
3. The drive reads the stored encrypted DEK.
4. The encrypted DEK is decrypted by using access credentials (GK).

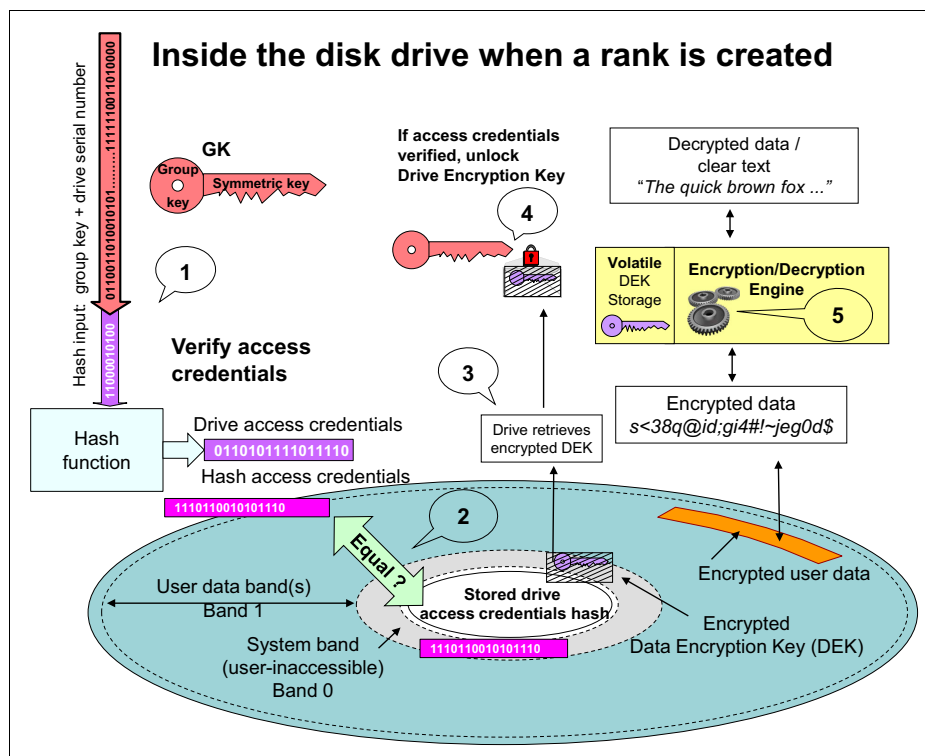


Figure 3-9 Unlocking drives

An FDE drive that is made a member of an encryption-enabled rank is locked. The FDE drive is unlocked when it is unassigned, or is a spare. Locking occurs when an FDE drive is added to an encryption-enabled rank either during rank creation or sparing. Unlocking occurs when an encryption-enabled rank is deleted or a member of an encryption-enabled rank is reused as a spare. Unlocking always results in a cryptographic erasure of an FDE drive (the disk resets its own encryption key). This action also happens when an encryption-disabled rank is deleted.

In a cryptographic erasure, a new DEK is generated in each disk drive (see Figure 3-10). The new key is encrypted with default access credentials, and both the access credentials and the encrypted DEK are stored on Band 0 of the drive. Now, the drive is unlocked. If someone tries to read the old data, nonsense data is returned because decryption now uses another key, which no longer decrypts the data.

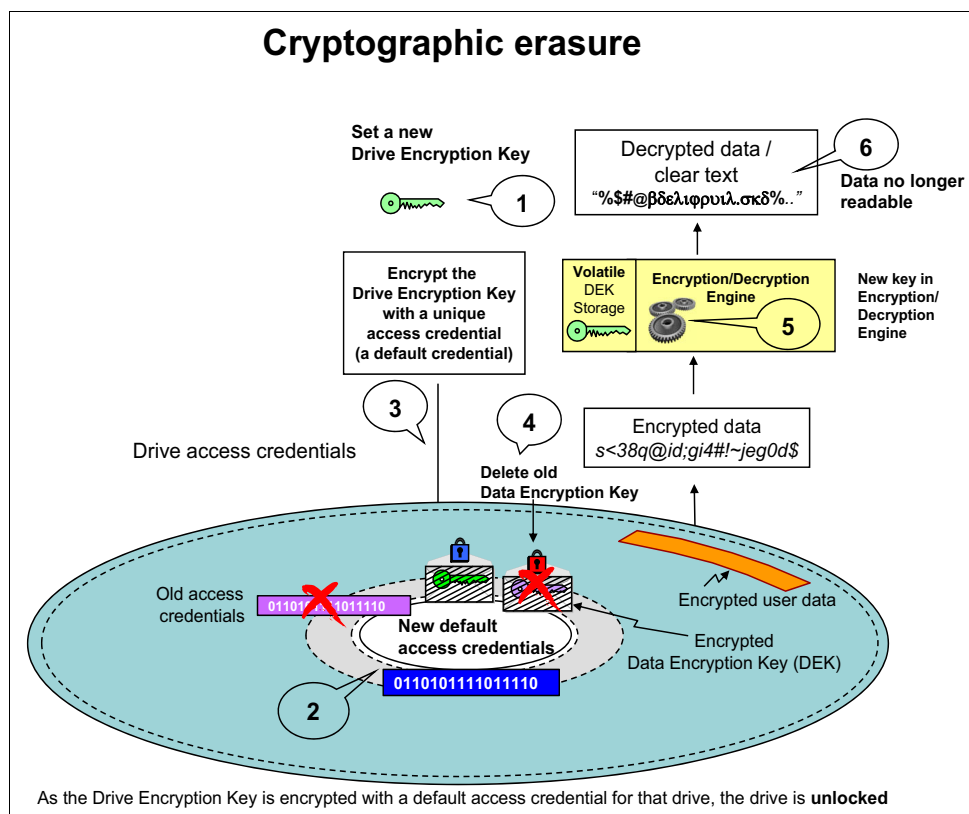


Figure 3-10 Cryptographic erasure

FDE drives are *not* cryptographically erased when a drive fails. In this case, there is no guarantee that the device adapter (DA) can communicate with the disk to cryptographically erase it. More specifically, the DA intentionally fences the failing drive from the device interface immediately to prevent it from causing other problems on the interface. However, because the currently active encryption key that still exists in the failed FDE drive is encrypted, the data is not readable.

Getting access to data after a power-on

After powering off and powering on, the DS8000 no longer has a DK or a GK in the clear, as shown in Figure 3-11. The DEKs in the drives are encrypted, the GK to unlock the drives is encrypted, and the DK to access to the GK keystore is encrypted. But, the DS8000 does not have access to all these keys. It must first get a key to unlock the DK from IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

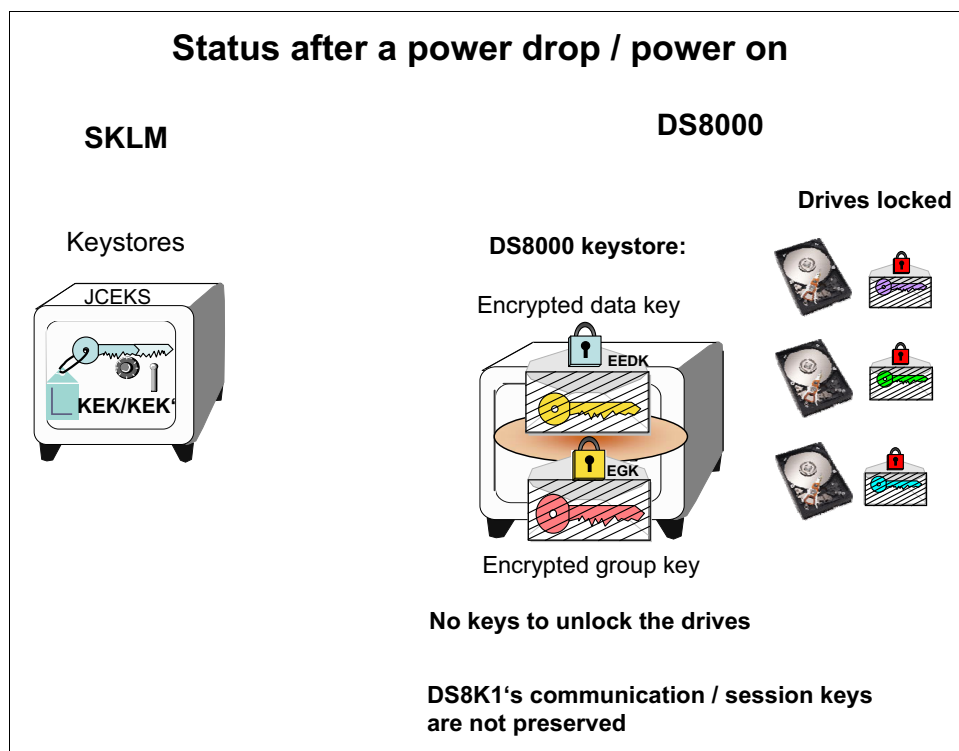


Figure 3-11 DS8000 status after a power drop/power on

The DS8000 must complete the following steps (see Figure 3-12) to regain access to locked drives and data at power-on:

1. The DS8000 generates a new session key pair (private and public) to communicate with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

Important: The DS8000 must be able to communicate with at least one IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server at power-on.

2. The DS8000 gets the EEDK from its keystore.
3. The DS8000 requests IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager to unwrap a wrapped DK by sending the request to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager with the saved EEDK, DSK, and DS8000 disk storage system's certificate.
4. The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager unwraps the EEDK with its key-label private key to obtain the DK.
5. The DK is wrapped with DS8000 disk storage system's DSK to create the SEDK.
6. The SEDK is returned to the DS8000.
7. The SEDK is decrypted with DS8000 disk storage system's DSK' to obtain the DK.
8. The DK is then used to unwrap the EGK to get the GK.
9. The serial number of the disk is read and hashed with the GK to obtain the access credential. The hashed access credential is sent to disk and the validity of the access credential is verified. If the access credential is valid, the disk encrypted DK is unwrapped to gain access to the data.

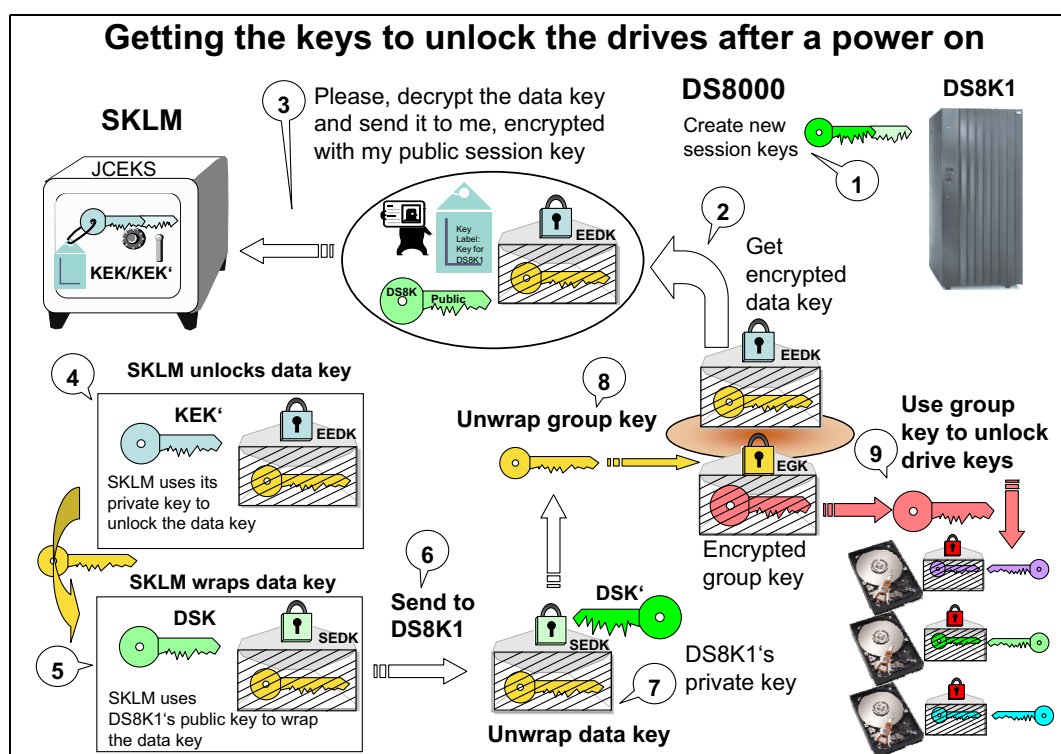


Figure 3-12 Regaining access to data after power-on

3.3 Key management by using KMIP

In this section, we describe how the key servers manage and create encryption keys. These keys are used by the DS8000 during encryption group and rank creation and DS8000 power-on time.

Important: Key negotiation and authentication between the key manager and DS8000 occur at DS8000 encryption configuration and power-on time only. Traffic use does not increase in an encrypted DS8000 at run time that is created by key negotiation.

The key manager server that uses KMIP uses the direct key method to serve keys to encryption-enabled DS8000 while IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager uses IBM Proprietary Protocol the wrapped key method.

In the direct key model, the DK is created and stored on the external key server upon request from the DS8000. It is created and registered on the key server. When the storage device requires the DK for its cryptographic purposes, the storage device requests the key, and the key server delivers it.

A single DK is associated to the DS8000. During a rekey, the DS8000 requests that a DK is created by the key server.

The DS8000 authenticates itself with a root Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate at the key server, or, for more security, with the root SSL certificate and a user ID (UID), which are created during manufacturing and set into the SSL certificate on the DS8000.

For more information, see the following resources:

- ▶ Setting up the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager with UID and SSL certificates for DK delivery, see “Creating an TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 84.
- ▶ Setting up the Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure (KS) servers with UID and SSL certificates for DK delivery, see 5.3.3, “Configuring the Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure platform” on page 111.
- ▶ Setting up the Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager (DSM) server with UID and SSL certificates for DK delivery, see 5.3.4, “Configuring Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager” on page 128.
- ▶ Setting up the Thales CipherTrust Manager server with UID and SSL certificates for DK delivery, see 5.3.6, “Configuring Thales CipherTrust Manager” on page 140.

Now, the user (Storage Administrator) can use the DS8000 GUI or DS CLI to register the key server on the DS8000. For more information about how to perform this action, see 5.4.3, “DS8000 configuration for data-at-rest encryption by using DS GUI” on page 157.

Next, an encryption group must be created by using the DS8000 GUI or DS CLI. As part of creating the encryption group, you must specify the encryption protocol KMIP. For more information about how to perform this action, see 5.4.3, “DS8000 configuration for data-at-rest encryption by using DS GUI” on page 157.

Note: The DS8000 supports only one DAR encryption group.

The encryption group creation process features the following steps (see Figure 3-13):

1. A user requests that an encryption group is created.
2. The DS8000 requests a DK generation from one of the previously created key servers.
3. The key server generates the DK and replicates it to all other key servers in the cluster, which can be up to four. It stores the key in an encrypted database.
4. The key server returns a universally unique identifier (UUID) back to the DS8000.
5. The DS8000 requests the DK from the key server by using that UUID that is received during the generate key request process.

Note: The UUID is a random 64-byte unique identifier with no relationship to the DK. It is created during initial encryption group creation when requesting the DK for the first time and used for identification.

6. The key server returns the DK, which is secured by Transport Layer Security (TLS)/SSL, to the DS8000.
7. The DS8000 creates the GK and wraps it with the DK to get an EGK.
8. The DS8000 stores the encrypted GK, UUID, and protocol information (KMIP) in its KR.
9. The DS8000 temporarily stores the DK in protected memory, but not on disk.
10. The DS8000 request to retrieve the DK from all configured key servers and compares it with the one in memory for verification. At least two of the configured key servers must return the correct DK.
11. The DS8000 deletes the DK and the GK from local (working) memory after verification is successful.

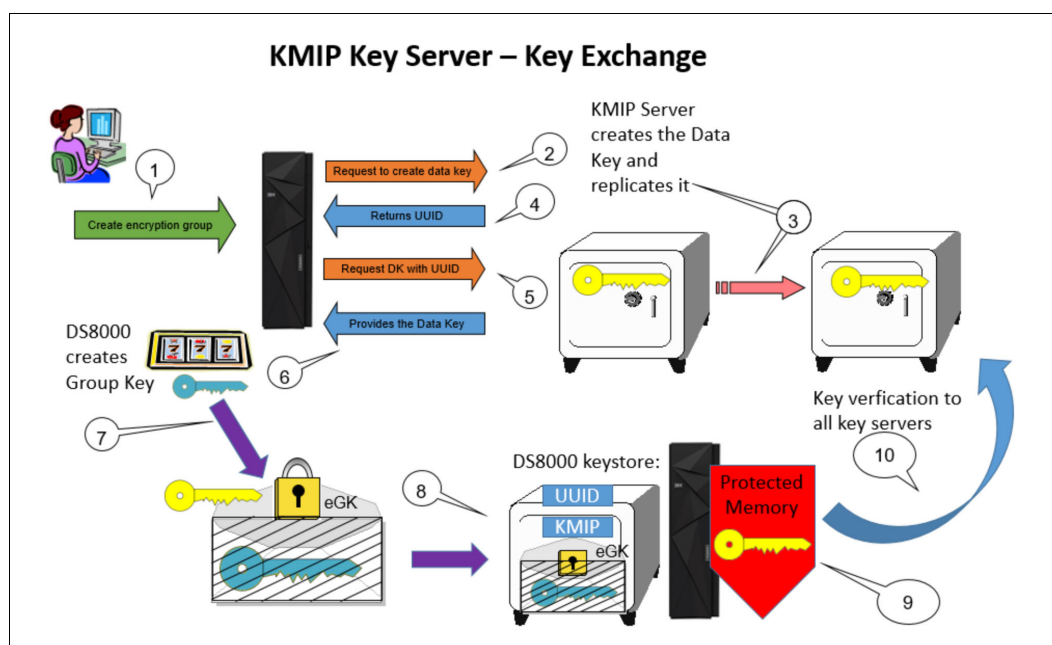


Figure 3-13 KMIP key server key exchange

After the encryption GK is created, the remaining drive encryption steps are the same as the steps that are used with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager that uses IBM Proprietary Protocol because the internal DS8000 encryption mechanism did not change. For more information, see 3.2, “Key management for IBM Proprietary Protocol with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 34. Cryptographic erase, rekey, and recovery key (RK) usage and actions are also mostly unchanged.

Accessing data after a power-on

After powering off and powering on, the DS8000 no longer has a DK or a GK in the clear. The DEKs in the drives are encrypted, the GK to unlock the drives is encrypted, and the DK to get access to the GK in the keystore is encrypted. But, the DS8000 cannot access all of these keys. Instead, it must first get the unlock DK from KMIP key server.

Because the DK is now stored encrypted in the key server, the DS8000 asks during power-on for the DK and authenticates itself with the UUID and its certificate. The key server then provides the key and the DS8000 can unlock the encrypted GK and continues to power on.

3.4 Encryption deadlock

The key server platform provides the operating environment for the key server application to run in, access its keystore on persistent storage, and interface with client storage devices, such as the DS8000 that requires key server services.

The keystore data is accessed by the key server application through a password that is specified by the client. As such, the keystore data is encrypted at rest, independently of where it is stored. However, any online data that is required to initiate the key server must not be stored on a storage server that depends on the key server to enable access. If this constraint is not met, the key server cannot complete its initial program load (IPL) and does not become operational.

This required data includes the boot image for the operating system that runs on the key server and any other data that is required by that operating system and its associated software stack to run the key server application to allow the key server to access its keystore, and to allow the key server to communicate with its storage device clients. Similarly, any backups of the keystore must not be stored on storage that depends on a key server to access data.

Not strictly following these implementation requirements might result in the situation where the encrypted data can no longer be accessed temporarily, or worse, permanently. This situation is referred to as *encryption deadlock*.

Important (encryption deadlock): Any data that is required to make the key server operational must *not* be stored on an encrypted storage device that is managed by this particular key server. Again, this situation is referred to as an *encryption deadlock*. This situation is similar to having a bank vault that is unlocked with a combination and the only copy of the combination is locked inside the vault.

A temporary encryption deadlock and a permanent encryption deadlock feature the following differences:

- ▶ Temporary encryption deadlock

The temporary encryption deadlock indicates a situation where the DS8000 cannot access its disk devices because the key servers are not online, the network is down, or for any other temporary hardware-related errors. This temporary failure can be fixed at the client site.

- ▶ Permanent encryption deadlock

This permanent encryption deadlock is the worse case. Here, all key servers that manage some set of data cannot be made operational because they depend on inaccessible encrypted storage, or all encrypted online and offline data that is managed by the set of key servers is, in effect, cryptographically erased and for all practical purposes permanently lost.

When considering encryption in your environment, consider the following factors:

- ▶ As the availability of encryption-capable devices becomes more pervasive, more data is migrated from non-encrypted storage to encrypted storage. Even if the key servers are initially configured correctly, it is possible that a Storage Administrator might accidentally migrate some data that is required by the key server from non-encrypted to encrypted storage.
- ▶ Generally, some layers of virtualization in the I/O stack hierarchy can cause difficulties for the client to maintain awareness of where all the files (necessary to make the key server, and its associated keystore, available) are stored. The key server can access its data through a database that runs on a file system that runs on a logical volume manager, which communicates with a storage subsystem that provisions logical volumes with capacity that is obtained from other subordinate storage arrays. The data that is required by the key server might end up provisioned over various storage devices, each of which can be independently encryption-capable or encryption-enabled.
- ▶ Consolidation of servers and storage tends to drive data migration and move more data under a generalized shared storage environment. This storage environment becomes encryption-capable as time goes on.
- ▶ All IBM server platforms support fabric-attached boot devices and storage. Some servers do not support internal boot devices. Therefore, boot devices are commonly present within the generalized storage environment. These storage devices are accessible to generalized storage management tools that support data management and relocation.
- ▶ For containerized IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager environments, the container platform should use persistent storage that is not handled by the same IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. Caution must be taken so that the container is moved to storage that has encryption keys that are stored in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager container.

To mitigate the risk of an encryption deadlock, a stand-alone key server (also called an *isolated key server*) is a best practice, and the client must be directly involved in managing the encryption environment.

For more information, see Chapter 4, “Planning and guidelines for IBM DS8000 encryption” on page 67, and Chapter 5, “Implementing IBM DS8000 encryption” on page 79.

3.5 Working with a recovery key

To get out of a deadlock situation (or as a recovery option if all key servers are destroyed and unrecoverable), use the DS8000 to create an RK, a Security Administrator can unlock a DS8000 without the involvement of a key server. It is also possible to *disable* the RK.

Note: Consider the following important points:

- ▶ An RK can be created for DAR encryption *only*. It is not supported for TCT or IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. It is also not created when a local encryption key is used.
- ▶ An RK can be created during the DAR encryption enablement process only. You cannot create an RK when a DS8000 is configured as encrypted. Similarly, disabling the RK management is allowed only for an unconfigured DS8000. Creating or disabling an RK must be one of the first tasks when setting up the DS8000 for DAR encryption.

Managing the RK requires two people (roles): A Storage Administrator (admin) and a Security Administrator (secadmin). The Security Administrator is a new role for DS8000 users. A Storage Administrator cannot create a Security Administrator user on a DS8000 and vice versa. The Security Administrator maintains the RK and keeps it safe, and the Storage Administrator must approve every action of the Security Administrator.

Client responsibility: Although DS8000 supports two roles, Storage Administrator and Security Administrator, the client is responsible for assigning these roles to two *separate* individuals.

3.5.1 Recovery key management

Setting up an RK involves the following steps, as shown in Figure 3-14:

1. The Security Administrator user requests the creation of an RK, which can be done with the DS CLI or the GUI. This request function is not available to other users.
2. At some stage in the process, the Storage Administrator must approve the action that the Security Administrator is going to perform.
3. With the request to generate an RK, the DS8000 creates a random 256-bit RK.
4. The DS8000 generates the recovery signature (RS) from a secure hash of the RK.
5. The storage facility generates an asymmetric public/private key pair from a random 2048-bit number. The private key is referred to as the *primary recovery key* (PRK) and the public key is referred to as the *secondary recovery key* (SRK).
6. The DS8000 wraps the PRK with the RK to produce the encrypted primary recovery key (EPRK).
7. The EPRK, SRK, and RS are stored in multiple places within the storage facility for reliability.
8. The storage facility provides the RK to the Security Administrator. The system follows a verification process, which is not described here (the Security Administrator must reinput the RK).
9. The DS8000 deletes the PRK and the RK.

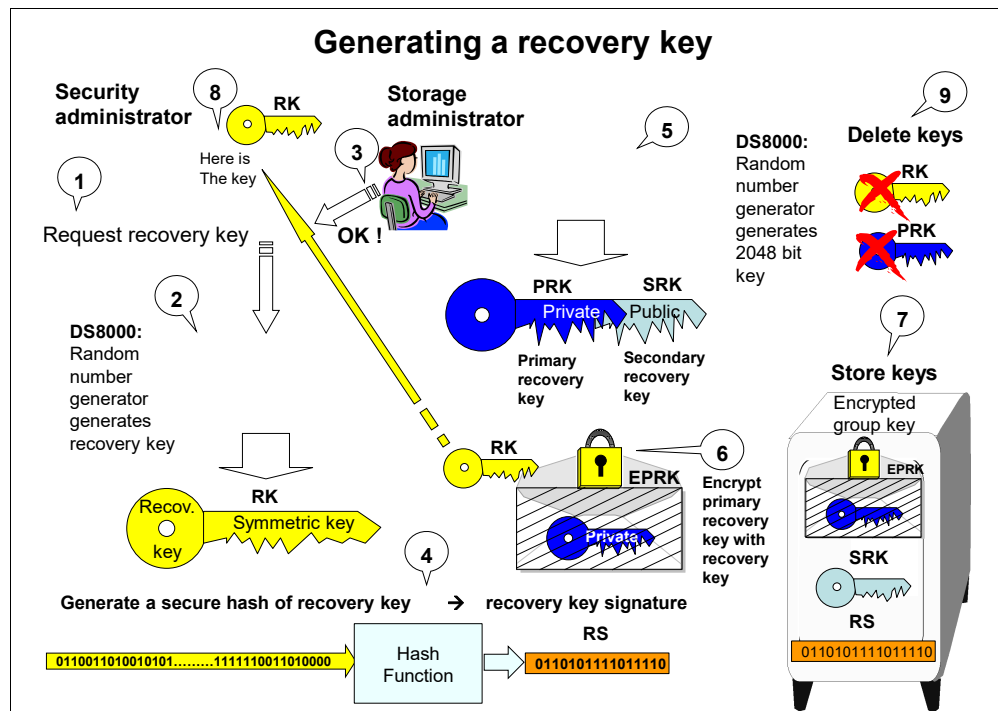


Figure 3-14 Generating a recovery key

When you configure an encryption group with an RK defined, you must complete the following steps in addition to the steps (see Figure 3-15) that are shown in Figure 3-7 on page 39:

1. The DS8000 wraps the GK with the SRK to produce the encrypted group recovery key (EGRK).
2. The EGRK is stored with the EPRK and the other encrypted keys (EEDK and EKG) in the DS8000 keystore.

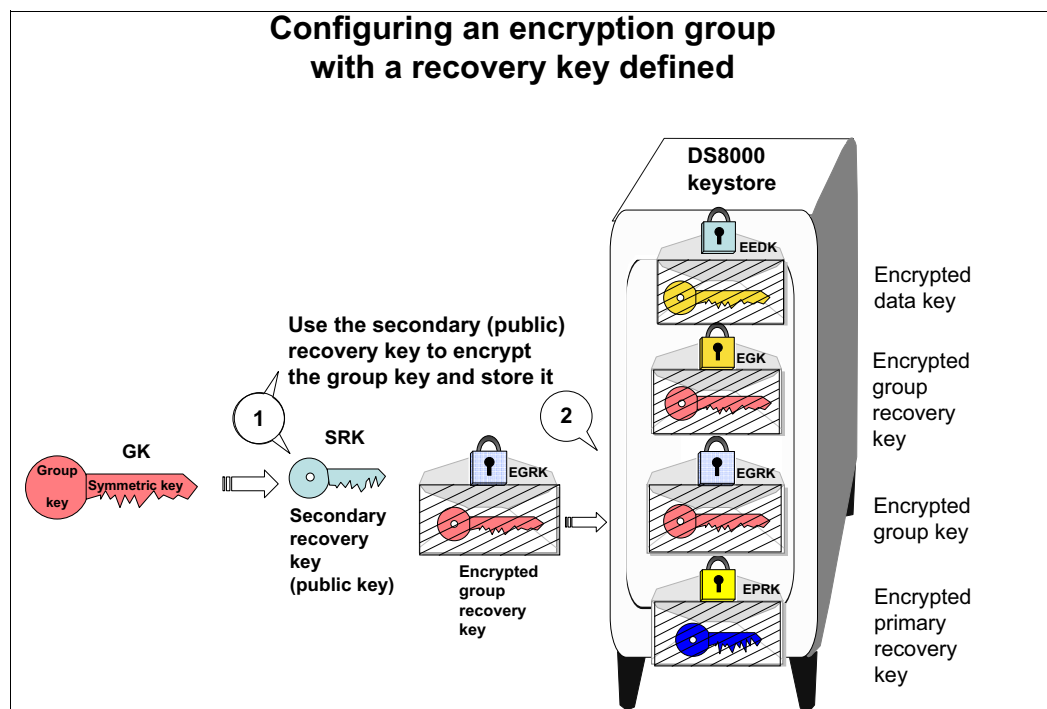


Figure 3-15 Setting up encryption with a recovery key defined

After the encryption group is configured, ranks can be created and assigned to the encryption group.

Using a recovery key to unlock a DS8000

After a power-off and power-on, the DS8000 attempts to contact all other configured key servers to obtain the required key if it cannot obtain the required DK from a key server.

On a DS8000 with an RK configured, an option exists to allow a Security Administrator to enter the RK.

If the Security Administrator provides the RK and the Storage Administrator approves this operation, the DS8000 uses the RK to unwrap the “EPRK to obtain the PRK. The RK process includes the following steps:

1. The DS8000 cannot communicate with any key server.
2. The DS8000 allows the RK to be entered.
3. The Security Administrator enters the RK.
4. The Storage Administrator approves the action.
5. The RK is used to unlock the PRK.
6. The PRK is used to unlock the GK.
7. The GK is used to unlock the drives.

Now, access to data is restored.

Figure 3-16 shows the using the recovery key.

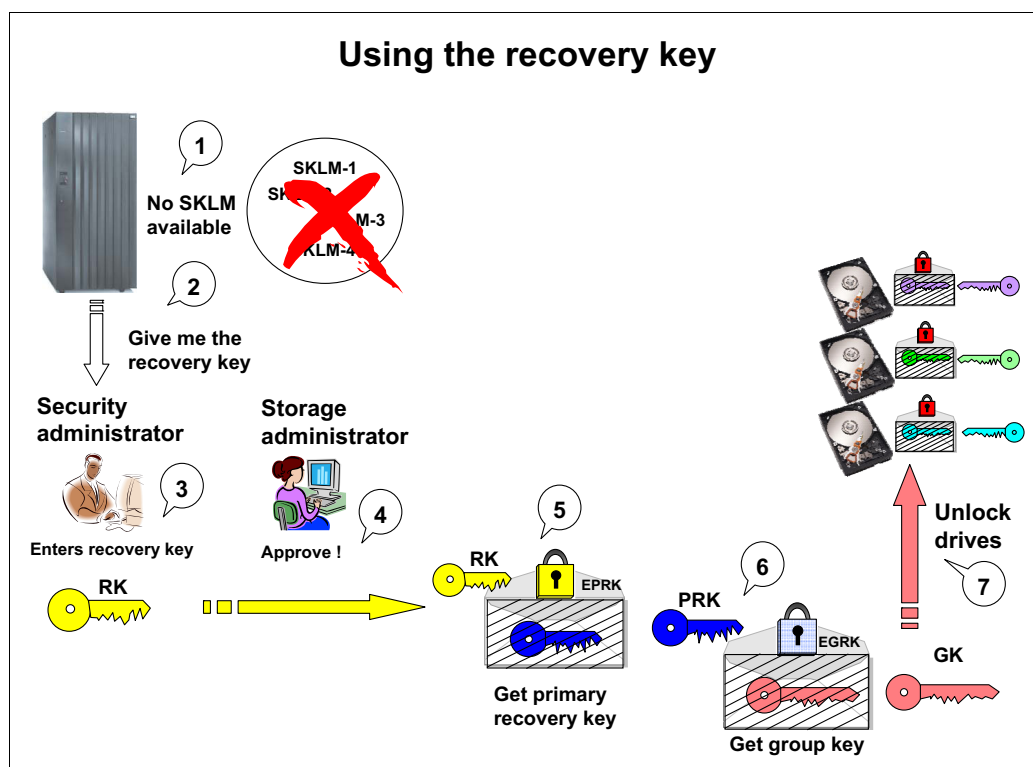


Figure 3-16 Using the recovery key

Changing the recovery key

The DS8000 also supports functions to rekey, verify, and unconfigure an RK.

The rekey and verify RK functions can be performed at any time while the RK is configured and a key manager server is available. Access to a key manager server is required. It allows the DS8000 to verify that it is in the correct environment.

Only when the key manager can decrypt the DK can the DS8000 be sure that it is in the same environment (see Figure 3-17 on page 53). Only then, it generates a new RK. For example, rekeying the RK is not possible on a DS8000 that was stolen and placed in a separate environment.

During the rekey operation, the following steps are completed:

1. The DS8000 sends the EEDK and its public key to Key Manager Server and requests a rekey validation.
2. Key Manager attempts to decrypt the DK.
3. If Key Manager can decrypt the DK, it signals the DS8000 that it can proceed to generate a new RK.
4. The DS8000 generates a new RK.

Changing the RK does not erase the data.

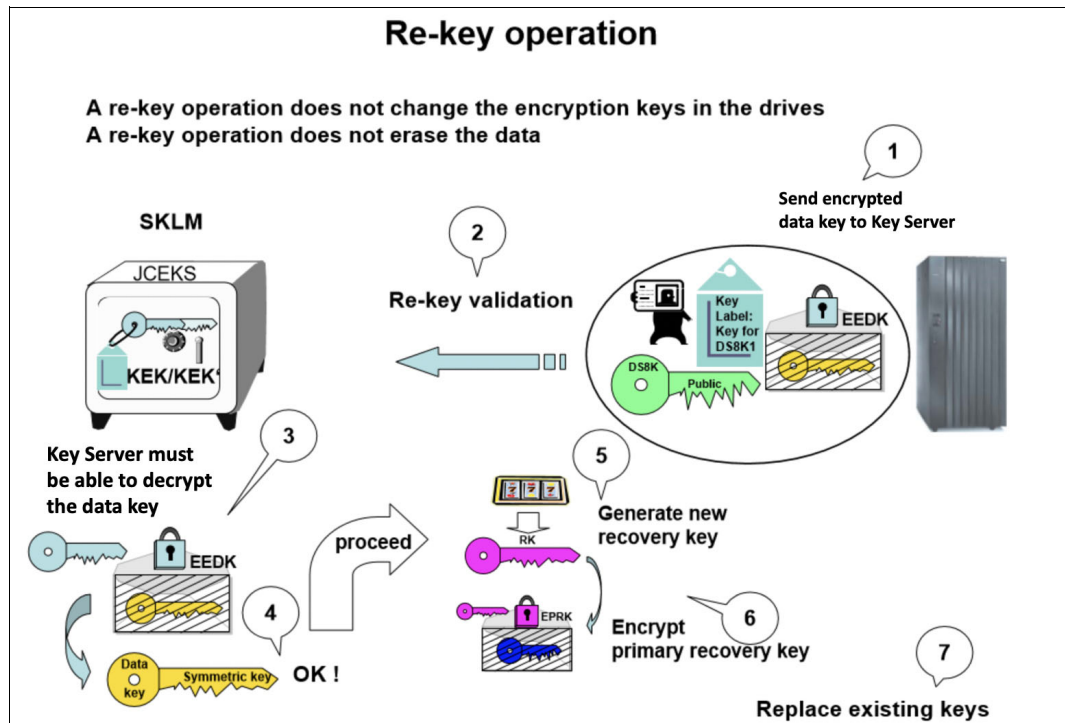


Figure 3-17 Rekeying the recovery key

3.5.2 Disabling or enabling a recovery key

The RK can be optionally disabled or configured before establishing an initial logical configuration. This section describes the steps that are required for disabling or enabling the RK.

Disabling a recovery key

If you do not want to manage an RK in your environment, it can be disabled. However, this process must be done as your first task before the encryption group is defined. The process of disabling the RK includes the following steps:

1. The Security Administrator (secadmin) requests the disabling of an RK. This process can be done by using the DS CLI or the GUI. This request function is available to a user with the Security Administrator role only.
2. The Storage Administrator (admin) approves the disabling status.
3. The RK enters the *disable* state.

The encryption group can now be defined. For more information, see 5.5, “Configuration for TCT encryption” on page 181.

Enabling a recovery key

When an RK is disabled, it can later be reenabled. This action is disruptive. All data (on the DS8000) must be erased as a prerequisite.

Enabling the RK management involves the following steps:

1. The Security Administrator user requests the enabling of a disabled RK. This process can be done with the DS CLI or the GUI. This request function is not available to other users.
2. The Storage Administrator approves the enabling status.

The RK can now be created, as described in 3.5.1, “Recovery key management” on page 50. For more information, see 5.5, “Configuration for TCT encryption” on page 181.

3.6 Dual key server support (IBM Proprietary Protocol only)

The DS8000 supports the configuration of one or two key labels for the DAR encryption group when using IBM Proprietary Protocol. IBM Proprietary Protocol uses the concept of key labels whereas KMIP does not.

When all key server platforms operate their keystores in clear-key mode or when only a single host platform is used for all key servers, a single key label is typically sufficient to allow all key servers to interoperate with the DS8000. In this case, it is possible for the asymmetric key pair that is maintained for the key label by the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager to be propagated across all supporting key servers so that each key server has the necessary keys to wrap and unwrap the one EEDK that is maintained on the DS8000.

When two key server platforms and at least one of the key server platforms are operating in secure key mode (which is available on the z/OS platform), a second key label is typically required.

Note: Consider the following points:

- ▶ Having a key server platform in secure key mode on the z/OS platform for the DS8000 is not at all common. Typically, the z/OS runs on volumes that are on a DS8000, which is encrypted. This situation increases the chance of running into a deadlock situation. Having a second DS8000 that is not encrypted to run the key server also is not common.
- ▶ In an IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Multi-Master configuration, at least two key servers are deployed and keys are automatically replicated.

A key server operating in secure key mode typically does not support exporting any private keys outside of the key server platform. In this case, the following actions are performed to synchronize keys between key servers (see Figure 3-18 on page 55):

- ▶ Key label 1 (with public and private key) is configured on a UNIX platform.
- ▶ Key label 2 (with public and private key) is configured on the z/OS platform.
- ▶ The public key from key label 1 is exported to the IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS (abbreviated as “SECURITY KEY LIFECYCLE MANAGER-z/OS” in Figure 3-18 on page 55 and Figure 3-19 on page 56).
- ▶ The public key from key label 2 is exported to platform IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for UNIX (abbreviated as “SECURITY KEY LIFECYCLE MANAGER-UNIX” in Figure 3-18 on page 55 and Figure 3-19 on page 56).

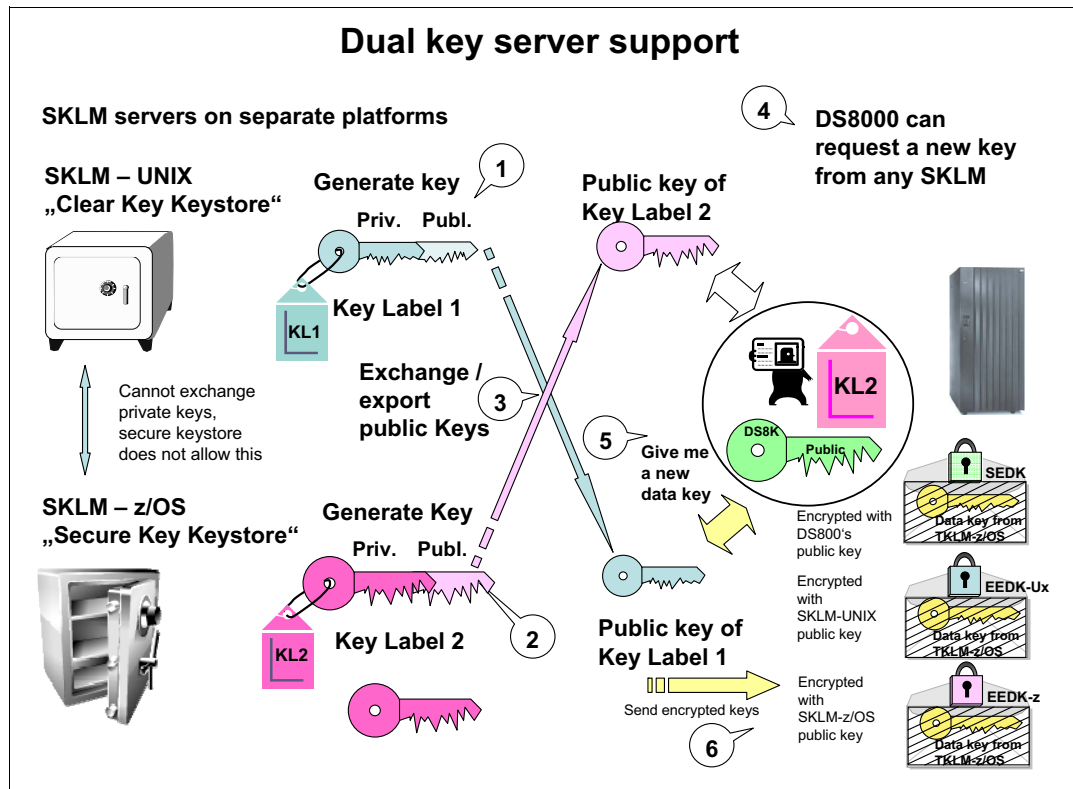


Figure 3-18 Dual key server support

Now, all key servers on both platforms have the *public keys for both key labels* and the *private of one or the other key label*. The DS8000 can request a new key from *any* key server and store an EEDK that is associated with each key label. Therefore, the DS8000 now includes two separate EEDKs.

Each IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager has a “public key” of each key label so it can generate two EEDKs.

The following steps summarize the example that is shown in Figure 3-18:

1. IBM Security Key Guardium Lifecycle Manager for UNIX creates a public/private key pair for key label 1.
2. IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS creates a public/private key pair for key label 2.
3. Both Security Key Lifecycle Managers exchange their public keys.
4. A DS8000 can request a DK from any IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. For this example, assume that it requests the DK from IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS.
5. IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS generates the DK, wraps it with the DS8000 disk storage system's public key to produce the SEDK, wraps the DK with its own public key to produce EEDK with Z (EEDK-z), and wraps the DK with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for the UNIX public key to produce EEDK with UNIX (EEDK-Ux). Then, the SEDK, the EEDK-z, and the EEDK-Ux are sent to the DS8000.

The DS8000 can request the EEDKs to be unwrapped by any key server because the request contains both EEDKs (see Figure 3-19), and any key server has the private key for at least one of the two EEDKs in the request. Secure key mode operation is maintained during the exporting of secure keys because only the public key is exported.

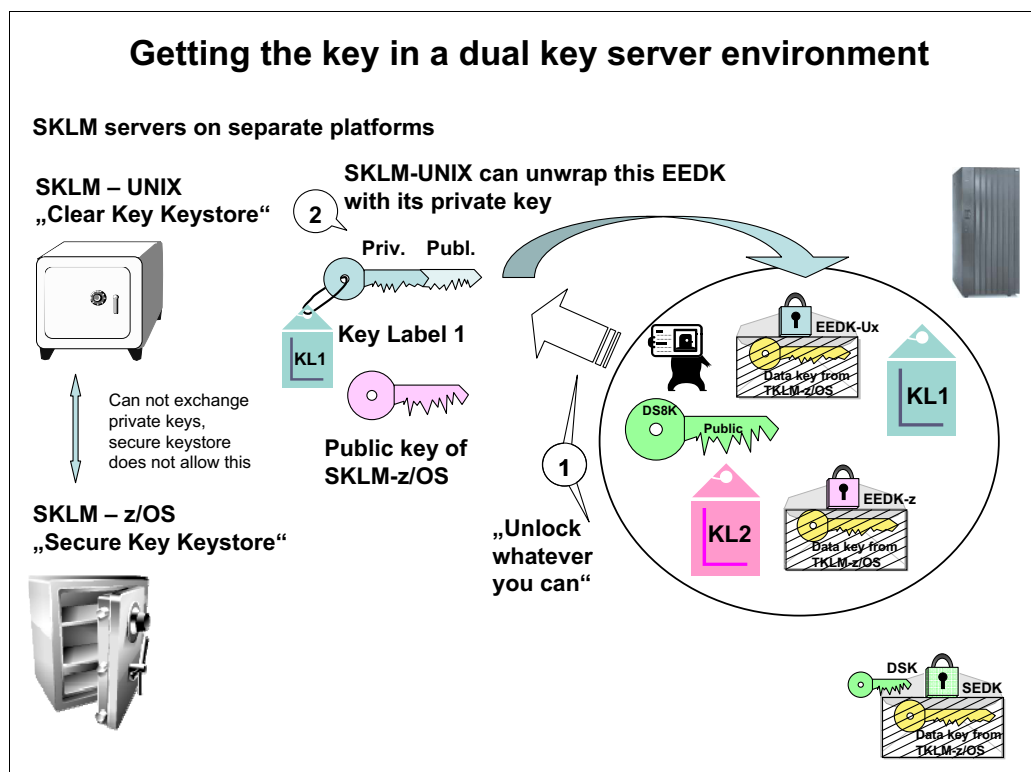


Figure 3-19 Getting the recovery key in a dual-server environment

In the example that is shown in Figure 3-19, the DS8000 sends its request to decrypt the DK to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for UNIX with both key labels and EEDKs. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for UNIX can decrypt the EEDK-Ux that is associated with key label 1.

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for UNIX can now send the encrypted DK back to the DS8000 server.

3.7 DS8000 TCT encryption key management by using KMIP

As described in 3.1, "DS8000 data-at-rest encryption" on page 32, DAR encryption is implemented in the DS8000 by using external key servers. This approach provides physical and logical isolation between the encryption keys and the DS8000 and thus protects data if the DS8000 or any of its drives were stolen.

However, DAR encryption does not protect data as it is transferred to or from the cloud when TCT is used.

Starting with DS8000 Release 8.5, you can encrypt data as it is transmitted between the DS8000 and the cloud. This encryption mechanism also uses external key servers.

This section describes how the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and Gemalto SafeNet KS servers manages and creates the encryption keys that are used by the DS8000 during encryption group and cloud server connection configuration.

Restriction: As of this writing, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition does not support TCT encryption.

It also describes the major components that are used with TCT encryption and behavior during normal and abnormal operation.

In the direct key model, a DK is stored on the key server. The DK is created by and registered on the key server. When the storage device requires the DK for its cryptographic purposes, the storage device requests the key, and the key server delivers it.

For more information about TCT functions, see *IBM DS8000 Transparent Cloud Tiering: DS8000 Release 9.3*, SG24-8381.

TCT encryption components

The major components for TCT encryption are as follows:

- Key Manager:

The Key Manager creates and stores the DK with the association to the Device Group.

The DK is an Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) 256 symmetric wrapping key that is identified by a DS8000 device-specific UUID and is stored in the cache of the encrypting DS8000 after initial retrieval from Key Manager as well. It wraps the Cloud Encryption Key (CEK) to obtain Encrypted Cloud Encryption Key (ECEK).

- DS8000:

The DS8000 stores the DK in the cache and its specific UUID in the KR. It generates and stores a specific CEK in the Encryption Engine. Consider the following points:

- The CEK is an AES 256 symmetric key that is used to encrypt / decrypt data that is stored in the cloud and will be destroyed after use and wrapping.
- The UUID is created by manufacturing and is unique for every DS8000. It is stored with the Cloud Data Object and in the KR of the DS8000. It identifies the DK uniquely on the key server.

- Data Object:

The Data Object is the actual data that is stored in the Cloud Data Storage. It includes the encrypted customer data, the specific UUID from the encrypting DS8000 and the ECEK.

The ECEK is the result of wrapping the CEK with the DK.

These components are shown in Figure 3-20.

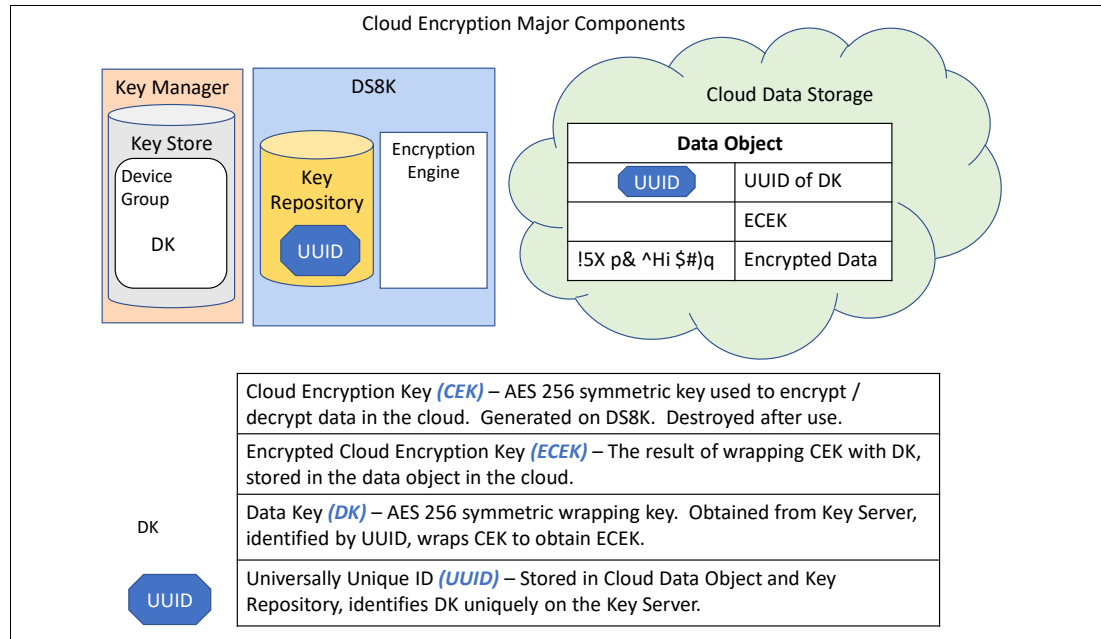


Figure 3-20 Major components of cloud encryption

Encrypted writes to the cloud

Every encrypted data object write operation to the cloud is handled by the encrypting DS8000. The DS8000 adds its unique identifier to the data object and encrypts the data with a new unique CEK every time a write happens. All DKs are stored in the encryption key managers. The unencrypted CEK is destroyed after use.

Writes for encrypted cloud follow the following high-level write sequence:

1. DS8K sends a UUID to the Key Manager and requests a DK.
2. DS8K receives the DK from the Key Manager.

Note: Creating the DK occurs when the encryption key group is created, which is a one-time process. For more information about creating the encryption key group, see *IBM DS8000 Transparent Cloud Tiering: DS8000 Release 9.3, SG24-8381*.

3. DS8K uses a CEK to encrypt data.
4. DS8K wraps the CEK with the DK to obtain the ECEK.
5. DS8K stores its UUID, the ECEK, and the Encrypted Data in the Cloud Storage Object.

The write sequence is shown in Figure 3-21.

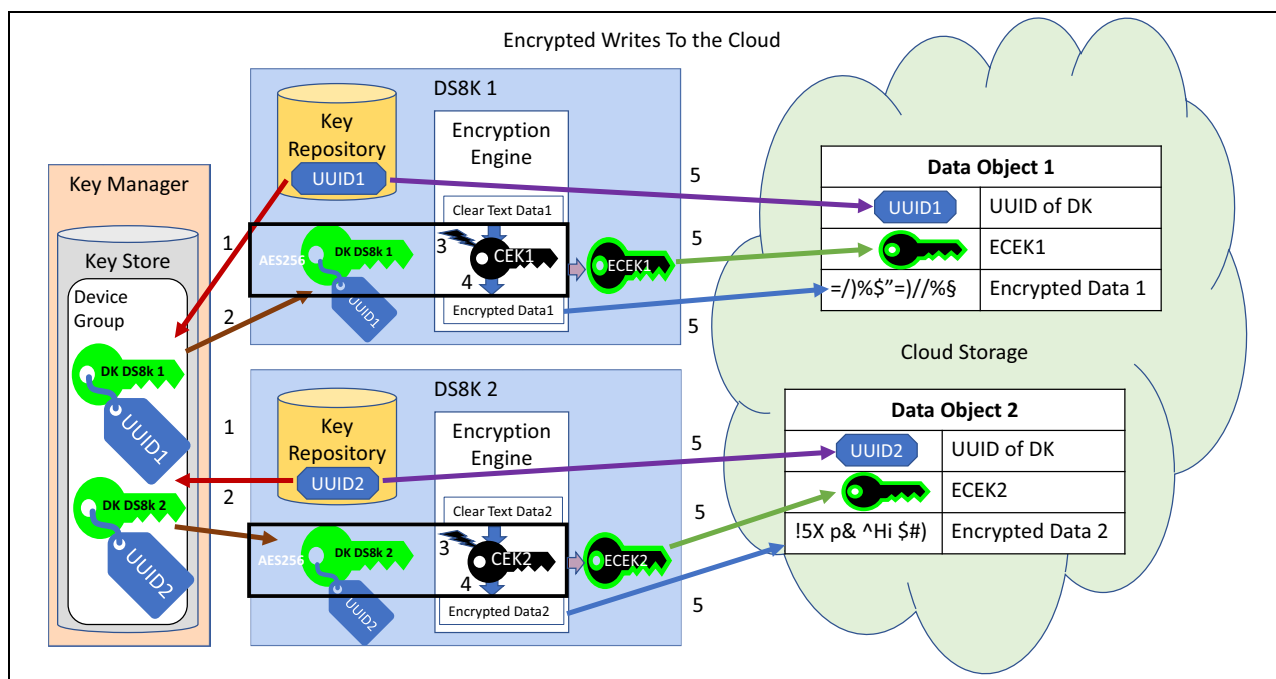


Figure 3-21 Encrypted writes to the cloud

In addition to the encrypted data, every Data Object in the cloud that is written by a specific DS8000 includes the unencrypted UUID of the DS8000 and the CEK. This key is encrypted by the DK that remains in the key server and in the encrypting DS8000.

Encrypted reads from the cloud

A DS8000 that was not the encrypting system might read an encrypted data object from the cloud. This situation might happen during normal operations or in a failure scenario where the original encrypting DS8000 is unavailable at the time of the read request.

The DS8000 with the read request must be part of the encryption environment, with access to the same key servers that the writing DS8000 had. The reading DS8000 must be able to obtain the correct wrapping DK from the key server to unwrap the CEK and to decrypt the data object. It stores the foreign UUID in its own KR and the foreign DK, requested from the key server during the read request, in the cache. If the UUID of the Data Object read matches the UUID stored in the KR, the DK is retrieved from Cache if it was initially retrieved from the key manager.

Reads for encrypted cloud follow this high-level read sequence:

1. DS8K 1 reads in Data Object 2 from Cloud Storage and DS8K 2 reads in Data Object 1 from Cloud Storage.
2. DS8K 1 sends UUID2 to Key Manager and DS8K 2 sends UUID1 to Key Manager.
3. DS8K 1 receives DK DS8k 2 with UUID2 from Key Manager. DS8K 2 receives DK DS8k 1 with UUID1 from Key Manager.
4. DS8K 1 unwraps CEK2 and DS8K 2 unwraps CEK1.
5. DS8K 1 decrypts Encrypted Data 2 and DS8K 2 decrypts Encrypted Data 1.

The read sequence is shown in Figure 3-22.

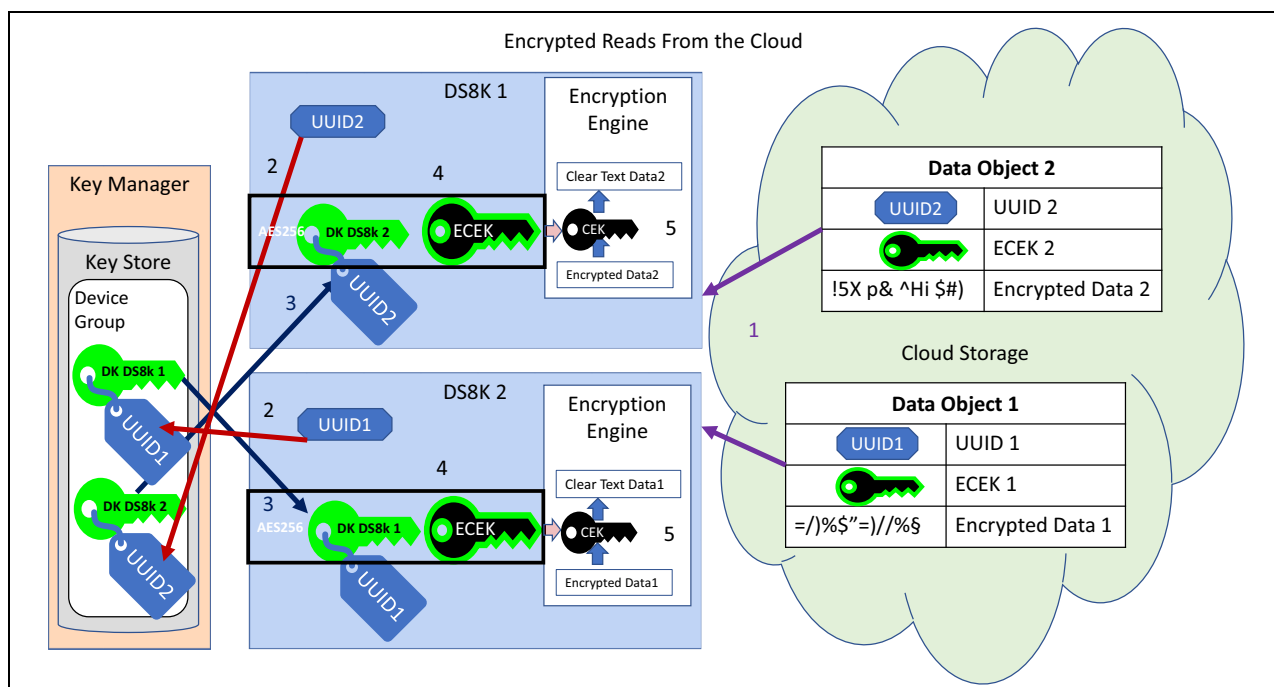


Figure 3-22 Encrypted reads from the cloud

DS8K 2 is now able to read all Data Object encrypted by DS8K 1 and vice versa without an extra key retrieval from the key server each time.

3.8 DS8000 endpoint encryption key management by using KMIP

With DAR encryption, your data is protected when stored on FDE drives. With TCT, your data is protected when being transferred between the cloud when using TCT. Now, with IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security, your data can be protected when transferred between the DS8900F storage system and an IBM z15.

Starting with DS8000 Release 9.0, you can use IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption to encrypt data as it is transmitted between an IBM z15 central processor complex (CPC) and the DS8900F. This encryption mechanism also uses external key servers.

This section describes how the IBM Security Key Guardium Lifecycle Manager manages and creates the encryption keys that are used by the DS8000 during encryption group and server connection configuration.

Important: For IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security, it is a best practice to use IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Traditional Edition 4.1.0.1 or later. As of this writing, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Container Edition does not support IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

This section also describes the major components that are used with IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption and behavior during normal and abnormal operations.

For more information about IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption functions, see *IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for IBM DS8900F and IBM Z*, SG24-8455.

IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption components

IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security involves three major components:

- ▶ Two endpoint devices:
 - A z15, IBM Z CPC, also referred to as the *initiator*.
 - An IBM DS8900F storage system, also referred to as the *target*.

IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is set up between individual IBM FICON® or Fibre Channel (FC) port pairs of these devices. For FICON, the ports are logically connected through the definitions in the *input/output control data set* (IOCDS) of the host system. IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security requires no changes to the IOCDS.

- ▶ An *external key manager* that maintains the shared secrets that identify the trusted relationships between endpoint devices.

Figure 3-23 shows the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security infrastructure.

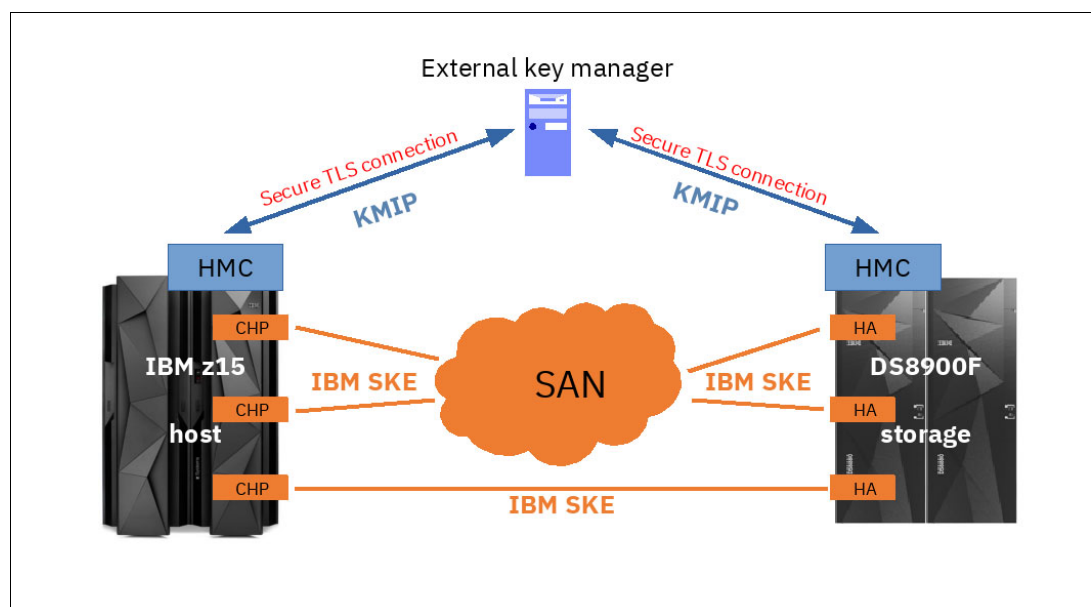


Figure 3-23 Main IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security components

External key manager

The external key manager maintains the shared secrets that associate pairs of host and storage system, or initiators and targets. Such a shared secret is called a Device Authentication Key (DAK). It is stored securely in the external key manager keystore. To make sure that a DAK is always available when needed, the external key manager must be redundant and configured for continuous availability. A Master-Clone setup with daily replication is not sufficient to handle this situation.

Important: If IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is in place and enforced, the external key manager is a crucial component during the start of an IBM Z CPC or any connected DS8900F storage system. If IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is unavailable, IBM FICON connections between host and storage fail to start and data cannot be accessed.

The endpoint devices retrieve the DAK from the external key manager:

- ▶ When IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is set up for the first time (for example, at power-up).
- ▶ When the DAK is renewed according to the specified IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security policies.

During normal operation, each endpoint device maintains a copy of the DAK in its *Local Key Manager* (LKM) to avoid excessive external key manager traffic.

Note: The LKM function is implemented in the IBM Z firmware.

The external key manager and endpoint devices use the industry-standard KMIP for their communication. IBM developed an extension to the KMIP protocol that adds support for peer-to-peer device groups, which you can use to store the trusted association of two devices (peers). The peers are the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security endpoints, with the IBM Z system being the owner of the group, and the DS8900F storage system the partner. The FC worldwide node names (WWNNs) of the endpoint devices are used to provide unique identification. One such device group is created and maintained by the external key manager for each IBM Z CPC and DS8900F pair.

Figure 3-24 shows an example with two device groups, which associates an IBM z15 with two DS8900F systems.

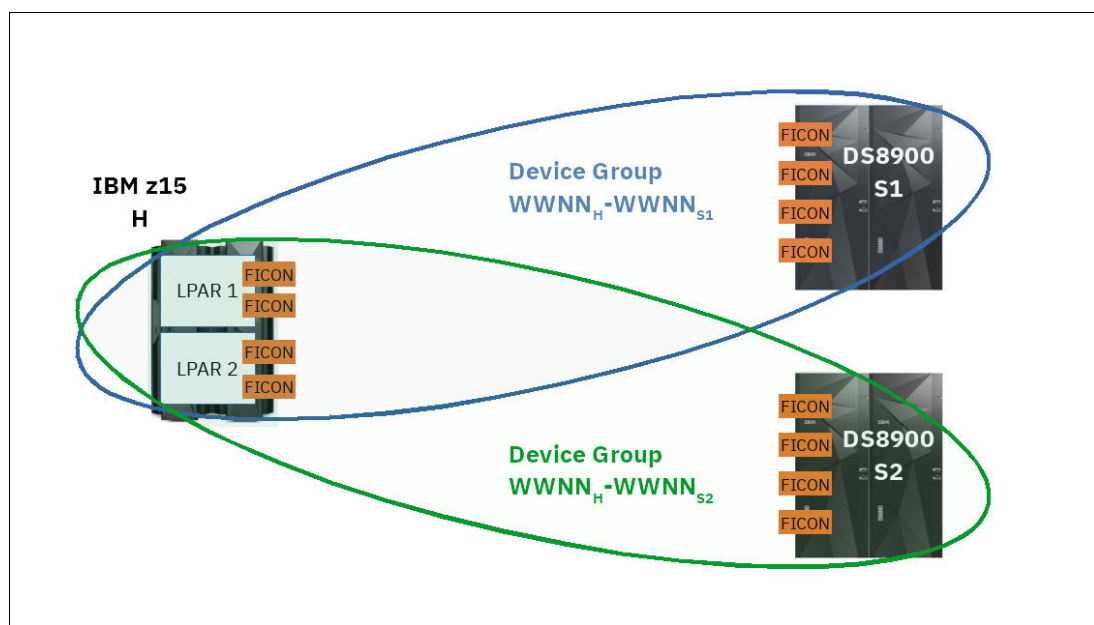


Figure 3-24 Peer-to-peer device group example

The external key manager is composed of the names of the peer-to-peer device groups from the WWNNs of the peers (endpoint devices) in the group. The device group contains the security credentials (certificates) that the external key manager needs to communicate with each of the peers and their common DAK. The peer-to-peer device group and initial DAK are created on the external key manager automatically at the request of the IBM Z CPC.

When endpoints must retrieve the DAK from the external key manager, they provide the WWNNs of both peers and identify themselves with their certificate. The external key manager then pulls the DAK from the matching device group and passes it to the requesting peer. The device certificates are presented to the external key manager by the HMCs (IBM Z and DS8900F) on behalf of the initiator and target, respectively. This process is out-of-band communication.

Note: IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager that is configured in Multi-Master mode is the only external key manager solution that is supported for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

Endpoints: IBM Z CPC

Note: An IBM z15 with at least one encryption capable IBM FICON adapter (FICON Express 16SA feature) is required for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

From an FC or FICON perspective, the IBM Z CPC is the initiator of all I/O operations and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration activities. You can configure and enable IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security on an IBM Z CPC when the following requirements are met:

- ▶ The IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security feature is activated.
- ▶ The CP Assist Cryptographic Facility (CPACF) feature is activated (however, the Fibre Channel Security Endpoint Security feature cannot be ordered without CPACF enablement).
- ▶ At least one encryption capable FC adapter is installed.

To enable IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for an IBM Z CPC, you must define only the external key manager (IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager) servers IP addresses or hostnames, and port numbers) in the corresponding configuration window in the IBM Z HMC. The IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security firmware that is running on the IBM Z CPC performs all the necessary steps to set up secure communication to the external key manager by using the HMC as the communication gateway and user interface.

The IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security firmware in the IBM Z CPC retrieves the DAK from the external key manager when needed and stores the DAK in the LKM. The local copy of the DAK is used for normal operations to avoid excessive external key manager traffic. The LKM uses the DAK in the authentication sequence with target peers and starts a key renewal of the DAK when it is due.

This part of the IBM Z firmware runs in an encapsulated container to help ensure that the secrets it keeps cannot be compromised, for example, when a dump or trace is generated. It does not use client memory or processing power because it runs with system internal resources.

Endpoints: IBM DS8900F storage system

Storage Systems are targets for I/O operations and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration requests. A DS8900F receives an IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security request from an IBM Z CPC and acts on it. The DS8900F does not start endpoint protection on its own.

To support IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security, a DS8900F system must access the same external key manager (IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers) as the IBM Z CPC. You can define the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers to the DS8900F through its HMC by using the GUI or DS CLI.

In addition to providing the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers' IP addresses and port numbers, you must ensure that the following credentials for secure communication between DS8900F and IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager are in place:

- ▶ Export communication certificates from the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers and import them to the DS8900F.
- ▶ The factory-installed default communication certificates of a DS8900F or Z CPC are known and trusted by the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers. You do not have to take any further action if you intend to use those certificates.
- ▶ If you intend to use another certificate, you must install it on the DS8900F and import it to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers.

Because the WWNNs of the endpoints are used to associate them with each other, you also must ensure that any certificate you provide for an endpoint contains its WWNN in the **Subject Alternative Name** field.

Note: If a DS8900F is configured for another type of encryption (DAR or TCT), the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers can also be used as external key manager for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security if they meet the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security requirements.

Similar to the IBM Z CPC, the HMC acts mainly as a user interface and communication gateway in this case. Communication to the external key manager is started by the DS8900F server nodes. Both the IBM Z CPC and DS8900F server nodes also have their own LKM to keep the DAK during normal operations.

After you complete the steps to configure a DS8900F for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security, it contacts the external key manager and tests whether it can perform all necessary KMIP operations.

Note: For these tests, the DS8900F creates a special peer-to-peer device group with the external key manager. In the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager list of device groups, you can identify it by its name. This name consists of the letter "D", which is followed by the DS8900F WWNN (repeated twice), which indicates that it is both the owner and partner of the group.

Fibre Channel endpoints

Until now, we only looked at the endpoint devices (host and storage) as a whole. However, IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is a function that protects data flowing between the following FC port pairs:

- ▶ Host or initiator ports
- ▶ Storage or target ports

The port pairs perform the authentication and encryption set up individually. They communicate inband over FC and use the IBM Secure Key Exchange (SKE) protocol, which was developed by IBM based on the industry standard Fibre Channel Security Protocols 2 (FC-SP 2).

3.8.1 IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security settings and policies

If all hardware and software requirements are met and you successfully defined the external key manager to both endpoint devices (initiator and target), you can enable IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security on a storage system host adapter (target) port level. A target port can be configured to one or more initiator ports by the IOCDS. The policy setting affects all possible connections to this target port from any configured initiator ports. You can set each port individually to one of the following IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security policies:

Disabled	The target port does not signal IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security capability to the initiators. Therefore, all attached initiator ports do not try to set up IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. The FC endpoint pairs act as if IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security did not exist.
Enabled	The target port signals IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security capability to the initiators. If an attached initiator port is IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security capable, it tries to set up IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. However, the port pair can set up a connection, regardless of whether the authorization succeeds. If a host port is not IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security capable, or if the necessary connection to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is not yet set up, it cannot start the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security authorization sequence. However, it can connect to the target without it. This policy is also called <i>Audit Mode</i> because you can use it to verify the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration without affecting access to data.
Enforced	The target port signals IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security capability to the initiators. If an attached initiator port is IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security-capable, it tries to set up IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. If the authorization succeeds, the port pair can connect. If the authorization fails, the port pair cannot set up a connection. If a host port is not IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security-capable or if the necessary connection to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is not yet set up, the connection also fails.

Whenever you change the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security policy of a target port, this port goes offline (drop light) and the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security negotiation starts from the beginning. This way, you can switch IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security on and off while the systems are in operation.

A short period occurs in which the affected port pairs cannot transfer data until the connections are established again. This interruption is handled by the z/OS Input/Output Supervisor (IOS) multipathing, and is transparent to the running applications.

Note: For more information about implementation, see *IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for IBM DS8900F and IBM Z*, SG24-8455.



Planning and guidelines for IBM DS8000 encryption

This chapter describes planning for an IBM DS8000 encryption-capable storage system. It covers local and external key management.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 4.1, “About certificates” on page 68
- ▶ 4.2, “Planning and implementation process flow” on page 68
- ▶ 4.3, “Encryption-capable DS8000 ordering and configuration” on page 69
- ▶ 4.4, “Licensing” on page 71
- ▶ 4.5, “Best practices for external encryption in storage environments” on page 72
- ▶ 4.6, “Multiple key managers for redundancy” on page 76

Note: The focus of this chapter is for data-at-rest (DAR) encryption when IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is used as the key server. If you use another supported external key server, see the related vendor documentation.

When applicable, we also indicate differences in terms of planning for local key DAR encryption (that is, encryption without key servers).

4.1 About certificates

Note: Certificates are important in external key management environments only. They are unimportant in local key management environments.

The DS8000 Release 10.0 introduces enhanced security features that must be considered when planning disk encryption or migrating an existing encryption environment. Earlier DS8000 models used a Gen 1 certificate, which is no longer supported. Current systems use Gen 2+, and also include a dormant Gen 3 certificate.

Every DS8000 shipped with Release 10.0 includes an active Gen 2+ certificate and a dormant Gen 3 certificate. Gen 2+ certificates provide 112-bit security strength and comply with NIST SP 800-131a requirements. They also include an additional Subject Alternative Name field to standardize the Fibre Channel (FC) worldwide node name (WWNN). Gen 3 certificates offer 128- to 192-bit security strength and meet NIST SP 800-131a requirements beyond 2031. The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) 4.2 server automatically trusts Gen 3 certificates.

If TLS 1.2 or TLS 1.3 support is required, you must use SGKLM 4.2 or later because older Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager versions do not support these protocols. If TLS is not required, DS8000 can still use IBM Proprietary Protocol over TCP. For environments requiring KMIP, SGKLM 4.2 or later is recommended.

Careful planning is essential when selecting which certificate to use, especially during migration, to ensure compliance and interoperability with encryption standards..

4.2 Planning and implementation process flow

Figure 4-1 on page 69 shows the planning and implementation process for an encryption-capable DS8000. The details for this process are described in subsequent sections of this chapter. Figure 4-1 on page 69 also shows the overall decision flow and outcomes.

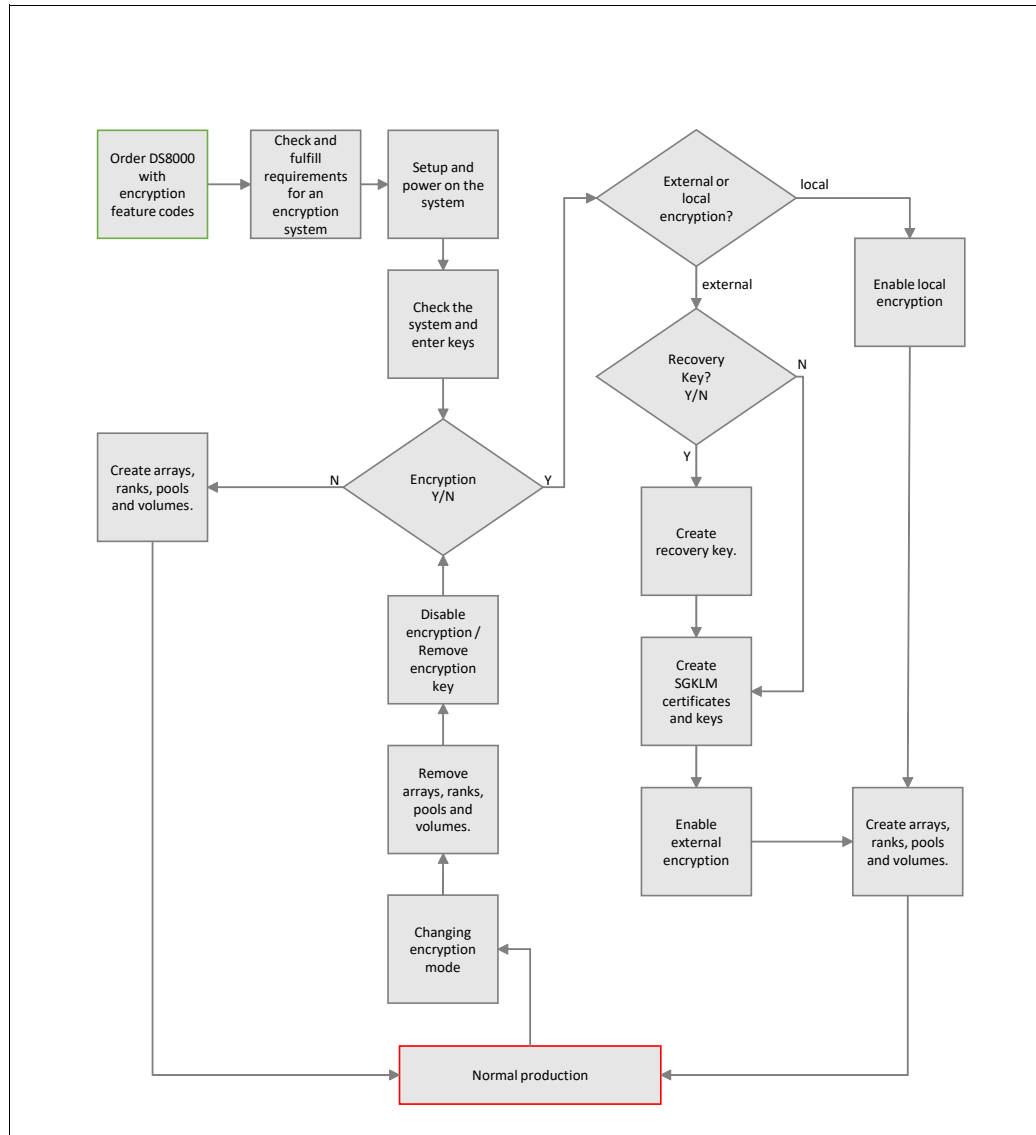


Figure 4-1 Encryption implementation planning flow

4.3 Encryption-capable DS8000 ordering and configuration

To enable encryption on a DS8000 system, the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature is required. All the supported DS8000 models are equipped with FDE drives (hard disk or flash drives) by default.

4.3.1 Local encryption ordering and configuration

DAR encryption without external key servers (local encryption) is a chargeable feature. With the D8000 R9.2, you must order Feature Code 0405 (Local encryption for DAR during the initial ordering process).

You must also still perform the specific tasks to enable or disable encryption, as described in 7.2, “Implementing local encryption” on page 241.

Country requirements before proceeding with the steps: In specific countries, clients might be required to sign an Import Agreement to import or export FDE drives.

Complete the following steps:

1. After the ordering and verification process is complete, IBM delivers the DS8000 and the IBM service representative installs the DS8000.
2. After the storage system is made available to the client, the client must download the activation keys from the DSFA website and activate them. Encryption is part of the DS8000 base license since Release 8.0.
3. Enable local DAR encryption. The use of a recovery key (RK) is not available. For more information, see 7.2, “Implementing local encryption” on page 241.

You can now configure pools and assign arrays.

Notes: Consider the following points:

- ▶ All arrays and storage pools on an encryption-capable DS8000 must be configured with the same encryption group attribute. This option is available when DS Command-line Interface (DS CLI) is used. (By default, the GUI creates encrypted storage pools if DAR is enabled.) The first storage pool or encryption group that is configured determines how the remaining objects must be configured. A value of zero indicates that encryption is disabled. A value other than zero indicates that encryption is enabled.
- ▶ To change between encryption-enabled and encryption-disabled, all arrays and storage pools must be unconfigured. Unconfiguring an encryption-enabled array causes any data that was stored on the array to be cryptographically erased and later overwritten to reinitialize the array.

4.3.2 External encryption ordering and configuration

When you plan to use IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager as your external key server, you must acquire an isolated key server. For more information about the hardware and operating system requirements, see [Detailed system requirements for a specific product](#).

Perform the specific tasks to enable or disable encryption, as described in Chapter 5, “Implementing IBM DS8000 encryption” on page 79.

Country requirements before proceeding with the steps: In specific countries, clients might be required to sign an Import Agreement to import or export FDE drives.

Complete the following steps:

1. After the ordering and verification process is complete, IBM delivers the DS8000 and the IBM service representative installs the DS8000.
2. After the storage system is made available to the client, the client must download the activation keys from the DSFA website and activate them. Encryption is part of the DS8000 base license since Release 8.0.
3. Enable external DAR encryption.
4. For DAR encryption, create a deadlock RK by using the GUI or DS CLI.

5. Now that the system can be recovered at any time by using the RK, set up the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager connection and confirm that it is functioning.

After this step is complete, the system is fully enabled and activated for encryption.

You can now configure pools and assign arrays.

Notes: Consider the following points:

- ▶ All arrays and storage pools on an encryption-capable DS8000 must be configured with the same encryption group attribute. This option is available when DS CLI is used. (By default, the GUI creates encrypted storage pools if DAR is enabled.) The first storage pool or encryption group that is configured determines how the remaining objects must be configured. A value of zero indicates that encryption is disabled. A value other than zero indicates that encryption is enabled.
- ▶ To change between encryption-enabled and encryption-disabled, all arrays and storage pools must be unconfigured. Unconfiguring an encryption-enabled array causes any data that was stored on the array to be cryptographically erased and later overwritten to reinitialize the array.

4.4 Licensing

The encryption feature is part of the Base License and is mandatory for every for DS8000.

4.4.1 Local encryption

Although the local encryption does not require a separate license, it does require the purchase of a separate Feature Code (405) that can be ordered only for new DS8900F systems with DS8000 Release 9.2 code. The feature enables the encryption capability for the DS8000 and potential subsequent capacity upgrades.

4.4.2 External encryption

When ordering the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, consider the following points:

- ▶ Number of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers per data center
- ▶ Amount of data to be encrypted (if you plan to use DAR encryption)
- ▶ Number of IBM Z servers

Note: In the past, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager was licensed based on the quantity of drives to be encrypted.

The following components must be ordered:

- ▶ For DAR encryption:
 - IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Basic Edition:
 - For Master-Clone (one per instance of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server and Clone)
 - For Multi-Master (one per instance of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server)
 - IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for RAW Decimal Terabyte Storage Resource Value Units (RVUs). Quantity = X where X is the RVU calculation. For more information, see [License usage metrics](#).
- ▶ For IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security: IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Z-platform for KMIP client (one for each IBM Z system)
- ▶ For Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT): Same as for DAR, based on the raw capacity of the DS8900F

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server software entitlements must be purchased for production and high-availability and disaster recovery environments (HA/DR). No special licensing is needed for HA/DR. If the data is encrypted and IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers the encryption keys, the server must be licensed.

After you license the software, it is available for download through IBM Passport Advantage®.

After the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager software is licensed, it is available for download through IBM Passport Advantage. For more information about IBM Passport Advantage, see [this web page](#).

4.5 Best practices for external encryption in storage environments

The following information can help you find the best practices for encryption in storage environments. It includes key techniques for mitigating the risk of an encryption deadlock.

4.5.1 Using LDAP authentication

Ideally, a best practice is to manage the physical security of access to hardware through an LDAP implementation. This approach allows a close monitoring of who, when, and what actions were taken by monitoring the audit logs of the DS8000. With a basic security policy, having a single person who handles the *admin* and *secadmin* role of a DS8000 is still possible. With LDAP, a policy can be set up that does not allow having the same user ID (UID) for both roles in the DS8000.

4.5.2 Availability

Consider the following considerations and best practices:

- ▶ DS8000

The DS8000 must be configured with the dual Hardware Management Console (HMC) option to provide redundant access to the client network. DS8900F is always delivered with dual HMCs.

- ▶ IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server:

- Configure redundant key servers to each encrypting storage device. The client must have independent and redundant key servers on each site.
- To start the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server operation after start without human intervention, the key server must be set up to start automatically when power is available and to initiate automatically the key server application. The application must be configured to boot automatically, especially when running the key server in a virtualized environment.

4.5.3 Encryption deadlock prevention

Consider the following points and best practices:

- ▶ General:

- The change management processes at your installation must cover any procedures that are necessary to help ensure adherence to guidelines that are required to help ensure correct configuration of key servers, encrypted storage, and placement of data that is related to key servers.
- All personnel who have any of the following assignments or capabilities are required to review at least annually a client document that describes these risks and the processes that are adopted to mitigate them:
 - Responsibility to implement IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers or encrypted storage products.
 - Responsibility to manage the placement or relocation of data that is related to, or required by, any IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server.
 - Access authority to configure IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers or encrypted storage products.
 - Responsibility to rekey the deadlock RK of the DS8000, if used.
- Implement automated monitoring of the availability of any equipment that is associated with management of key services and take appropriate action to keep them operational. This equipment can include but is not limited to key servers, SNMP masters, domain name servers, and DS8000 HMCs.
- The client must pay particular attention to disaster recovery plans and scenarios and consider the availability of key servers, key server backups, and key server synchronization. A best practice is to establish the independence of each recovery site from the other recovery sites.
- If the RK management is enabled, the client must have a documented process to handle and maintain the deadlock RKs of each DS8000 instance. This key is the last resort to unlock the DS8000 if the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager environment is destroyed or inaccessible. The deadlock RK is not used while IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager remains available.

- ▶ IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server:
 - Redundant key servers: A minimum of two independent key servers must be configured for redundancy. Each key server must run on separate hardware and use independent storage devices.
 - Logical partitions (LPARs): If key servers operate in LPARs, do not use data-sharing techniques that result in a single copy of data being shared by multiple key server instances.
 - Recovery sites: Each recovery site must have one dedicated *isolated key server* with its own hardware and non-encrypted storage resources.

Note: Consider the following points:

- ▶ The DS8000 requires at least two isolated key servers in total to ensure high availability and disaster recovery.
- ▶ For IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager must be set up in a Multi-Master configuration. This type of configuration requires one IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager license per server.

Figure 4-2 shows the recommended setup (two isolated servers across two sites).

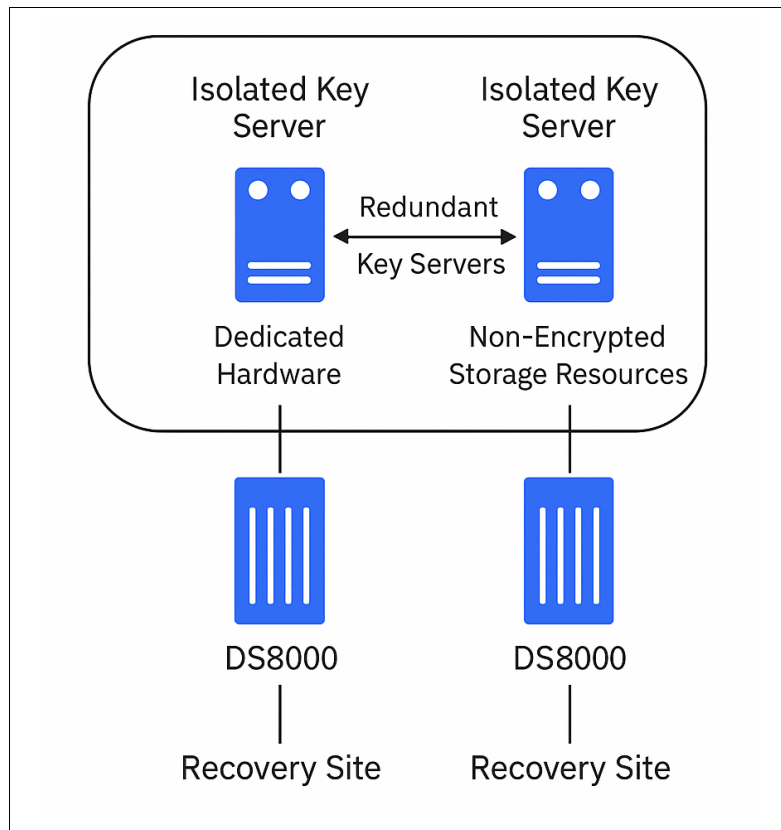


Figure 4-2 Recommended setup (two isolated servers across two sites)

The objective of this requirement is to avoid encryption deadlock by the following tasks:

- Implementing a key server environment that is independent of all non-key server applications so that management of the key server can be restricted to those personnel that are authorized to manage key servers.
 - Implementing a key server that is physically and logically isolated from other applications that might require access to encrypting storage so that the key server environment does not need to be configured with access to any encrypting storage.
 - Implementing a key server that is physically and logically isolated from encrypting storage so that the risk of storing (initially or through data migration) code and data objects that are required by the key server on encrypting storage is eliminated.
 - Ensuring that a recovery site can operate independently from any other sites by configuring a key server that is not subject to encryption deadlock because of the characteristics of an isolated key server.
- Configuration of more key servers on generalized server hardware and generalized storage is allowed. Be sure to establish the appropriate procedures and controls to prevent these key servers from having your data access compromised by storing the data on key server managed encrypting storage. These key servers are referred to as *general key servers*.
 - Configuration of key servers at independent sites is a best practice and provides extra immunity to encryption deadlocks because it reduces the probability that all key servers experience a simultaneous power loss.
 - Clients must help ensure that all key servers that a particular storage device is configured to communicate with have consistent keystore content relative to any wrapping keys that are used by the storage device. Failure to synchronize the keystores effectively eliminates one or more key servers from the set of redundant key servers for a storage device that uses the keys that are not synchronized.
 - Clients should back up key server data after it is updated. The backups must not be stored on encrypted storage media that depends on a key server. For more information, see 6.1, “Rekeying the data key for data-at-rest encryption” on page 210.
 - Clients should periodically audit to help ensure that all online and backup data that is required to make each key server operational is stored on storage or media that does not depend on a key server to access the data.
 - Clients must not delete keys on the key server under normal circumstances. Deletion of all copies of a key is a cryptographic erase operation of all encrypted data that is encrypted under this key.
- DS8000:
- Before any IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server is connected to the DS8000, run the deadlock RK generation process.
 - Suggestion: Manually configure DS8000 devices with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server. The option to configure them automatically can be used, but it increases the risk that an unauthorized DS8000 might gain access to a key server.
 - The DS8000 supports up to four IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server ports. A requirement is that at least one port is assigned to one isolated key server.
- A best practice is to assign two ports to isolated key servers. Using key servers at the local site should be preferred to improve reliability.
- When the DS8000 is configured to enable encryption, the DS8000 verifies that at least two IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers are configured and accessible to the machine.

- The DS8000 rejects the creation of ranks and extent pools with a nonzero encryption group that is specified if the encryption is not activated.
- The DS8000 monitors all configured IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers. When loss of access to the key servers is detected, notification is provided through the DS8000 client notification mechanism (SNMP traps, email, or both, when configured).

Key server-related errors are provided through the same mechanism. Set up monitoring for these indications and take corrective actions when a condition is detected, which reflects a degraded key server environment.

The following conditions are monitored and reported:

- If the DS8000 cannot receive a required data key (DK) during power-on for a configured encryption group from the key servers, it reports the error condition to the client and to IBM. In this case, logical volumes that are associated with the encryption group are inaccessible to attached hosts. After reporting the error, if the DS8000 can get the required DK from a key server, it reports the condition to the client and to IBM and makes the associated logical volume accessible.
- DS8000 access to each configured key server is verified at 5-minute intervals. Loss of access is reported to the client.
- The ability of each key server to unwrap DKs that are configured on the DS8000 is verified at 8-hour intervals. Loss of the ability to unwrap a configured DK is reported to the client and to IBM.
- The DS8000 detects if fewer than two key servers are configured, if fewer than two key servers are available, or if fewer than two key servers can unwrap DKs that are configured on the DS8000 at 8-hour intervals. If detected, this condition is reported to the client and to IBM.

4.6 Multiple key managers for redundancy

Whether you use the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager product or any other supported external key managers, such as the Thales CipherTrust Manager or Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure (KS), you must be certain that at least one key server always remains available. You need some redundancy, which can be achieved by deploying multiple key servers:

► IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Managers

To help ensure continuous key and certificate availability to encrypting devices, configure your IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers in a Multi-Master or Master-Clone with Incremental Replication setup.

On Microsoft Windows systems and other systems, such as Linux or IBM AIX®, both computers must have the required memory, speed, and available disk space to handle the workload.

This setup is not a failover or clustered server from an IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager perspective. The redundancy is managed by setting up multiple key manager destinations at the DS8000 system.

► Gemalto SafeNet KS

To help ensure continuous key and certificate availability to encrypting devices, configure your Gemalto Safenet KS servers in a clustered setup.

► Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager (DSM)

To help ensure continuous key and certificate availability to encrypting devices, configure your Thales Vormetric DSM servers in a clustered setup.

- ▶ **Thales CipherTrust Manager**

To help ensure continuous key and certificate availability to encrypting devices, configure your Thales CipherTrust Manager servers in a clustered setup.



Implementing IBM DS8000 encryption

This chapter reviews the sequence of tasks for deployment of an encryption-capable DS8000, from ordering to installation and use.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 5.1, “Installing IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2” on page 80
- ▶ 5.2, “Migrating IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 81
- ▶ 5.3, “Setting up external key managers” on page 81
- ▶ 5.4, “Configuring data-at-rest” on page 150
- ▶ 5.5, “Configuration for TCT encryption” on page 181
- ▶ 5.6, “IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration” on page 191
- ▶ 5.7, “Data-at-rest encryption and Copy Services functions” on page 196
- ▶ 5.8, “NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers” on page 196
- ▶ 5.9, “Migrating certificates” on page 196
- ▶ 5.10, “Using a custom-generated Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate” on page 205

5.1 Installing IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2

For more information about installing IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2 or 4.1, including all prerequisites, see *IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager*, SG24-8472.

Its bundle includes the following software components:

- ▶ Runtime environment:
 - IBM WebSphere Application Server Liberty 23.0.0.9 (or later maintained in 4.2.x)
 - IBM SDK Java Technology Edition 8.0.8.10 (or later maintained in 4.2.x)
- ▶ Database:
 - BM Db2 Standard Edition
- ▶ IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2

In the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager base architecture, and the WebSphere Application Server runs a Java virtual machine, which provide the runtime environment. The application server provides communication security, logging, messaging, and web services.

Db2 stores key materials and other essential IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager information in a relational database. The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager base architecture is shown in Figure 5-1.

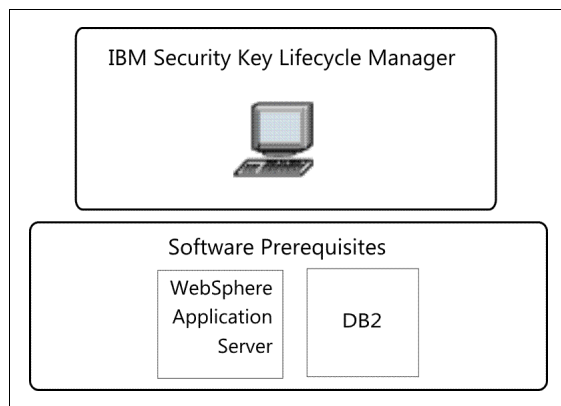


Figure 5-1 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager base architecture

For more information about the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, see this IBM Documentation [web page](#).

Note: If you use a fresh installation of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager that you want to set up, you can ignore 5.2, “Migrating IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager” on page 81.

For more information about configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, see 5.3.1, “Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.x” on page 81.

5.2 Migrating IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager provides the following mechanisms to migrate from an older version of IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager:

- ▶ **Inline migration:** This process is used when IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2 is installed on the same machine where an earlier version of IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager is installed. Migration does not remove the earlier version of IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager.

Note: In SGKLM 4.2, the application stack is based on WebSphere Liberty rather than the traditional WebSphere Application Server. Ensure migration prerequisites account for this change, especially when upgrading from earlier versions.

- ▶ **Cross migration:** This process is used when IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.2 is installed on a different machine than the earlier version of IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager and data is migrated by using migration scripts or the backup and restore mechanism.

For more information about supported paths, see Chapter 4, “Migrating data”, in *IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager*, SG24-8472.

5.3 Setting up external key managers

This section describes setting up external key managers, such as IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and other external key managers.

5.3.1 Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.x

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.1 and 4.2 for open systems and Microsoft Windows include the features and functions that were supported in IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0 for open systems and IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager 2.x and 3.x.

Microsoft Windows, Linux, Linux on IBM Z, and IBM AIX operating systems are supported. IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager and IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 4.0 and earlier versions are out of support.

The IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS is a different product that is not described in this chapter.

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager security features follow NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-131a requirements and maintain compatibility with previous security and encryption certificates that were used for previous generations of the DS8000 series.

It includes the following enhancements compared to its predecessors:

- ▶ Support for only 64-bit platforms.
- ▶ Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.2 (default) and Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) keys and certificates.
- ▶ Keys and certificates are stored in a database (the name keystore is still used).
- ▶ Simplified installation by using IBM Installation Manager.

- High availability support by using Master-Clone with Incremental Replication or a Multi-Master cluster.
- DS8000 Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) support for data-at-rest (DAR) encryption, Transparent Cloud Tiering (TCT) encryption, and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. For IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption, IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager 3.0.1.3 or later is required.

Note: IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) 4.2 adds a Certificate Vision dashboard, email notifications for critical certificate events, and Oracle TDE integration (SGKLM as the external security module for TDE master keys). It also enhances KMIP interoperability (KMIP 3.0 profile) and improves Multi-Master cluster robustness

This section describes the procedure to configure IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager to serve keys to an encryption-enabled DS8000. The instructions are based on the assumption that the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers are installed and ready for configuration. The system clocks of all key servers must be relatively synchronized.

For more information, see this IBM Documentation [web page](#).

Configuring the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager requires several steps to prepare the key server to serve a DS8000 encryption-enabled disk storage system. The following benefits are new to this release:

- Encryption strength of the Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) algorithm with 2048-bit keys.
- Support for TLS by using TLS 1.3 to encrypt communication between the DS8000 Hardware Management Console (HMC) and IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

Attention: For more information about the use of TLS 1.3 with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager to make it compliant with NIST SP 800-131a, see 5.8, “NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers” on page 196. Modify the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager configuration.

Before configuring devices such as the DS8000, IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) requires initial setup:

- IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Standalone:
 - At least two SGKLM instances are required for redundancy.
 - Create a TLS/KMIP communication certificate on one instance.
 - Keys and certificates must be synchronized manually between servers using the Backup and Restore function.
- IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Multi-Master:
 - Create TLS/KMIP communication certificates on the primary master.
 - Ensure all other servers joining the Multi-Master cluster are clean (no keys or certificates).
 - Verify operating system kernel parameters are correctly set. For additional requirements, see this IBM Documentation [web page](#).
- IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Master-Clone with Incremental Replication:
 - Create TLS/KMIP communication certificates before setting up the replication cluster.

- Establish Master-Clone with Incremental Replication between SGKLM servers for continuous synchronization.
- DS8000 recommended setting: Set the Replication Interval to 60 seconds for optimal performance.
- This configuration is recommended for DS8000 systems using KMIP protocol for TCT encryption and Data at Rest (DAR).
- Each SGKLM server in this configuration requires its own license.

Figure 5-2 on page 83 shows these configurations.

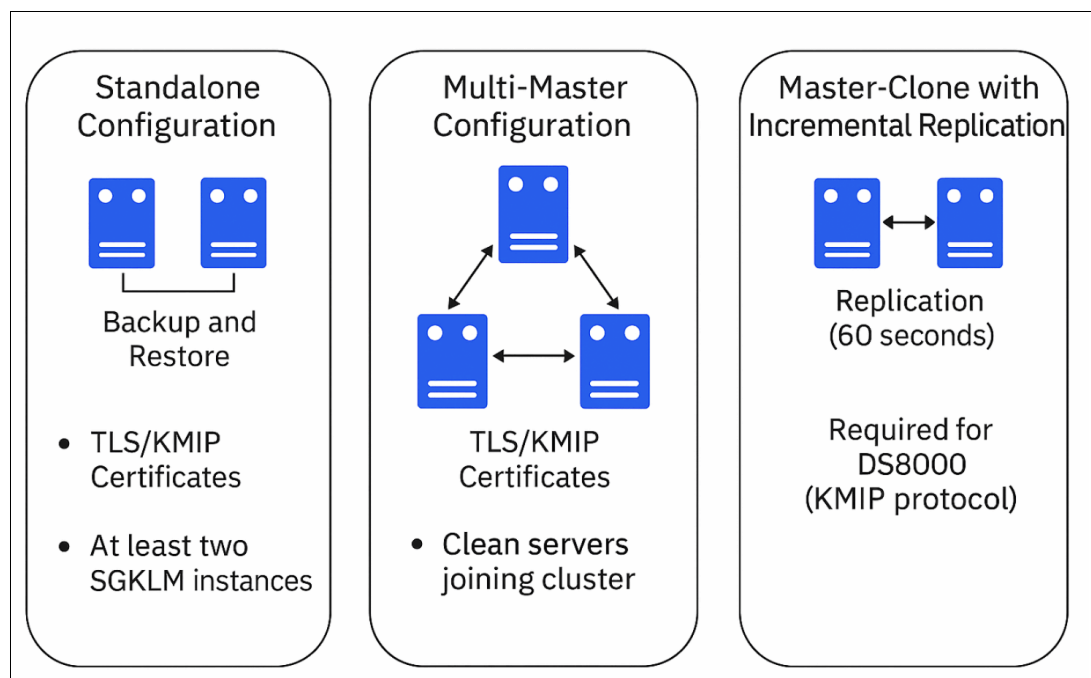


Figure 5-2 Three different configurations

Consider the following definitions:

- ▶ **TLS/KMIP certificate:** IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) servers and their connected devices require a TLS/KMIP certificate for secure communication between:
 - TSGKLM servers themselves (for replication or Multi-Master environments).
 - SGKLM servers and devices such as the DS8000 HMC.

You must always create a TLS/KMIP certificate. Both self-signed and CA-signed certificates are supported. The choice depends on customer requirements or security policies.

- ▶ **Backup and Restore:** SGKLM creates cross-platform backup files independently of the operating system and directory structure. These backups can be restored on a different operating system (for example, Linux backup restored on Windows).

Important: Backup and restore is not supported in KMIP environments or when using TCT encryption.

- ▶ **Replication (Generic):** Replication between SGKLM servers is not required for DS8000 when using IBM Proprietary Protocol through TLS for DAR encryption. However, enabling replication prepares servers for future functions where replication may be required.

Replication is not supported in KMIP environments when using TCT, Endpoint Security for encryption of data in flight (EDIF), or DAR encryption.

- ▶ **Master-Clone with Incremental Replication:** This is a specific replication configuration for DS8000 environments using KMIP protocol for TCT encryption and Data at Rest (DAR).
 - Create TLS/KMIP certificates before setting up the replication cluster.
 - Establish Master-Clone with Incremental Replication between SGKLM servers for continuous synchronization.
 - DS8000 recommended setting: Set the Replication Interval to 60 seconds for optimal performance.
 - Each SGKLM server in this configuration requires its own license.
- ▶ **Multi-Master:** Multi-Master configuration provides continuous availability of data across multiple SGKLM deployment environments.
 - Required for DS8000 Release 9.0 and later when using KMIP protocol for EDIF.
 - Ensure all servers joining the cluster are clean (no keys or certificates).

Migration note: If migrating from an older IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager version to SGKLM 4.2, use backup and restore operations for the earlier version. Do not create certificates until the migration process is complete.

5.3.2 Creating an TLS/KMIP server certificate

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager installation secures HTTPS transport with a self-signed certificate by default. Depending on the browser and version that is used, an exception might occur. In that case, you must accept the certificate as a trusted certificate by completing the following steps:

1. Log in to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (see Figure 5-3) at the following address:

`https://<ip address>:<port>/ibm/SKLM/jsp/Main.jsp`



Figure 5-3 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager login window

Important: IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.x uses port 9443 for the GUI and REST APIs by default.

2. Select **Action Items** to begin the configuration of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. The Action Items menu guides you through the configuration steps.
3. In the Welcome window, select **Advanced Configuration** → **Server certificates**, and then select **Add**, as shown in Figure 5-4.

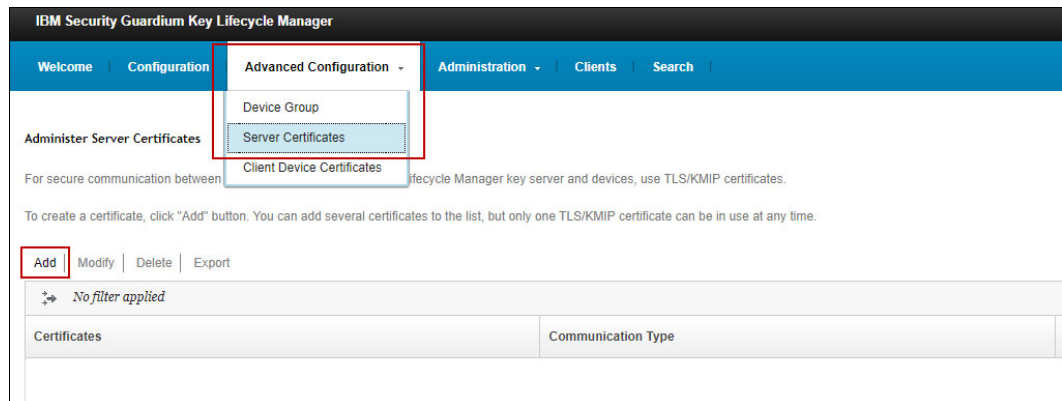


Figure 5-4 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Administer Server Certificates option

You can create a self-signed server certificate (see “Option 1: Creating a self-signed TLS/KMIP server certificate”) or create a certificate that is signed by a third-party provider (see “Option 2: Creating a certificate that is signed by a third-party provider” on page 87).

Option 1: Creating a self-signed TLS/KMIP server certificate

This example uses a self-signed certificate. If you use a certificate that is signed by a third-party provider (that is, a certificate authority (CA)), see “Option 2: Creating a certificate that is signed by a third-party provider” on page 87.

Although the use of an existing certificate from the keystore is possible, it is not a best practice to use the same certificate that encrypts disk data to also protect communication.

Complete the following steps:

1. To create a self-signed Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate, log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Server GUI, and select **Advanced Configuration** → **Server Certificates**, as shown in Figure 5-4 on page 85.
2. Enter a certificate label and a certificate description when you create the certificate.

Figure 5-5 shows the TLS/KMIP for Key Serving window under the Advanced Configuration tab, where you create the certificate. This example is left blank to indicate that this field must be completed when creating the certificate. The validity period determines how long the certificate is valid. The RSA algorithm uses the 2048-bit key.

Add SSL/KMIP Certificate

☒ **Create a self-signed certificate**
 Use a self-signed certificate in a known environment. A client cannot verify a self-signed certificate before accepting a connection.

☐ **Request certificate from a third-party provider**
 Use a certificate generated by a third-party provider as a more secure means of communication. A client can verify a certificate from a third-party provider before accepting a connection.

Self-signed Certificate

*Certificate label in keystore:

*Certificate description (common name):

*Validity period of new certificate (in days; for example, 3 years is 365 x 3 = 1095 days):
 The interval in days ranges from 1 to 9000

*Algorithm:

► Optional Certificate Parameters

Figure 5-5 TLS/KMIP for Key Serving window

- After you complete the fields, click **Add Certificate** to create and add the certificate. Figure 5-6 shows that the SSL certificate is created and recommends a backup.

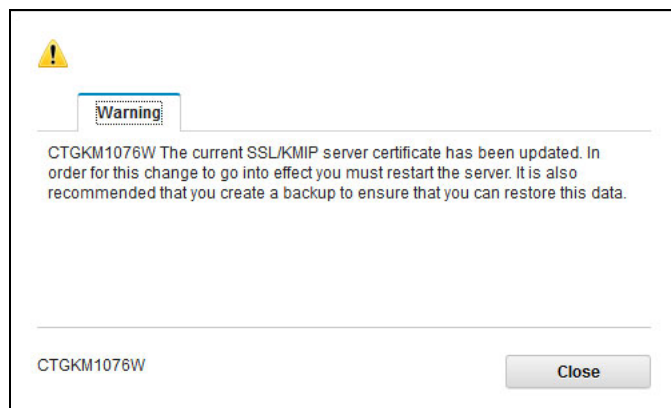


Figure 5-6 SSL certificate created successfully

- Restart the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. Select **skladmin** in the upper right, and then click **Restart Server**, as shown in Figure 5-7.

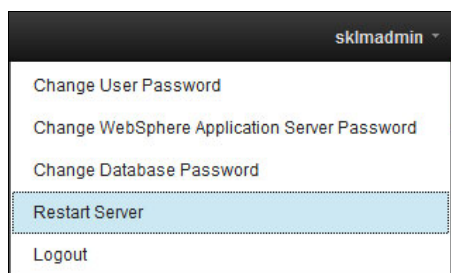


Figure 5-7 Restart Server option

- Go to “Exporting the TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 91.

Option 2: Creating a certificate that is signed by a third-party provider

This example uses a certificate that is signed by a third-party CA.

Although the use of an existing certificate from the keystore is possible, the use of the certificate that is used to encrypt disk data to protect communication is not a best practice.

To have a certificate that is signed by a third-party CA, it is required to start with a certificate request.

Note: Multi-layer certificate chains will be officially supported starting with Version 9.4. This feature is not available in earlier versions.

Complete the following steps:

1. To create a third-party signed SSL certificate request, log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Server GUI, and select **Advanced Configuration** → **Server Certificates**, as shown in Figure 5-4 on page 85.
2. Select **Request certificate from a third-party provider** and complete the fields, as shown in Figure 5-8 on page 87. Then, click **Add Certificate**.

Add SSL/KMIP Certificate

☐ Create a self-signed certificate
Use a self-signed certificate in a known environment. A client cannot verify a self-signed certificate before accepting a connection.

☒ Request certificate from a third-party provider
Use a certificate generated by a third-party provider as a more secure means of communication. A client can verify a certificate from a third-party provider before accepting a connection.

Generate Certificate Request for Third-party Provider

*Certificate label in keystore:
sklm_cert_ca

*Certificate description (common name):
sklm_cert_ca

*Validity period of new certificate (in days; for example, 3 years is 365 × 3 = 1095 days):
1095 The interval in days ranges from 1 to 9000

*Algorithm:
RSA

Optional Certificate Parameters

Add Certificate **Cancel**

Figure 5-8 Adding a certificate from a third party

The certificate request is now active, but the status is Pending (Figure 5-9).

Certificates	Communications Type	In Use	Expiration Date	Status	Algorithm	Download
sklm server	SSL/KMIP	...	May 17 2023, 08:25:12 PM India Standard Time (GMT+05:30)	...	RSA	Download
sklm_cert_ca	SSL/KMIP	✓	May 17 2023, 10:43:38 PM India Standard Time (GMT+05:30)	...	RSA	Download

Total: 2 Selected: 0





Figure 5-9 Pending certificate

- The certificate request file is in the directory that is shown in Example 5-1.

Example 5-1 CSR location

```
[[root@sklmdemo74 data]# cd /opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer_1/products/sklm/data
[root@sklmdemo74 data]# ls -l
-rw-r--r--. 1 sklmb40 sklmb40 958 Nov 17 22:23 201117224338-sklm_cert_ca.csr
drwx-----. 2 sklmb40 root      6 Nov 12 02:14 agent
drwx-----. 2 sklmb40 root      6 Nov 12 02:14 restore
```

If you cannot access your server's file system, you can download the CSR file from the GUI, as shown in Figure 5-10. Manually send this certificate request file to a CA and get it signed. Import the signed certificate to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager later.

	Status	Algorithm	Download
		RSA	
			

10 25 50 100 +

Figure 5-10 Downloading CSR

Note: If inline migration is performed on this system, you find the AppServer and AppServer_1 folders in the /opt/IBM/WebSphere folder, where the AppServer folder is holding data for the older IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager server and AppServer_1 holds data for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.1.

- Transfer the signed TLS/KMIP certificate that returned from the CA to /opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data/ and import it by clicking **Third-party certificates pending import** under **Action Items** on the welcome page, as shown in Figure 5-11. If you cannot access the file system of your server, you can upload the certificate later during the process that is described in Step 7.

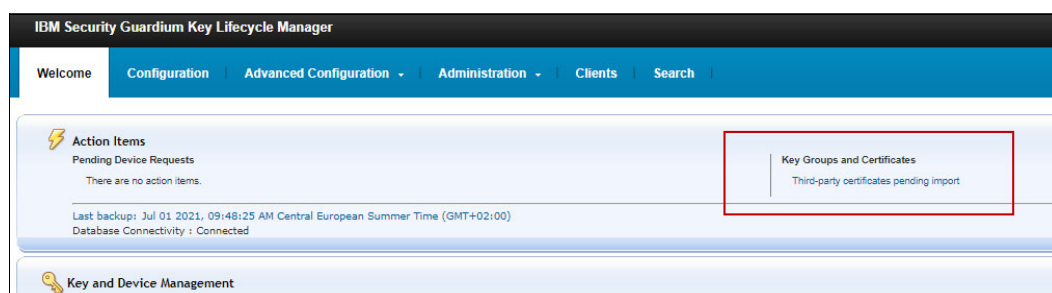


Figure 5-11 Welcome page: Third-party certificate pending import

5. On the Import page, select and right-click the pending certificate, and then select **Import**, as shown in Figure 5-12.

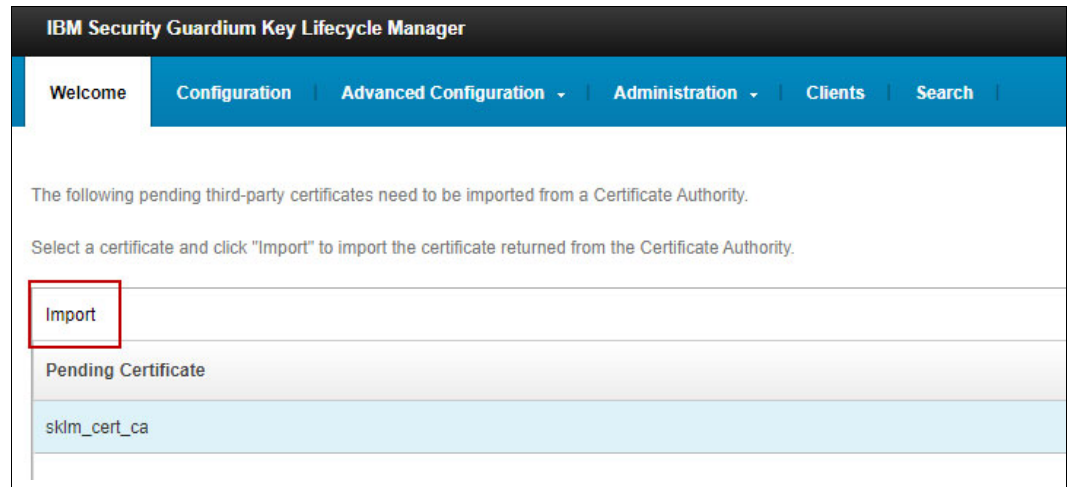


Figure 5-12 Selecting the signed certificate for import

6. Browse for the signed certificate if it exists on your server and click **Import**, as shown in Figure 5-13.

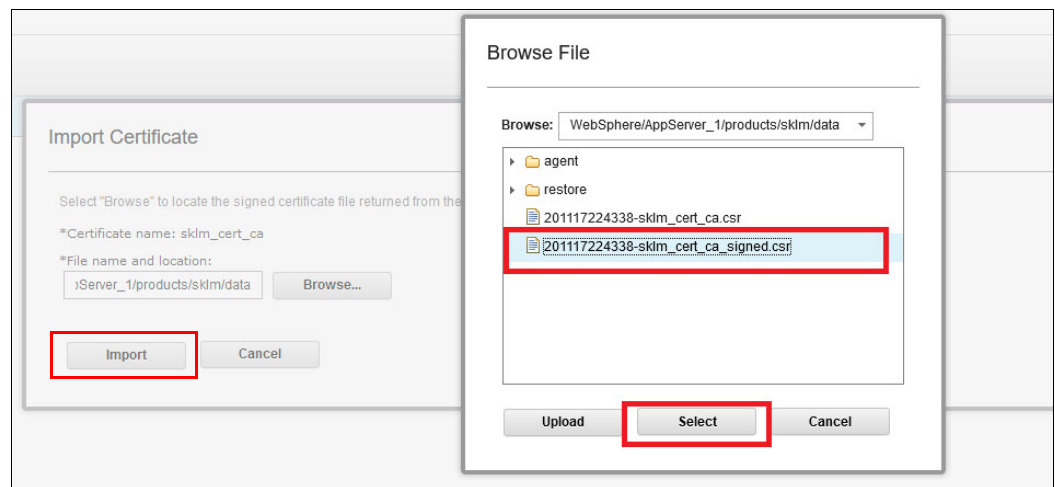


Figure 5-13 Importing the signed certificate

If you need to upload it first, select **Upload**, browse for your certificate, and transfer it to the server, as shown in Figure 5-14. Then, select and import it as shown in Figure 5-13 on page 89.

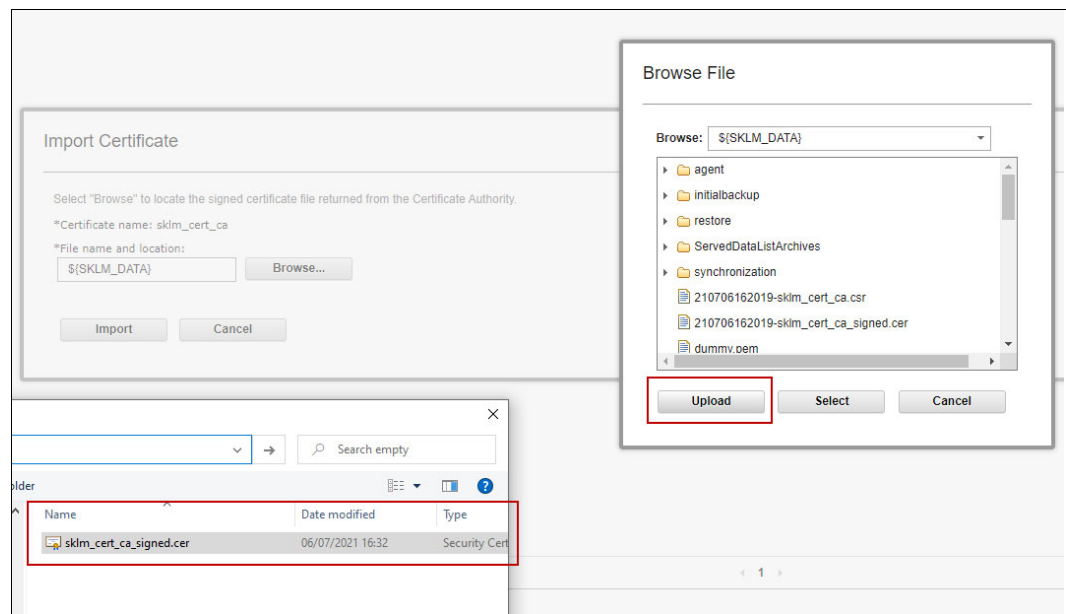


Figure 5-14 Uploading and importing the signed certificate

After the signed TLS/KMIP certificate is imported, the status of the certificate changes to valid, as shown in Figure 5-15.

Add Modify Delete Export					
No filter applied					
Certificates	Communications Type	In Use	Expiration Date	Status	Algorithm
skim server	SSL/KMIP	...	Nov 17 2023, 08:28:12 PM India Standard Time (GMT+05:30)		RSA
skim_cert_ca	SSL/KMIP	✓	Nov 15 2030, 05:16:32 PM India Standard Time (GMT+05:30)		RSA
Total: 2 Selected: 0					

Figure 5-15 Valid certificate

- Restart the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. Select **sklmadmin** in the upper right, and then click **Restart Server**, as shown in Figure 5-16.

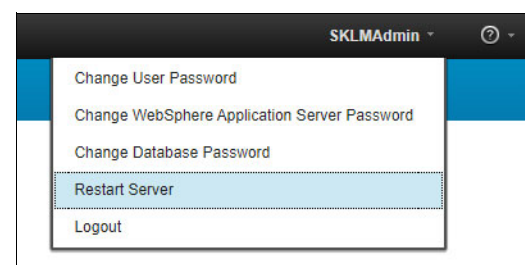


Figure 5-16 Restart Server option

Exporting the TLS/KMIP server certificate

The TLS/KMIP server certificate, which secures communication between the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) server and the DS8000, must be exported from SGKLM to its local hard disk and then transferred to the DS8000 for use in a later configuration step.

Complete the following steps to export the TLS/KMIP Server certificate:

1. Log in to any IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server as SKLMAdmin and select **Advanced Configuration** → **Server Certificates**, as shown in Figure 5-17.

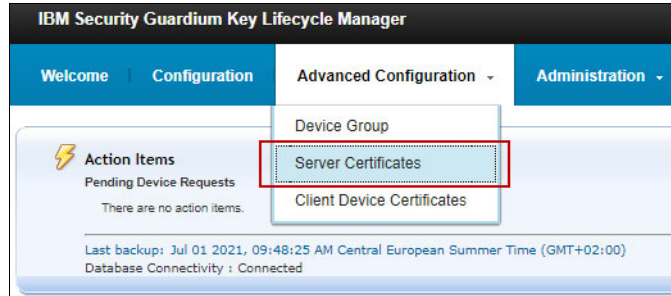


Figure 5-17 Server Certificates option

2. Highlight the previously created certificate, and then click the **Download** icon, as shown in Figure 5-18.

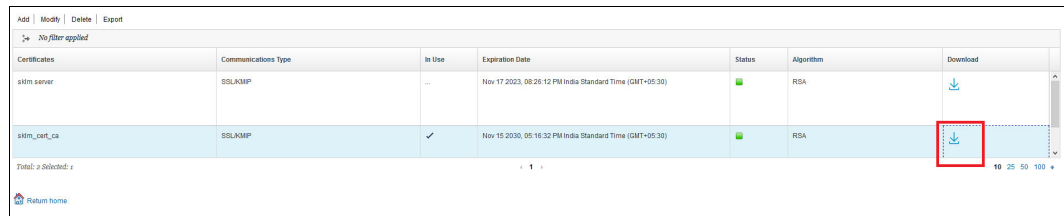


Figure 5-18 Exporting the certificate

3. Click **Download** to download the exported certificate on to your local machine, as shown in Figure 5-19.

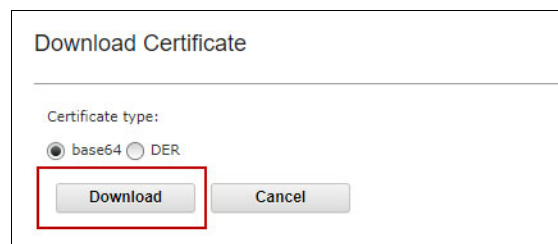


Figure 5-19 Exported certificate download

The TLS/KMIP Certificate is now exported. Transfer it to a destination that is accessible when activating encryption in the DS8000. The Certificate must be specified during activation to help ensure secure communication between the servers and the DS8000.

Continue with the backup and restore as described in “Backup and restore” on page 92 only if Multi-Master will *not* be used. In Multi-Master configurations, the certificate is transferred automatically to the Standby master when you set it up. Continue to set up a Multi-Master environment as described in “Setting up a Multi-Master environment with two IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers” on page 105.

The Multi-Master environment can be set up in new environments only.

Backup and restore

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager creates cross-platform backup files independently of the operating systems and directory structure of the server. You can restore the backup files to an operating system that is different from the one it was backed up from. For example, you can restore a backup file that is taken on a Linux system and restore it on a Windows system.

Important: Using backup and restore is not supported in Multi-Master environments when you use DAR, ENDPOINT or TCT encryption with KMIP.

Creating a backup

To create a backup, complete the following steps:

1. In the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager GUI, select **Administration** → **Backup and Restore**, as shown in Figure 5-20.

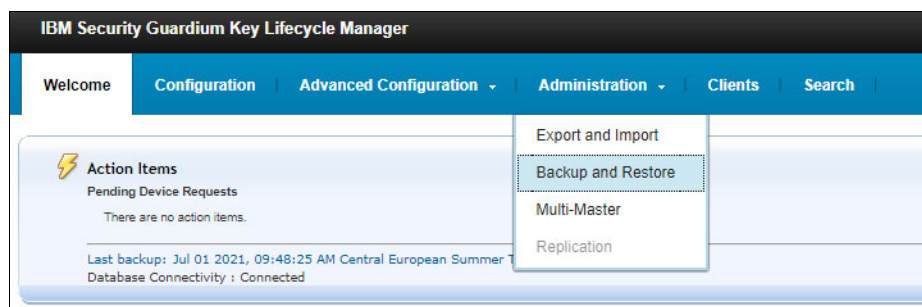


Figure 5-20 Backup and Restore menu

2. Under the **Backup and Restore** tab that is shown in Figure 5-21 on page 93, click **Create** to create a backup.

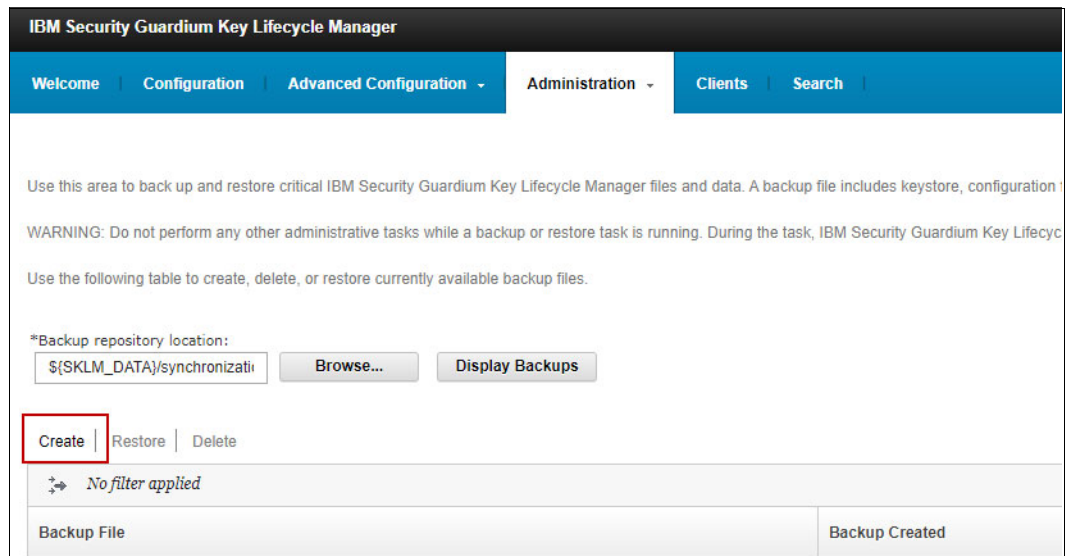


Figure 5-21 Backup and Restore directory

3. In the Create Backup window that is shown in Figure 5-22, enter a password for the backup, and then click **Create Backup**. This password is required to use the restore function later.

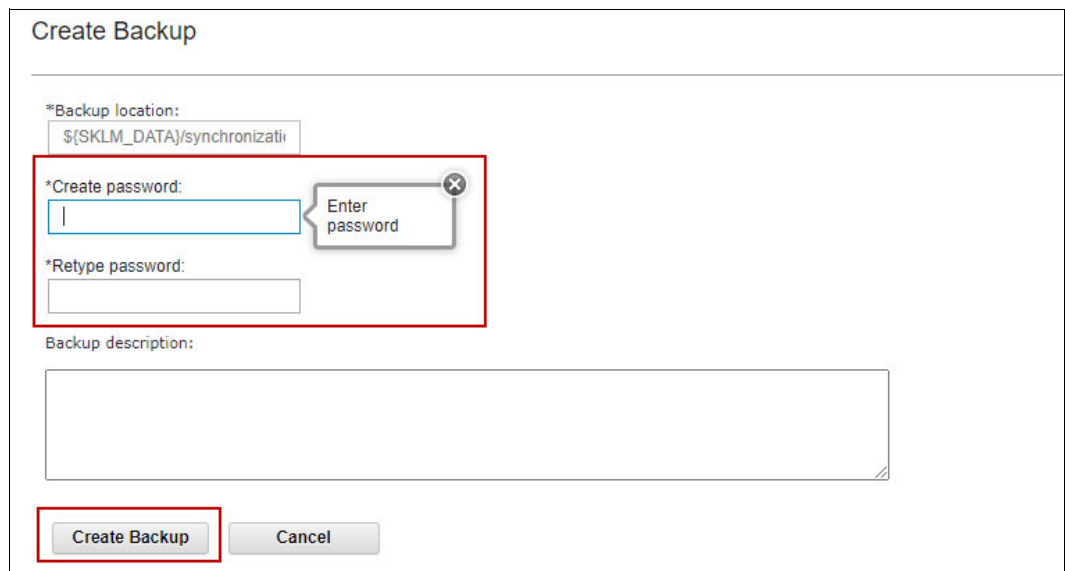


Figure 5-22 Create Backup window to enter the password and backup description

- When you see the “successfully created” notice that is shown in Figure 5-23, click **Close**.



Figure 5-23 Successful backup confirmation

- Download the backup to your local machine for further use by clicking **Download** (see Figure 5-24).

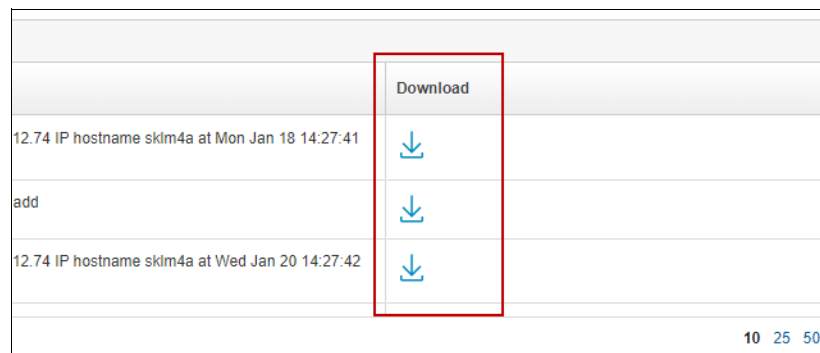


Figure 5-24 Downloading the backup file

Additional Information

Redundancy for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) servers is not achieved through failover or clustering. Instead, it is managed by configuring multiple key manager destinations on the DS8000. Synchronization between SGKLM servers can be achieved in one of the following ways:

Backup and restore (Standalone)

Back up one server and restore the configuration on the other server. This method is used in non-Multi-Master environments and when adding keys or devices without synchronization.

Master-Clone with Incremental Replication

For DS8000 environments using KMIP protocol for TCT encryption and Data at Rest (DAR), it is recommended to configure Master-Clone with Incremental Replication between SGKLM servers.

- Recommended setting: Set the replication interval to 60 seconds.

See “Setting up Master-Clone with Incremental Replication between IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers” on page 98.

Multi-Master

Provides continuous availability across multiple SGKLM deployment environments. See “Setting up a Multi-Master environment with two IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers” on page 105.

Plan to perform backup or restore operations when:

- ▶ Initial configuration in non-Multi-Master environments
- ▶ Adding keys or devices without synchronization
- ▶ Key or certificate replacement intervals without synchronization
- ▶ CA requests without synchronization

Always keep the latest backup in a secure location, such as off the key server on unencrypted storage.

Restoring the backup

To restore the backup, complete the following steps:

1. Log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and go to **Backup and Restore** and then click **Browse** to browse for the backup file if it was transferred to the server, as shown in Figure 5-25. Alternatively, you can upload the backup during this procedure.

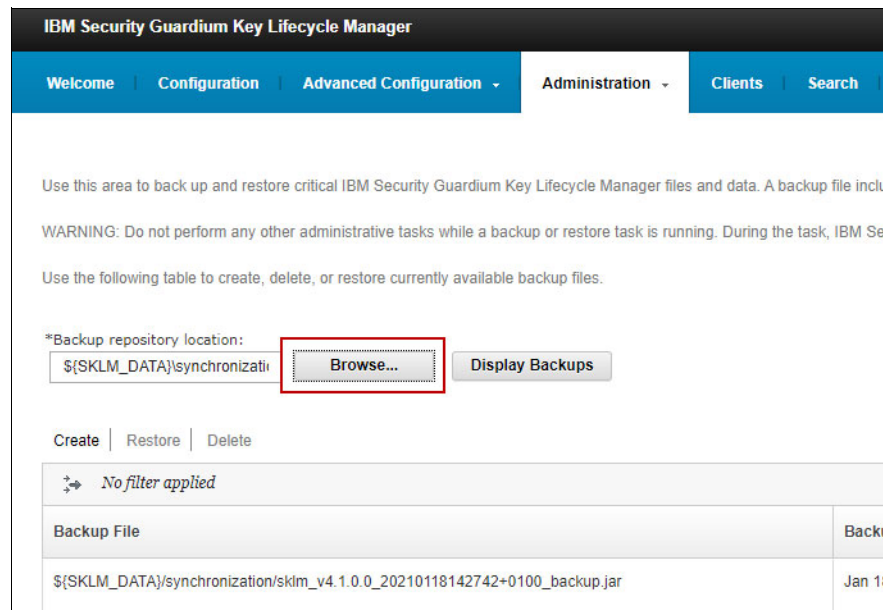


Figure 5-25 Browsing for backup

Browse to the directory with the stored backup, as shown in Figure 5-26, and click **Select**.

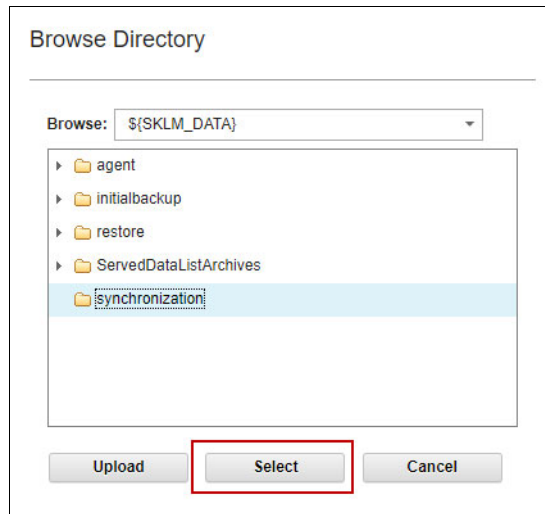


Figure 5-26 Browsing to the directory

If the backup was not yet transferred to the server, you must upload it first as shown in Figure 5-27.

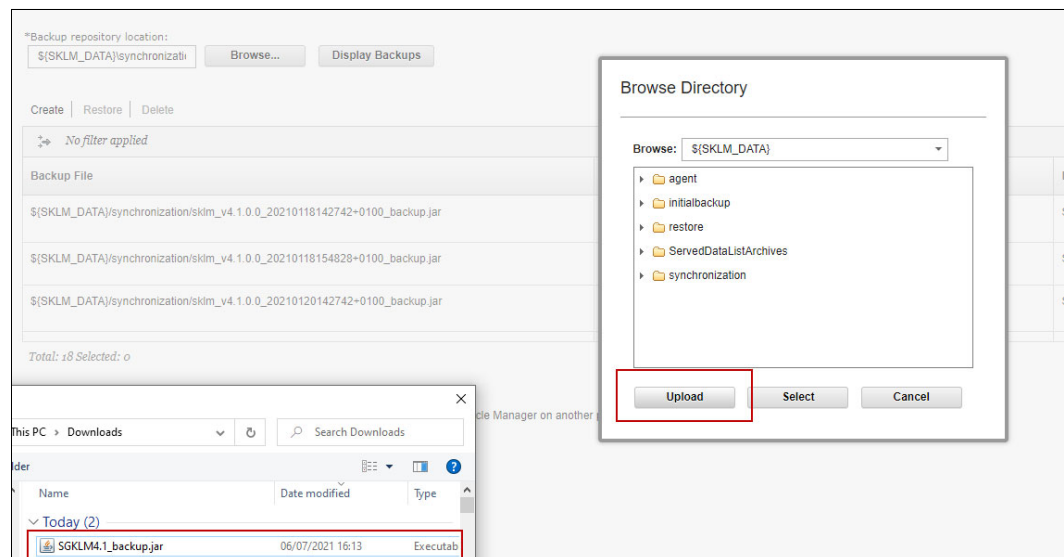


Figure 5-27 Uploading the backup

2. Click **Display Backups** to refresh. The backup appears, as shown in Figure 5-28.

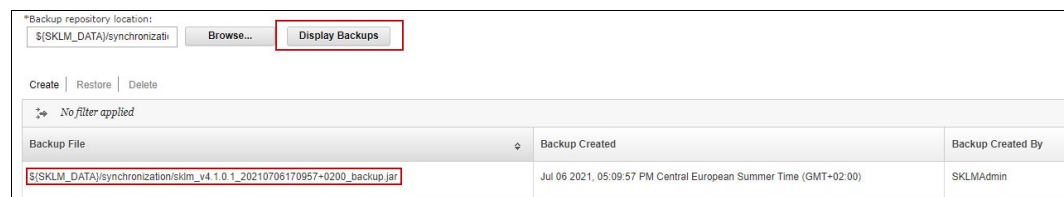


Figure 5-28 Displaying backups

3. Select the backup and click **Restore From Backup**, as shown in Figure 5-29.

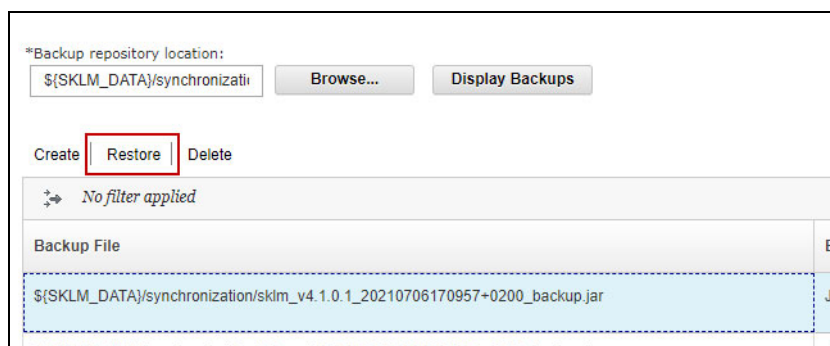


Figure 5-29 Highlighting and restore

4. Enter the password that is specified during the backup and click **Restore Backup**, as shown in Figure 5-30.

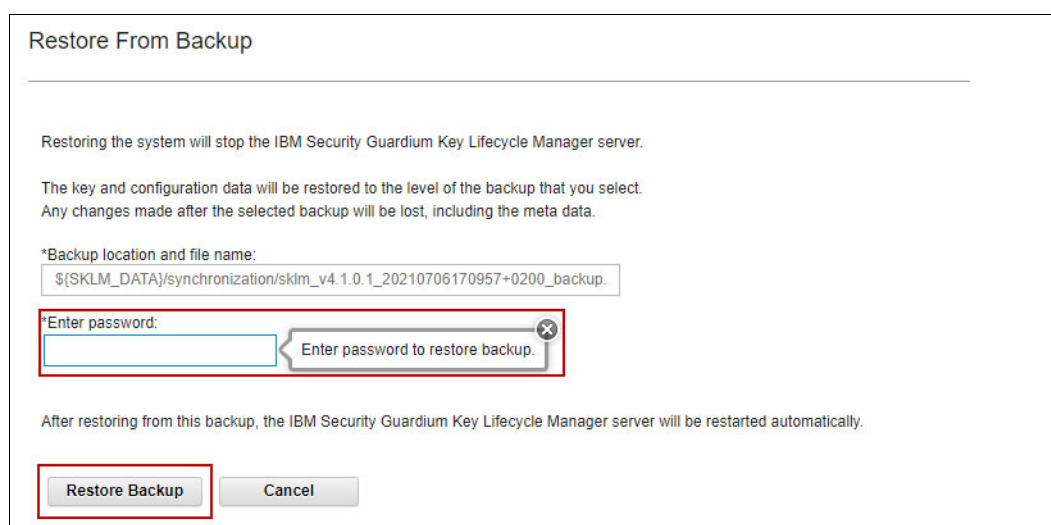


Figure 5-30 Password for restoring backup

5. The following dialog must be confirmed by clicking **OK**:

*“The system will be restored from
 \${SKLM_DATA}\sklm_v4.1.0.1_20210706170957+0200_backup.jar.
 the key and configuration data will be restored to the level of the backup that
 you select.
 Any changes made after the selected backup will be lost, including the
 metadata.
 After restoring from this backup, the server will be restarted automatically.
 The server will not be available during the restart process. After the server
 is restarted, you must restart the browser session (Log-in again to use the
 product user interface).
 Do you want to continue?”*

The backup is successfully restored if you receive the message that is shown in Figure 5-31.

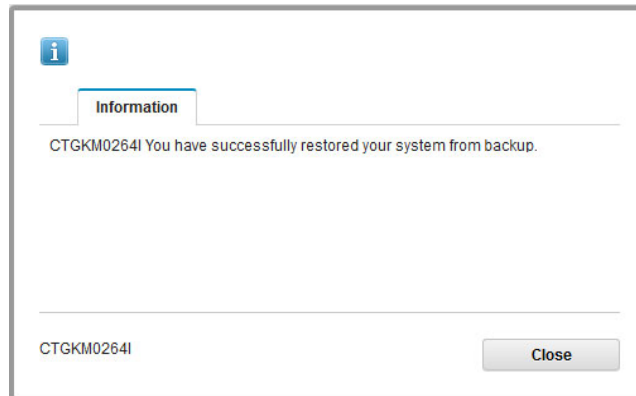


Figure 5-31 Restore successful confirmation

The Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is now set up to serve keys to the DS8000.

Setting up Master-Clone with Incremental Replication between IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers

To configure Master-Clone with Incremental Replication, you must set replication parameters for both the master and clone servers. This configuration is recommended for DS8000 environments using KMIP protocol for TCT encryption and Data at Rest (DAR).

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager provides operations to replicate active files and data across systems, enabling cloning of SGKLM environments to multiple servers, regardless of operating system or directory structure. For example, you can replicate data from a master server on Windows to a clone server on Linux.

Configuring a master server

- ▶ The master server is the primary system that initiates replication.
- ▶ Replication occurs when new keys are added to the master server.
- ▶ You can replicate the master server with up to 20 clone servers, identified by IP address or hostname and port number.
- ▶ Enable Incremental Replication:
 - In the SGKLM GUI, go to **Administration** → **Replication** → **Advanced Properties**.
 - Select **Incremental replication frequency** and set the **interval**.
 - Recommended setting: 60 seconds (default).
- ▶ Start the replication server and confirm the configuration.

Configuring a clone server

The replication process copies the following from the master to the clone:

- SGKLM database tables
- Truststore and keystore with the master key
- SGKLM configuration files

For more information about automatic backup operations, see this IBM Documentation [web page](#).

Configuring a clone server

The replication process enables cloning of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager environments from master server to multiple clone servers. When the replication process is triggered, the following data is replicated to the clone server:

- ▶ Data in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager database tables
- ▶ Truststore and keystore with the master key
- ▶ IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager configuration files

Specifying replication parameters for a master server

Complete the following steps:

1. Log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager that is going to become your master key server, and click **Administration** → **Replication**, as shown in Figure 5-32.

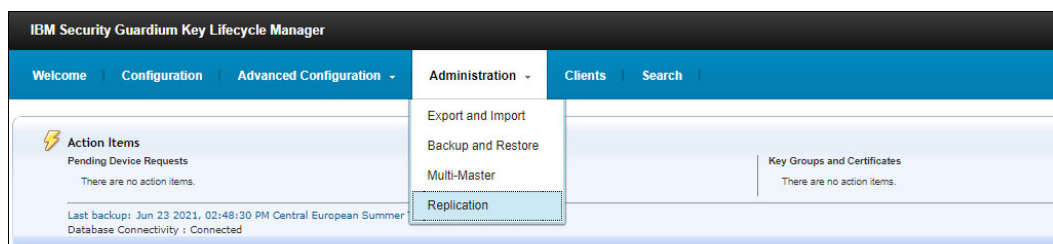


Figure 5-32 Replication menu

2. Change the value for one or more settings of the master server. Select **Master** and confirm “Are you sure to set up this IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager as Master?” by clicking **OK**, as shown in Figure 5-33 on page 99.

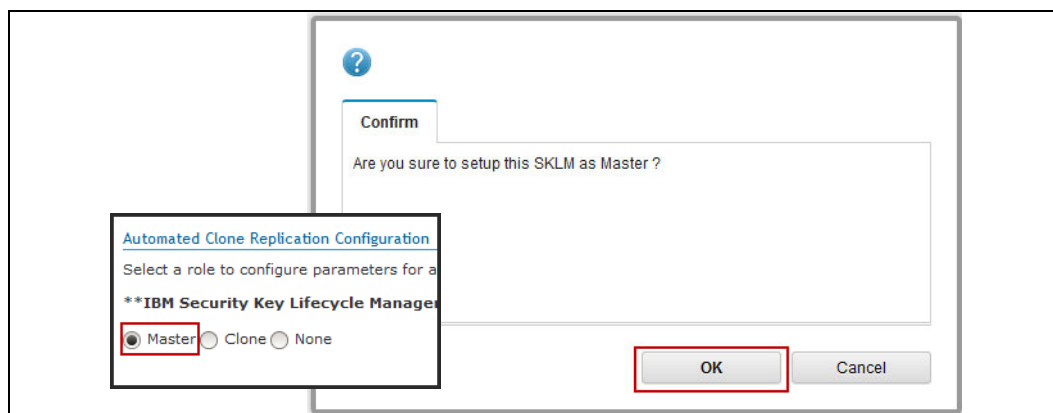


Figure 5-33 Confirming the master

3. Specify the following Basic Properties settings. Then, click **OK**, as shown in Figure 5-34:
 - Select a certificate from the list. The SSL/TLS certificate must exist on the master and all clone systems that you configure for replication.
 - The encryption password for the backup file to help ensure data security. You need the same password to decrypt and restore the file.
 - The port number for communication when non-serialized or delayed replications take place. The default master listen port is 1111.

The screenshot shows the 'Basic Properties' tab for a Master server configuration. A red box highlights the following fields:

- *Certificate from keystore: skim_ssl_kmip_production
- *Replication backup encryption passphrase: [Redacted]
- *Confirm replication backup encryption passphrase: [Redacted]
- *Master listen port: 1111

Below the highlighted fields, there is a section for 'Clone Details' with an 'Add Clone' button.

Figure 5-34 Basic Properties tab (Master)

Note: If you want to set up incremental replication, select the **Incremental Replication** option under Advanced Properties.

Specifying replication parameters for a clone server

Complete the following steps:

1. Log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager that is going to become your master key server and select **Configuration** → **Replication**, as shown in Figure 5-35.

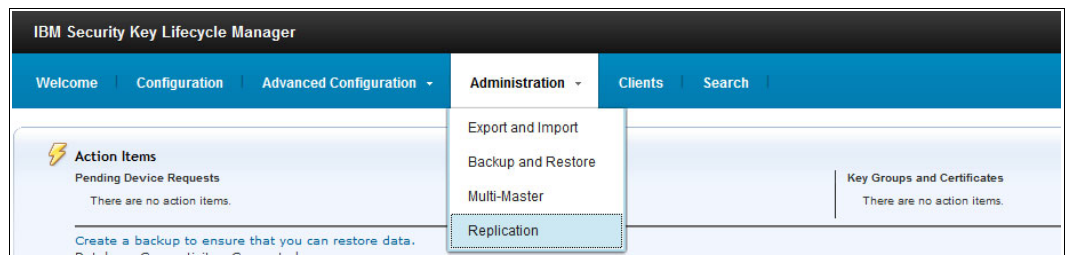


Figure 5-35 Replication menu on the clone machine

2. Select **Clone** and change the ports under Basic Properties, if required. Click **OK**, as shown in Figure 5-36. The default parameters do not need be modified under Advanced Properties.

The screenshot shows the 'Basic Properties' tab for a Clone server configuration. A red box highlights the following fields:

- *Master listen port: 1111
- *Clone listen port: 2222

At the top of the form, there are radio buttons for 'Master', 'Clone' (selected), and 'None'. Below these is a 'Start Replication Server' button.

Figure 5-36 Basic Properties tab (Clone)

3. Start the replication server as a clone. Click **Start Replication Server**, as shown in Figure 5-37.

Note:

- In case of full replication, data is replicated to the clone servers only when new cryptogra

☐ Master
 ☒ Clone
 ☐ None

Start Replication Server

Basic Properties | Advanced Properties

Figure 5-37 Start Replication Server (Clone) option

Configuring the clone in the master key server

For replication, one master and at least one clone IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server must be available. The clones must be known to the master. Complete the following steps:

1. Log in to the master IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, and click **Administration** → **Replication** → **Add Clone**, as shown in Figure 5-38.

*Master listen port: 1111

▼ Clone Details

Add Clone

Figure 5-38 Adding clone

2. Add the fully qualified hostname or IP address of the clone, and click **OK**, as shown in Figure 5-39.

▼ Clone Details

Add Clone

Clone-1	IP Address or Host Name:	Clone-1	Port:	Delete
	sgklmclone.mainz.ibm.com		2222	

Figure 5-39 Inserting IP address and hostname

3. Start the replication server as master. Click **Start Replication Server**, as shown in Figure 5-40.

Note:

- In case of full replication, data is replicated to the clone servers only when ne

☒ Master ☐ Clone ☐ None

Start Replication Server Replicate Now

Basic Properties Advanced Properties

Figure 5-40 Start Replication Server (Master) option

- Restart the master IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server and then all clone servers. Then, verify whether the replications service is running. Log in to all IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers and look for the replication status in the lower right, as shown in Figure 5-41.

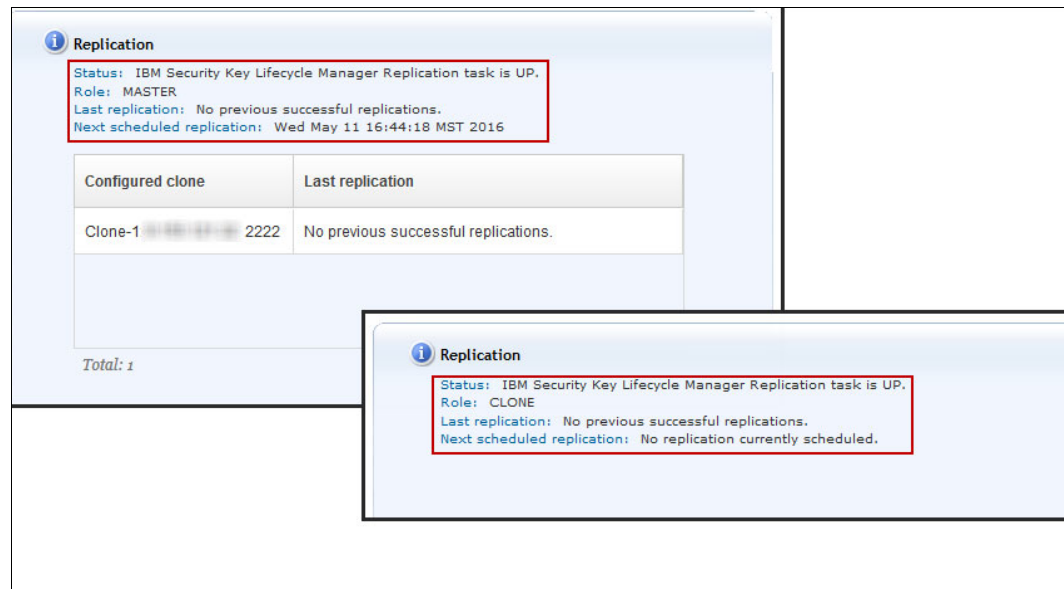


Figure 5-41 Verifying the replication status

- Log in again to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Replication Master and perform an initial replication. Select **Administration** → **Replication** and then, select **Replicate Now** as shown in Figure 5-42.

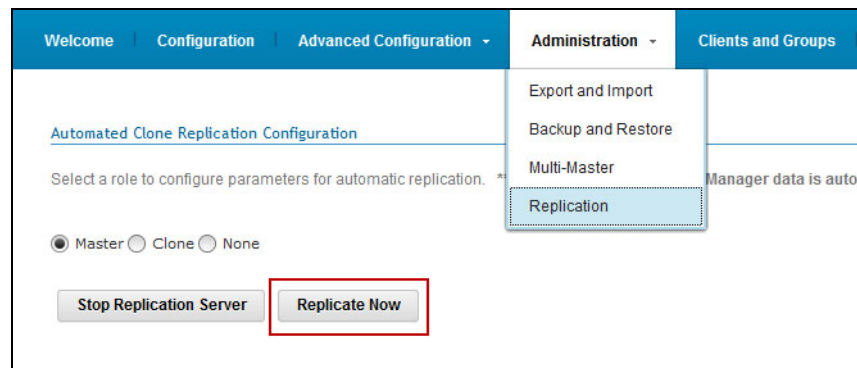


Figure 5-42 Selecting the Replicate Now option

6. Confirm the open window by clicking **OK**, as shown in Figure 5-43.

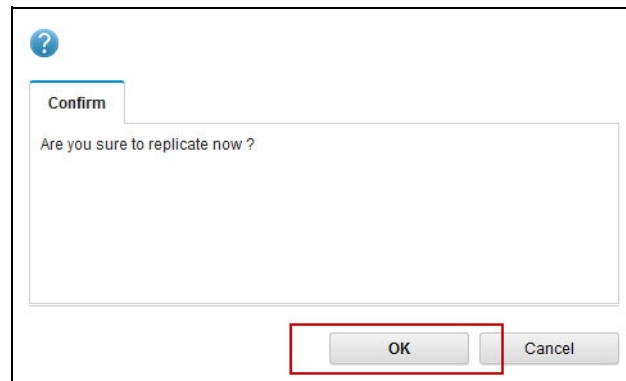


Figure 5-43 Replication confirmation

An information message is displayed, as shown in Figure 5-44.

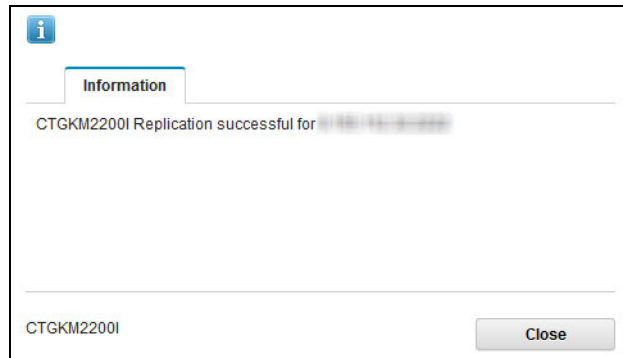


Figure 5-44 Replication successful

7. Return to the Welcome window and verify the replication status. It displays the last replication with the current timestamp, as shown in Figure 5-45.

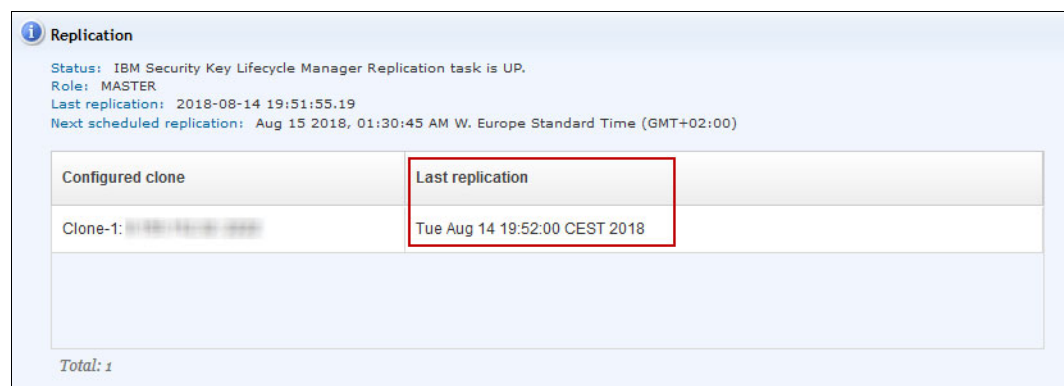


Figure 5-45 Replication status

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is now set up for replication. All configured servers are ready to serve keys.

Setting up a Multi-Master environment with two IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers

In a Multi-Master configuration, all IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager instances in the cluster point to a single data source. This data source is configured for Db2 high availability and disaster recovery (HADR) to help ensure real-time availability of latest data to all the masters in the cluster.

Db2 HADR configuration is used as single data source for all masters in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Multi-Master cluster. HADR protects against data loss by transmitting data changes from a source database, called primary, to a target database, called the standby. Db2 HADR supports multiple standby databases in your Multi-Master setup.

Important: The Multi-Master setup must be performed *before* any configuration in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers, immediately after installation and patching.

A Multi-Master environment is required when you use the KMIP protocol for DAR, TCT, or ENDPOINT encryption.

Ensure that your computer hostname is configured correctly before you set up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager masters for Multi-Master configuration. You can resolve an IP address to a hostname by editing the `/etc/hosts` file.

For Db2 HADR configuration, you must update the `/etc/hosts` file in the primary and all standby master servers of the cluster to enable host name-to-IP address mapping.

Location of the host file:

- ▶ Windows:
C:\Windows\System32\Drivers\etc\
- ▶ Linux:
/etc/hosts

A correct Linux host file is shown in Example 5-2.

Example 5-2 The /etc/hosts file for Multi-Master

```
[root@sklma ]# cat /etc/hosts
# 127.0.0.1 sklma
0.00.000.01 sklma
0.00.000.02 sklmb
```

Nominate one of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers as “Primary Master” and set up the Multi-Master environment on the primary server. The other IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers become “Standby Masters” during the configuration activity.

Creating a TLS/KMIP certificate on the Primary Master

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers and its devices require a TLS/KMIP certificate for secure communication between the servers and between the servers and devices, such as the DS8000 HMC. It is always required that you create a TLS/KMIP certificate.

Creating a TLS/KMIP certificate for Multi-Master configurations corresponds to the procedure that is described in “Creating an TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 84.

Do not transfer the created certificate to any standby master. The Multi-Master synchronization process helps ensure that all servers in the environment are running with the same TLS/KMIP server certificate.

A manual transfer causes the Multi-Master setup to fail. Ensure that the following conditions are met before starting a Multi-Master cluster:

- ▶ Only the primary server should have a server certificate.
- ▶ Ensure that all other servers that join the Multi-Master cluster are clean without any keys or certificates.
- ▶ Ensure that the operating system kernel parameters are correctly set.

For more information about setting up a Multimaster environment, see the following resources:

- ▶ This IBM Documentation [web page](#)
- ▶ *IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager*, SG24-8472

Adding a standby master to the cluster

An IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager high-availability solution is implemented by using Multi-Master cluster configuration. The cluster must contain a Primary Master and at least one Standby Master.

The Primary Master was automatically defined in “Creating a TLS/KMIP certificate on the Primary Master” on page 105.

Complete the following steps to add a Standby Master to the cluster:

1. Log on to the GUI of one IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Primary Master Server and select **Administration** → **Multi-Master**, as shown in Figure 5-46.

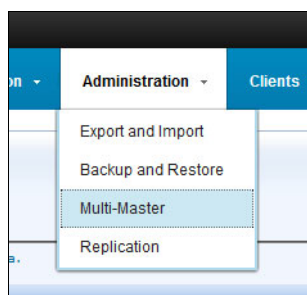


Figure 5-46 Multi-Master menu

2. If the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Multi-Master is not yet configured, click **Multi-Master** for configuration, as shown in Figure 5-47.

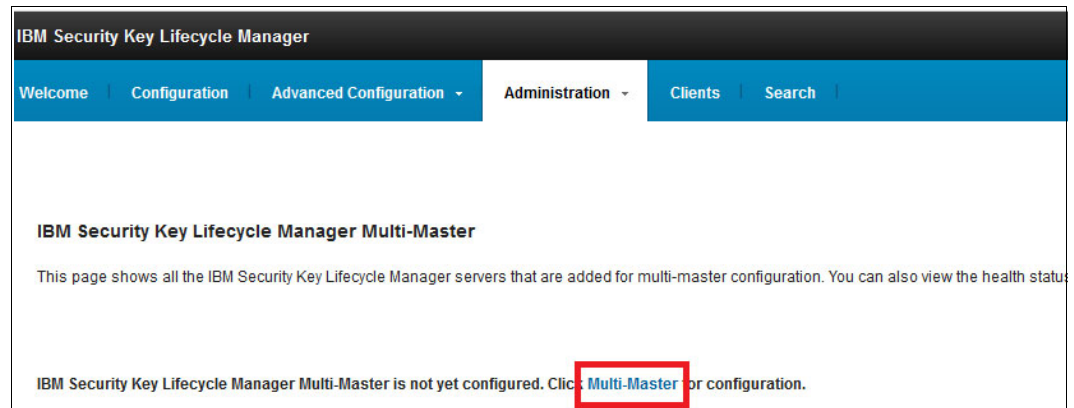


Figure 5-47 Multi-Master configuration

A confirmation message appears, as shown in Figure 5-48. The current server automatically becomes a master.

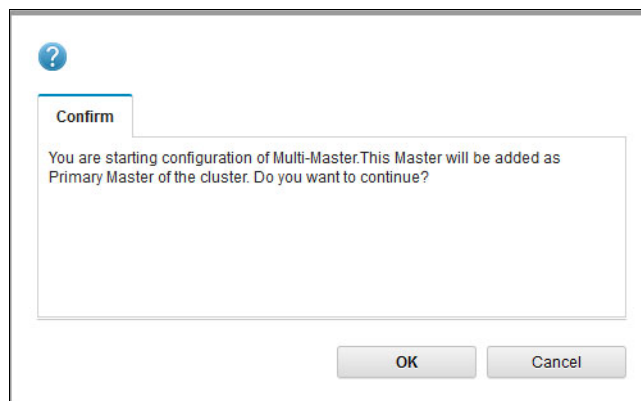


Figure 5-48 Multi-Master confirmation message

3. By default, Agent is not working; therefore, all protocols show as down. Wait until all services turn green, which can take up to 15 minutes. Click the green refresh icon periodically to display the status. After all services are up, click **Add Master** to start the cluster creation process, as shown in Figure 5-49.

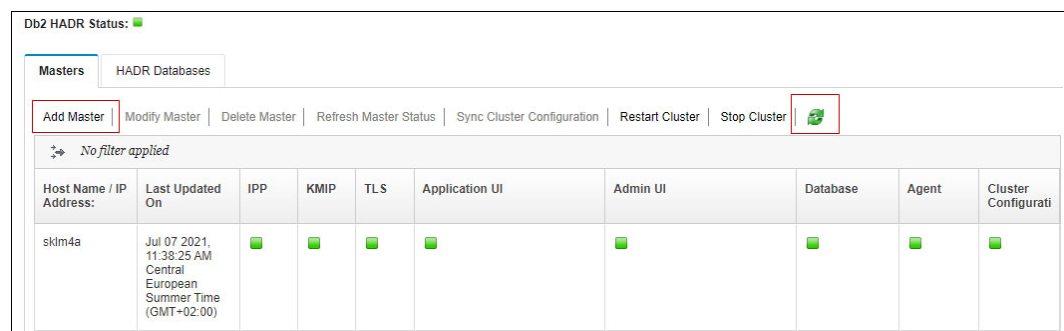


Figure 5-49 Multi-Master: Add Master

4. In the Basic Properties window that is shown in Figure 5-50, specify the following information for the standby master that you are adding:
 - Hostname/IP address
The hostname or IP address of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager standby master that is added to the cluster.
 - IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Username
The name of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager administrator. The administrator name is displayed by default.
 - IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Password
The password for the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server administrator.
 - WebSphere Application Server Username
The WebSphere Application Server login username for the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server administrator profile. The WebSphere Application Server login username is displayed by default.
 - WebSphere Application Server Password
The password for the WebSphere Application Server login username.
 - UI port
The HTTPS port to access IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager GUI and REST services. The port number is displayed by default.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration window titled "Multi-Master Configuration - Add Master". It contains a tabbed interface with "Basic Properties" selected. The form includes several input fields: "Host Name / IP Address" (with a redacted value), "IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager User Name" (SKLMAdmin), "IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager Password" (masked with dots), "WebSphere Application Server User Name" (WASAdmin), "WebSphere Application Server Password" (masked with dots), and "UI port" (9443). There is a checkbox labeled "Accept host certificate automatically" which is checked. At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Check Prerequisites", "Add", and "Cancel".

Figure 5-50 Multi-Master - Add Master: Basic Properties

5. Select the **Advanced Properties** tab, as shown in Figure 5-51.

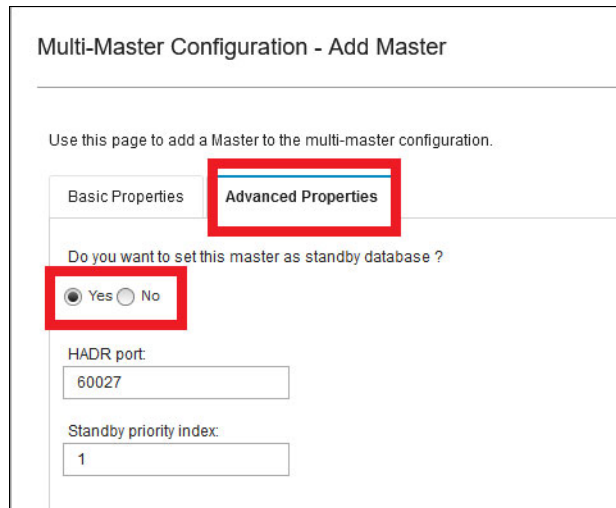


Figure 5-51 Multi-Master - Add Master: Advanced Properties

Specify the following information for the standby master:

- Do you want to set this master as a standby database?

Select **Yes** to add the current instance as a standby master to the cluster.

- HADR port

The port number for the standby HADR database to communicate with the primary HADR database. Keep it at the default.

- Standby priority index

The priority index value for the standby database to take over when the primary database is down. You can set the priority index to any value 1 - 3. The standby server with a higher-priority index level (lower number) takes precedence over the lower-priority databases.

6. Click **Check Prerequisite**, as shown in Figure 5-52, to test various prerequisites and communication between the standby master that you are adding and the current primary master. Click **Close** on the information message that is shown when all the prerequisites are met.

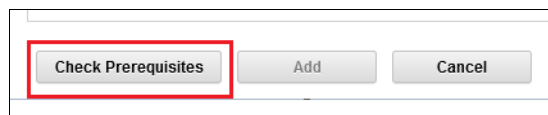


Figure 5-52 Check Prerequisites

7. If the prerequisite checking was successful, click **Add** (as shown in Figure 5-53) to add the Standby Master to the cluster. Confirm the dialog “Are you sure to add this master to the multi-master Cluster?” by clicking **OK**.

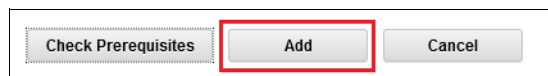


Figure 5-53 Adding the standby master

The HADR Database is now built across the Masters. This process can take up to 10 minutes to complete. A progress window is displayed, as shown in Figure 5-54.

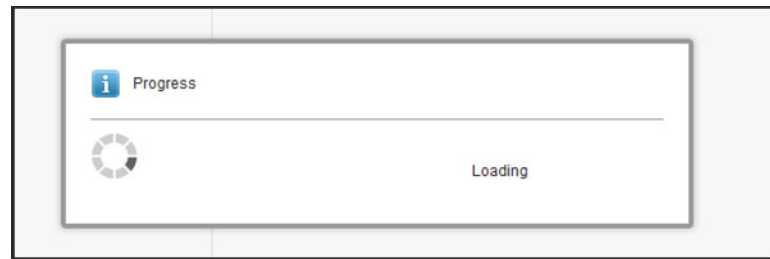


Figure 5-54 HADR progress

8. A confirmation window opens. After clicking **OK**, both IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager instances are restarted in the background.
9. Log in to all configured IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers and verify the Multi-Master availability. The Welcome window resembles the example that is shown in Figure 5-55.

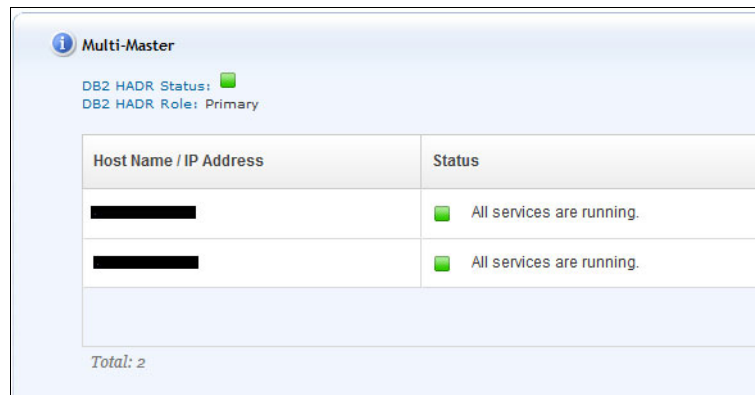


Figure 5-55 Multi-Master status on the welcome window

10. If one of the hosts shows a failed state, which is indicated by a red cross, return to the Multi-Master configuration window, select the host that shows the red cross, and refresh its status, as shown in Figure 5-56.

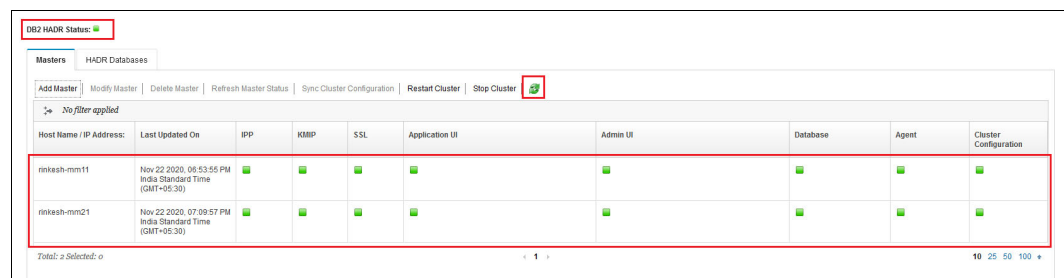


Figure 5-56 Multi-Master detailed status

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is now set up as a Multi-Master cluster. All configured servers in the HADR database are now ready to serve keys.

5.3.3 Configuring the Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure platform

Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure (KS) is a third-party centralized key management platform, such as the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, that is fully supported by DS8000 Release 8.1 and later.

Gemalto SafeNet KS is available as a hardware and virtual software appliance.

In our scenarios, we used Version 8.3.2 RevA. It supports KMIP 1.1 and the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager does (used with DS8000 Release 8.1 and later), LDAP and Active Directory authentication, and multiple network management protocols.

Like IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, Gemalto SafeNet KS provides a GUI, which is named *Gemalto SafeNet KS Management Console*. It supports 128-bit encryption and an SSH command-line interface (CLI).

Gemalto SafeNet KS can manage up to 1,000,000 keys and 1,000 devices. It supports the Hardware Security Module (HSM) to store the master key.

For more information about Gemalto SafeNet KS, see [Cloud Protection and Licensing Solutions](#).

This section describes the procedure to configure Gemalto SafeNet KS to serve keys to an encryption-enabled DS8000. The instructions are based on the assumption that the Gemalto SafeNet KS servers are installed, clustered, and ready for configuration. The system clocks of all key servers must be relatively synchronized.

Preparation

When using Gemalto SafeNet KS KMIP Compatible Key Servers, KMIP must be configured with the necessary client certificate authentication policy. Three policies are supported by the DS8880:

- ▶ **Client Certificate Authentication Not Used**

Not using Client Certificate Authentication when connecting to the DS8000 is not a best practice because it does not meet KMIP standards.

- ▶ **Client Certificate Authentication used for SSL session only**

This policy applies to DS8000 Storage Systems that are included with Release 8.1 and later and to DS8000 Storage Systems that are upgraded from Release 8.0 to Release 8.1 and later.

- ▶ **Client Certificate Authentication for SSL Session and user ID (UID)**

This policy applies to DS8000 Storage Systems that are shipped from manufacturing with Release 8.1 and later. A UID is added to the Gen 2 certificate in the DS8000 by manufacturing, thus connecting the DS8000 to the KMIP capable key server by using Client Certificate Authentication for SSL Session and UID. It is the most secure way.

Not using Client Certificate Authentication (policy 1) is not a best practice, so it is not covered in this paper. Both the Client Certificate Authentication used for SSL session only (policy 2) and the two-factor authentication by enabling Client Certificate Authentication for SSL and configuring the username (policy 3) are preferred and covered in this paper.

Policy 2 and 3 prerequisites

Before starting the Gemalto SafeNet KS Configuration, the following prerequisites must be met:

- ▶ You configured two independent key servers in a cluster.
- ▶ The recovery key (RK) is configured (see “Creating the recovery key” on page 160).
- ▶ The DS8000 certificate is updated from Gen 1 to Gen 2 or Gen 3, as described in “Migrating certificates” on page 196.
- ▶ The root certificate for DS8000 is downloaded to the client computer from [IBM Documentation](#).
- ▶ (For Policy 3 only): The Gen 2 or GEN 3 certificate is exported to the client computer to extract the UID. For more information about how to export it and how to extract the UID from it, see “Exporting and using DS8000 Encryption Communication Certificate (Gen 2)” on page 112.

Note: DS8000 Release 8.2 and later features an active Gen 2+ and a dormant GEN 3 certificate from manufacturing by default.

Exporting and using DS8000 Encryption Communication Certificate (Gen 2)

Complete the following steps to export and use DS8000 Encryption Communication Certificate (Gen 2):

1. To export the GEN 2 or GEN 3 certificate, follow the procedure that is described in “DS8000 TCT encryption certificate (Gen 2) import (IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager)” on page 184 and return here.
2. Extract the UID field from this certificate.

In UNIX based operating systems, run **openssl** to extract the UID field from this certificate, as shown in Example 5-3.

Example 5-3 Extracting the UID

```
[root@sklm-rehl64 tmp]# openssl x509 -in smoker1h_gen2_cert.pem -text | grep
Subject:
      Subject: UID=DS8K-2107-75LR811, C=US, O=ibmDisk, CN=2107-75LR811
[root@sklm-rehl64 tmp]#
```

Important: Save the UID. It is required in a later step.

In Windows, you can use the Certificate Manager to read the UID by completing the following steps:

- a. Run CertManager, as shown in Figure 5-57.

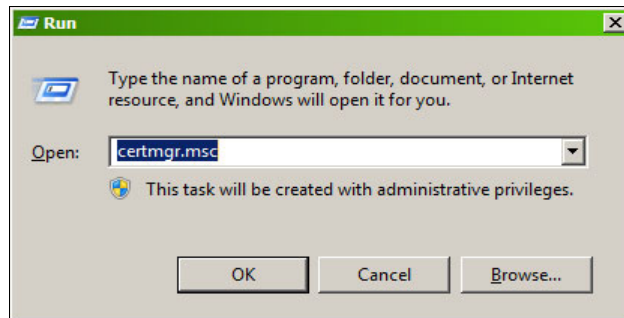


Figure 5-57 Running CertMgr

- b. Click **Personal** → **Certificates** and then, click **All Tasks** → **Import** as shown in Figure 5-58.

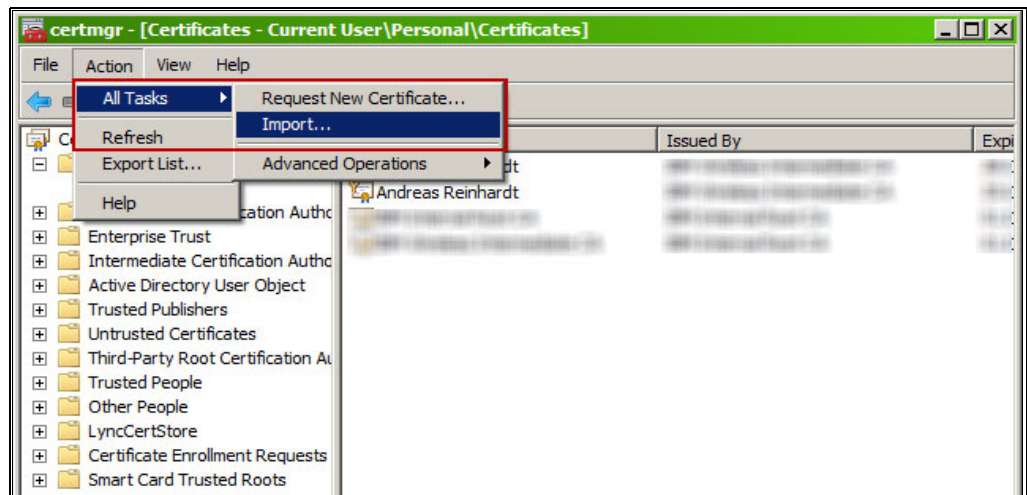


Figure 5-58 Import menu

- c. Follow the wizard to import the certificate. Be sure to select **All Files (*.*)** to see the certificate in .pem format, as shown in Figure 5-59.

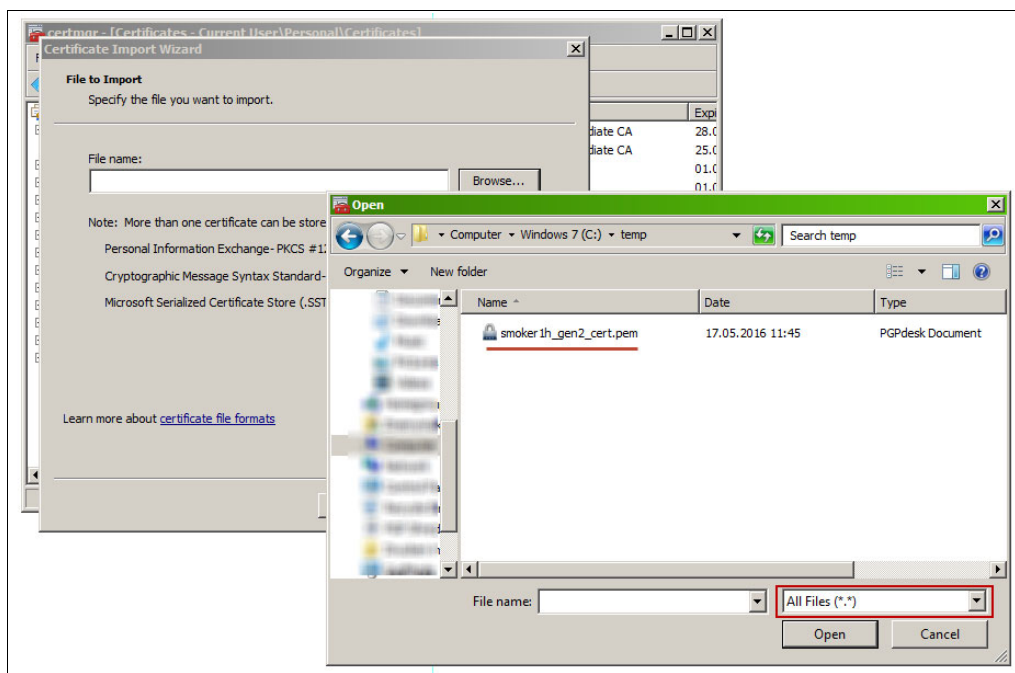


Figure 5-59 Selecting the All Files (*.*) option

The certificate is now imported, as shown in Figure 5-60.

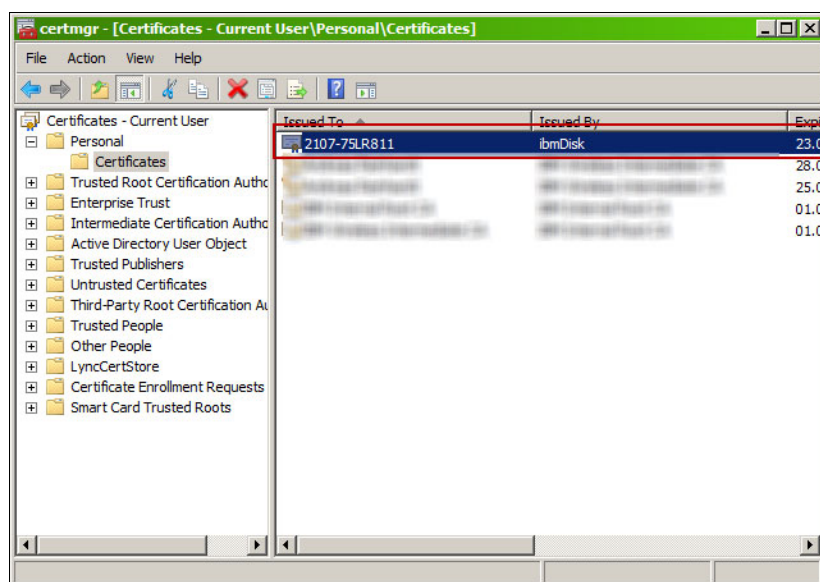


Figure 5-60 Imported certificate

- d. Open the certificate, click the **Details** tab, and then select **Subject**. Figure 5-61 shows the UID.

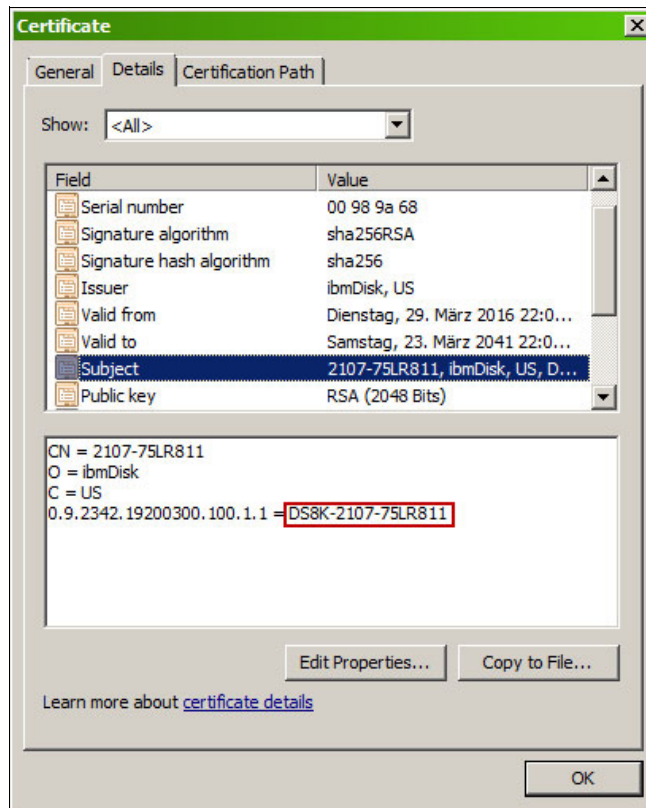


Figure 5-61 Showing the UID

Important: Save the UID. It is required in a later step.

You can delete the Gen 2 certificate from the Windows keystore and Windows and UNIX HDDs now.

DS8000 GEN 2 and GEN 3 root and intermediate certificates

This section describes the DS8000 root GEN 2 and GEN 3 CA certificate and the intermediate GEN 3 CA certificate.

If you do not have access to the IBM Documentation, use the root certificates from Example 5-4 (Gen 2 root), Example 5-5 on page 116 (Gen 3 root), and Example 5-6 on page 117 (GEN3 intermediate).

Make sure to copy everything, including -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- and -----END CERTIFICATE-----.

Example 5-4 Gen2 root CA certificate

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDHzCCAgegAwIBAgIBADANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADAfMQswCQYDVQQGEwJVUzEQ
MA4GA1UEChMHawJtRG1zazAeFw0xMjA4MTcwMDM2NTVaFw0zMjA4MTIwMDM2NTVa
MB8xCzAJBgNVBAYTA1VTMRAwDgYDVQQKEwdpYm1EaXNrMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0B
AQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEApTtHo9ET6dtKKUqWHZqS01WJ1QI71KBTn5niD/XwH
mBkZrWCYkoM/GZv1k4YGvYvoxHmsvuADk0+/Sj2Zq1C0r5mWnDx4xqSuP07xNT7
```

```
jUDt6E/39TpQS+2svseHr07XCmf9qCncYW29K1yv5UQtvosz0v1Gmw1z2WnF7qwu
CtMsqd6WoYsmRgStXGGGCUkHbPMJi7jKBGRf1QKmpIDw1NM/dA41ZE1g/Nu+EHKq
KcbKzAcx4PBYP7rLE9nkpqzooH5Z/3s5tq7M0gHEuxJD86mLzug9kQ0uPOVP5K
j/0q+/CYVHQAOwo3KuN8Ft78u2+c21RimoDW3kUhepizQIDAQABo2YwZDADBgNV
HQ4EFgQUN4o9G4sMHvLCxe3qjGwPb/3CqeQwDgYDVROPAQH/BAQDAgIEMBIGA1Ud
EwEB/wQIMAYBAf8CAQEWwYDVROjBBgwFoAUN4o9G4sMHvLCxe3qjGwPb/3CqeQw
DQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQADggEBAGq6kM7n7IRVZS32uj1FYuB4PjWYGRqm7HCYmIX
8zFpszP0Bg9DWbtntQsXrVJV5u81IyoU3m5ARgGWNKKEttHGLpF2M91ZxkkNyyhu
v1q+bPwt+jv1A7TfnvzxXpTx9jKrKSApuANP5AjMXZzVpem/pVM8DND8GFewSfKc
/CQacdGvE1SuXoaxUNWjC11RErvoEB2ty3B6Sf+sn0ecnD/iSRv0AR5q/2qY/vIM
7AURXz+XyrB10LHRKCOHwY+3AVKcQJU0u1C9/qnof8c1gtKL+mc896vSRsGBaxR
hj8BbJAFD+xMf7Y4Ch904fjisSFWL9NX464wIjbaJhdqQWo=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Example 5-5 Gen 3 root CA certificate

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIFvzCCA6egAwIBAgIJAL2EBbsrQpocMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAMGsxChAJBgNV
BAYTA1VTMRAwDgYDVQQIDAdBcm16b25hMQ8wDQYDVQQHDAZUdWNzb24xDDAKBgNV
BAoMA01CTTEQMA4GA1UECwwHU3RvcnFmZTEZMBcGA1UEAwwQSUJNIEp2sgUm9v
dCBDQTAeFw0xOTA2MTUwMTUyMTdaFw0xOTA2MTAwMTUyMTdaMGsxChAJBgNVBAYT
A1VTMRAwDgYDVQQIDAdBcm16b25hMQ8wDQYDVQQHDAZUdWNzb24xDDAKBgNVBAoM
A01CTTEQMA4GA1UECwwHU3RvcnFmZTEZMBcGA1UEAwwQSUJNIEp2sgUm9vZCBD
QTCCAiIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggIPADCCAgoCggIBAL2LCj+g1n0ZEx43kRmC
/OwYU3WDI7qJ/ZVb+9uogQk1KVtBQDED9PAOM5Cjh63EMXmg9XyyrCe0jtZoA/UO
DONLDWKItEyzTcTDMB1TaaubI5xM103NKcj/kAa1MWubf60/ANTrg+MDj+mnSCJf
QVsgcqkmlaqe/VPwrMISUWduGn0/9mw+VYVzGj8Mhq7o5gnkkGMxNTqvCwSEHVTg
Q1G2Wo1cg0EN2dtw1ZxukHihsvXhr7NE/uZfewQ9dMsAFn+W/WFs0vWChEmVz2c
OCDgNiYeS799QzC8ihvjB32pZyYAGCTVn0rroyWmI40DQbNqobaom3U4LTW4CIs
+91r626aEKz9c21qnMssnPuwI7+LI0sX1C3xehGSZgieWyjJSwTEon8ISxbu5grZ
029m78oSfNELBdF0zi13zzB9sbMR6VSyl6d3qB0APahcKNLkIpnCcyLcIUgrXZFa
kuaMIG0kbE0zH+JK8JCUSfbTZFKVwAwgup5Z/rGW708FGTPjv/zFz/ILbXcA1jwk
2C1TDsDhQX3Gf9hQkCTfk8+QBYvTkF+YTJecFC7NG0naL8RuCO6Cg/Ve2mmp1H1b
gh+ufQGqT4Q6dPfo06Bqx75ds28nMwRExAL37QRkrHkGOU2rzMnTJK99cjTVZqHi
nef40/jOn+Fq+d9UR7/qEoY3AgMBAAGjZjBkMB0GA1UdDgQWBBR7YXEAT0BNjdDn
rMvp8+yKGQJ9rTafBgNVHSMEGDAWgBR7YXEAT0BNjdDnrMvp8+yKGQJ9rTASBgNV
HRMBAf8ECDAGAQH/AgEBMA4GA1UdDwEB/wQEAwIBBjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FAAOC
AgEAIuHBYYcaqe3RQMt/zSawC2tOWP+uo0ev7rEKcvHuxRtDPwx1PeG5xnIwv+ss
jwXzPst8EYV51Xf0h5oGvqt+T2jFK2/uchri8Cm1835wxIIzgAFmNSBvv1m9r0Xo
higBcgsEuPP8SjbyS11UhDpYC8FIxyi1L+4a9N0hi7nu172E6BCrc+qNk/oXpnEN
GnqTQIOEuYN/qEpI8eaCN5MecY/+KLYQMTvFdc/b413F6e/1WHP4CMaCSjPLNS55
f1YgkW4m4WVFX6Z1RLp8DPJ/n5UYIEFUBx1DAQzpD2bAiL1DwBHGC2CW0QVmdMv+
T13T81KhZ2NTF2XTDXIGLYSwiSCJBvWv1SCPMN7Ms0NkiFLH75iDAN9PuyIzIfds
gzkB5Ix+cT60FR2Ah7IXQNfeh7nWvSZVnj1FLvtY0x5gAB5cRcReathGFitXgt/
Q5Gwd0Z9jpUMtQqoUbCvuTedJ15kI/VWGiPDnW9N04T4BZKHI7u4IAb2R1BBYhX
Btd/kaJ01++G+vZ0+hxhj8EbgRIFGzdLeNo+J1L0nGjIwf16KDNUujcGaUAa5HQB
k3jiEddbVVkYgnZF0mfS+ykOdXUU2JtYsRkY+bwsRdyNyM7T+oHE/MRIqME8Lwos
09iKndrd8NzbcL29FL+PUAKTSKz/wAo/IZUdGXGatBDk0aY=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Example 5-6 Gen3 intermediate CA certificate

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIFsTCCA5mgAwIBAgIENkRWBDANBgqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADBrMQswCQYDVQQGEwJV
UzEQMA4GA1UECAwHQXJpem9uYTEPMA0GA1UEBwwGVHVjc29uMQwwCgYDVQQKDANJ
Qk0xEDA0BgNVBAsMB1N0b3JhZ2UxGTAXBgNVBAMMEETCSBEaXNrIFJvb3QgQ0Ew
HhcNMTkwNjE1MDE1ODE2WhcNMzkwNjEwMDE1ODE2WjBiMQswCQYDVQQGEwJVUzEQ
MA4GA1UECAwHQXJpem9uYTEPMA0GA1UECgwDSUJNMRAwDgYDVQLDAdTdG9yYWd1
MSEwHwYDVQQDDDBhJQk0gRG1zayBJbnR1cm1lZG1hdGUgQ0EwggIiMA0GCSqGSIb3
DQEBAQUAA4ICDwAwggIKAoICAQDAwzYUgL8+R1KYR8SDUBwCOW1IcK2LMYHw6uEq
v/PS04Y10wmmhM/ukAoSKacAWVH9y0c/ETnpQoks0vJTVf1bW06N+bKRqrZyQyb9
wibxBevydMe2nLFmnOf/qxQ/gBkPFI6PGBV3XWgphsequsb010Dp0IVxRUxhyhoc
M3EbsxqbRsjQjdxYCEkFy6xfizfP7TwC7f4jtoYxGoLHACKHIz2C11Z2HFtzVVFx
6P8qNbZ8B1R6DZA+qw1LXCiFgB/6ChvPZ7SZtegwids/smz5k6z35CLAdp1PTf43
sknXFVaOgXR95kDHDsnMwuWSW+G4o5B7n0Q0KI2P9BLNYg3VYLbsx0uN9HwgWA/g
NEmf0IwZLCU+ebS7DAENVxTWi2+kRn50VZgepT4QeIhWDbMdpNT01U7d3hqCWZw
L1yUYEP9EIJX+J3Ub4Ijfd18jk0x8MB8xtgngsyYFHedgB87FatjLOZ/X9Hnk0QZ
qkVv3L9gkhR9cgANadans2R2n4K6mG4YudSJjsI1MpkaxvqnNhcWUG9kCqkroteo
zcuxn/8nJQ0CI7/F5kDtTgfmtzSPM0i6+10H0Lvb6p0ScRw+5tm2RVhKk22gvYok
fd8vS/8wJXe3oI/1Nrmew/t7FmLYNiuz1Kr0XsRUFJp6j6/wK/L1c0oL1rdW1EkF
N7S8WQIDAQABo2YwZDAdBgNVHQ4EFgQUmxHC4fzLs9VwDzPf3LfNnVUqS08wHwYD
VR0jBBgwFoAUE2FxAEzgTY3Q56zL6fPsihkCfa0wEgYDVR0TAQH/BAgwBgEB/wIB
ADA0BgNVHQ8BAf8EBAMCAQYwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQENBQADggIBADng3Le1irqLI2cq
a1Ht1KXenJXFuPE+fIciLabnWEITKBNJTRSW05TpVYUdkHMSqedDqkCSS/UiLWkf
WMUD0KQzQP1oWW3ifsv00gZ1HDcmewUdYBhK8Lk5DZ1F7E/YH1PzMWBt+b840XjP
DGFdYPzy0HX0qP0SecXa8dpylQfj+0x1l8ooKn8bxxYbq/3w9LmHajBCrCUQmvvo
uGGMCurjDCCH7IiTo1yy+xsSuqk1IXY010h9A9N/gSx2ze9UCbpwh51SBNatpVa
5AhiuJBnr44fBMyZZWT4Z+yRRjMPIe0D1tcInaWjKPAcFl5yUxDCYwJwWWhrhw8v
PQkQ5VeJo9fB7SnYN73BLwEVewa1KYzNUAk4wIHhN2LNNMMCCbsRVD7cLORrINz
Q4pEt4Bm6JVDWK/i8Ky3AIdjjqaPYXN8dvBqMdrLyVhpH5gXUAgv0TG/4aSSuzML
Djft0LPN0SdWfAoFeNN03FEQP2wF9m4lbbhgOGjk7yyrwlFvjGQqIfPu1jD2XdYk
P9rQXkm54uU70X9WtqtqmBXz51PjM6+p9bYAw+wqdIQJcqVAWQzFype91fD+wnhb
XXwPG8D70LTIFJSeB209wyYUq7YSWqx5IEkYFTYK0onGGtdTuxGZDAm201Vtppq
+nIykZSkeQYMFZ9m7B0gz/dVXxV
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

The GEN 2 and GEN 3 root certificates can also be downloaded from this IBM Documentation [web page](#).

Configuration

Note: Illustrations in this section are shown courtesy of Thales DIS CPL US, Inc.

Five steps are needed to configure the KMIP server immediately after installation. SSL is mandatory for KMIP and must be configured.

Complete the following steps:

1. Create a self-signed SSL server certificate, or use a public CA with CSR on every Gemalto SafeNet KS server.
2. Install the DS8000 root certificate from IBM Documentation.
3. Create a Trusted CA List and add the known CA.
4. Add a KMIP device and edit it.
5. Add a user to key server, based on the UID from the Gen 2 certificate (policy 3 only).

The Gemalto SafeNet KS installation secures HTTPS transport with a self-signed certificate by default. Depending on the browser and version that is used, an exception can occur. In that case, you must accept the certificate as a trusted certificate.

Creating a self-signed SSL server certificate

The self-signed SSL server certificate must be created on every Gemalto SafeNet KS server.

Important: SSL server certificates are not replicated between the servers. Every SSL server certificate must have the same name.

Complete the following steps:

1. Log in as Admin to the Gemalto SafeNet KS GUI by pointing your browser to the address of the key server by using the format `https://(ip address):<ip port>`. The default port is 9443.
2. Select **Security** → **SSL Certificates** and create a certificate request, as shown in Figure 5-62.

Create Certificate Request

Certificate Name:	safenet_ssl_cert
Common Name:	SafeNet SSL Certificate
Organization Name:	IBM
Organizational Unit Name:	Storage
Locality Name:	Mainz
State or Province Name:	
Country Name:	DE
Email Address:	
Key Size:	2048

Create Certificate Request

Figure 5-62 Creating a certificate

3. After the SSL certificate is created, select it and click **Properties**, as shown in Figure 5-63.

Certificate and CA Configuration

Certificate List

Certificate Name	Certificate Information
<input checked="" type="radio"/> safenet_ssl_cert	Common: SafeNet SSL Certificate

Warning: Certificate requests should be backed up for protection

Edit Delete Properties

Figure 5-63 SSL certificate properties

4. Within the properties, select **Create Self-Signed Certificate**, as shown in Figure 5-64.

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate and CA Configuration' window with the 'Certificate Request Information' tab selected. The 'Certificate Name' is 'safenet_ssl_cert' and the 'Key Size' is '2048'. The 'Subject' field is populated with: CN: SafeNet SSL Certificate, O: IBM, OU: Storage, L: Mainz, ST: , C: DE, and emailAddress: . Below the subject information is a large text area containing a blurred certificate request. At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Download', 'Install Certificate', 'Create Self Sign Certificate' (highlighted with a red box), and 'Back'.

Figure 5-64 Self-signing the certificate

5. You can modify the certificate duration in days, as shown in Figure 5-65. Although you can use the system to specify a maximum of 7300 days (20 years), it is advised as a cryptographic best practice to use smaller durations, such as 365 or 730 days (1 or 2 years).

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate and CA Configuration' window with the 'Self Signed Certificate' tab selected. The 'Certificate Name' is 'safenet_ssl_cert' and the 'Key Size' is '2048'. The 'Subject' field is populated with: CN: SafeNet SSL Certificate, O: IBM, OU: Storage, L: Mainz, ST: , C: DE, and emailAddress: . Below the subject information is a text field for 'Certificate Duration (days)' with the value '7300' (highlighted with a red box). At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Create' (highlighted with a red box) and 'Back'.

Figure 5-65 Maximum certificate duration

The SSL Certificate is now active, as shown in Figure 5-66 on page 120.

Certificate List Help ?			
Certificate Name	Certificate Information	Certificate Purpose	Certificate Status
<input checked="" type="radio"/> safenet_ssl_cert-selfsign	Common: SafeNet SSL Certificate Issuer: IBM Expires: May 13 21:28:00 2036 GMT	Server/Client	Active
<input type="radio"/> safenet_ssl_cert	Common: SafeNet SSL Certificate	Certificate Request	Request Pending
<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Properties"/>			

Figure 5-66 SSL Cert Ready

- Select the self-signed SSL certificate again and select **Properties**. Then, click **Download**, as shown in Figure 5-67.



Figure 5-67 Downloading the Concurrent Code Load certificate

- Save it to your local HDD and do not rename it, as shown in Figure 5-68.

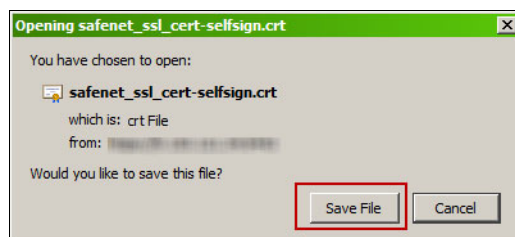


Figure 5-68 Saving the SSL certificate to the hard disk drive

Important: Repeat these steps on all Gemalto SafeNet KS servers.

Installing the DS8000 GEN 2 or GEN 3 root certificate from IBM Documentation

This section shows how to install the DS8000 root certificate for the Gemalto SafeNet KS key server cluster. There is only one DS8000 root certificate for all machines in your environment.

From now, all steps can be performed on just one Gemalto SafeNet KS key server, independent from which one you choose.

Complete the following steps:

1. Still logged in to the Gemalto SafeNet KS GUI, click **Security** → **Known CAs**, as shown in Figure 5-69, paste the certificate text, and click **Install**. The name should clearly identify the DS8000 Gen 2 root certificate.

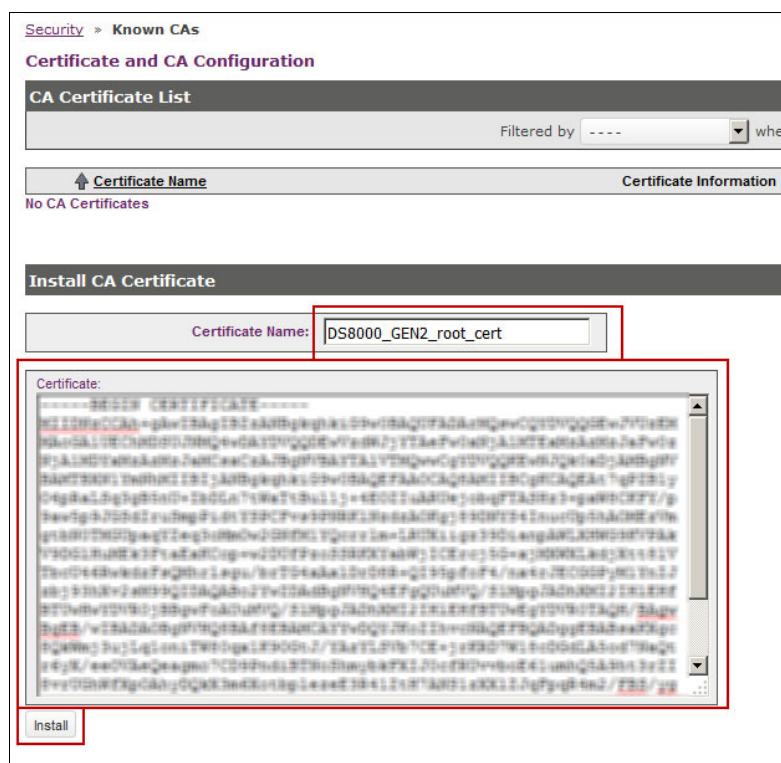


Figure 5-69 Installing the DS8000 Gen 2 root certificate

2. The root certificate is now installed and active. As shown in Figure 5-70 on page 122, the certificates must be added to a trusted CA list to be recognized by the KMIP server.

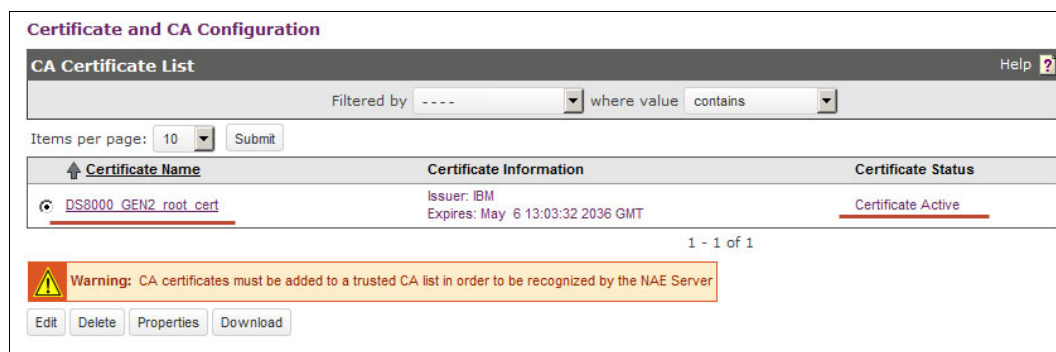


Figure 5-70 Root certificate is now installed

Using a multi-layer certificate chain of trust

In some environments, there might be a requirement to use certificates that are signed by multiple certificate authorities. This situation is known as a multi-layer certificate chain of trust.

The certificate chain of trust includes a leaf certificate, a set of intermediate CA certificates, and a root CA certificate.

For successful authentication between the DS8000 and the Gemalto SafeNet KS key server, the entire chain of trust must be presented to the DS8000. To help ensure that condition, proceed as follows:

1. Configure the Gemalto SafeNet KS key server with the leaf certificate and the set of intermediate CA certificates.

In the entry box that is displayed as shown in Figure 5-69 on page 121, paste the certificate chain in PEM format, with the leaf certificate first and then the successive intermediate CA certificates in descending order.

2. When you configure the key manager on the DS8000, use the root CA certificate as the key server certificate.

Tip: You can test the chain of trust by using the following command:

```
openssl s_client -connect key_server_ip_address:key_server_port_number -showcerts
```

Creating a trusted CA list profile and adding the known CA

The next step is to create a trusted CA list profile for your environment and add the previously created known CA to the profile list.

Complete the following steps:

1. Still logged in to the Gemalto SafeNet KS GUI, click **Security** → **Trusted CA Lists**, as shown in Figure 5-71, and click **Add**.

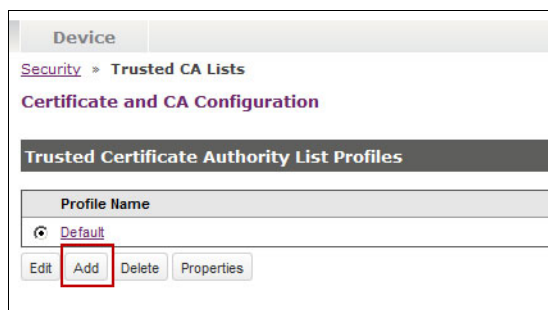


Figure 5-71 Adding a profile

The name should clearly identify the DS8000 profile, as shown in Figure 5-72.

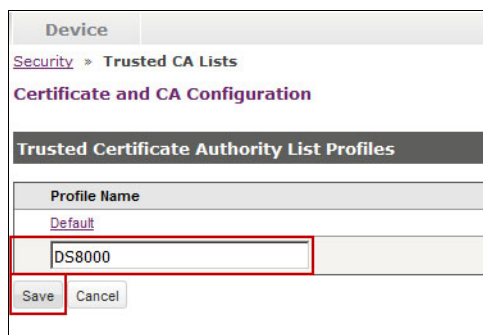


Figure 5-72 Naming the profile

2. The new profile is now in the list of profiles, as shown in Figure 5-73. Select it and open the properties.

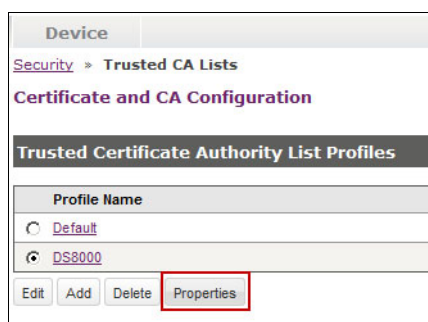


Figure 5-73 Profile properties

3. In the profile properties, click **Edit** (see Figure 5-74).

Device

Security > Trusted CA Lists

Certificate and CA Configuration

Trusted CA List Profile Properties

Profile Name: DS8000

Back

Trusted Certificate Authority List

Trusted CAs:

Local Certificate Authorities:
[None]

CA Certificates:
[None]

Edit

Figure 5-74 Editing the profile

4. Add the previously created DS8000 root CA to the list of trusted CAs and save it, as shown in Figure 5-75.

Device

Security > Trusted CA Lists

Certificate and CA Configuration

Trusted CA List Profile Properties

Profile Name: DS8000

Back

Trusted Certificate Authority List

Trusted CAs:

Local Certificate Authorities: [None]

CA Certificates: [None]

Available CAs:

Local Certificate Authorities: [None]

CA Certificates: DS8000_GEN2_root_cert

<-- Add

Remove -->

Save Cancel

Device

Security > Trusted CA Lists

Certificate and CA Configuration

Trusted CA List Profile Properties

Profile Name: DS8000

Back

Trusted Certificate Authority List

Trusted CAs:

Local Certificate Authorities: [None]

CA Certificates: DS8000_GEN2_root_cert

Available CAs:

Local Certificate Authorities: [None]

CA Certificates: [None]

<-- Add

Remove -->

Save Cancel

Figure 5-75 Adding the DS8000 root CA to the list of trusted CAs

Adding a KMIP device to Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure

Now, a KMIP Cryptographic Key Server protocol must be configured in your environment to serve the keys to the DS8000. Complete the following steps:

1. Still logged in to the Gemalto SafeNet KS GUI, click **Device** → **Key Server** and click **Add** to create a protocol, as shown in Figure 5-76. One NAE-XML protocol is preconfigured, which can be ignored.

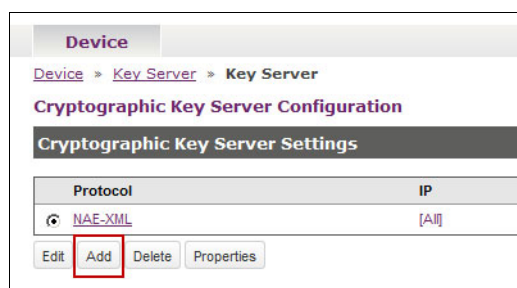


Figure 5-76 Add KMIP protocol

2. Figure 5-77 shows the settings for the KMIP protocol that must be selected:
 - Protocol: KMIP.
 - IP: All.
 - Port: 5696. (This port is the default KMIP port for the DS8000.)
 - Use SSL: Select it.
 - Server Certificate: Select the Servers SSL certificate that was created in “Creating a self-signed SSL server certificate” on page 118.

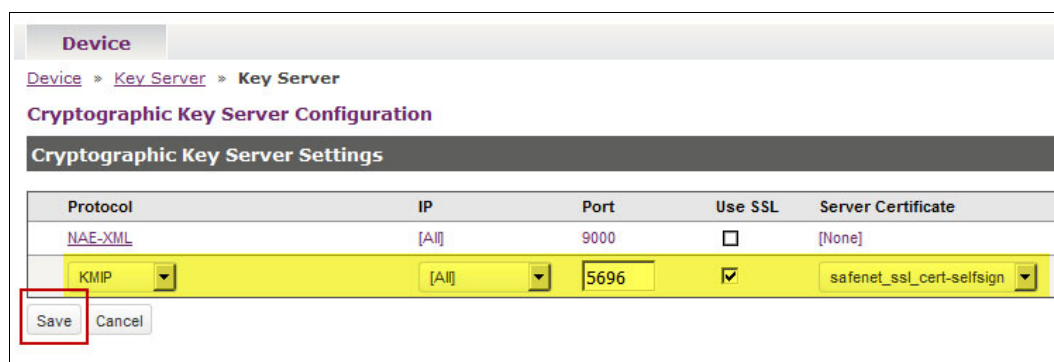


Figure 5-77 Defining the KMIP protocol settings

3. The KMIP protocol appears in the list, as shown in Figure 5-78. Select it and click **Properties**.

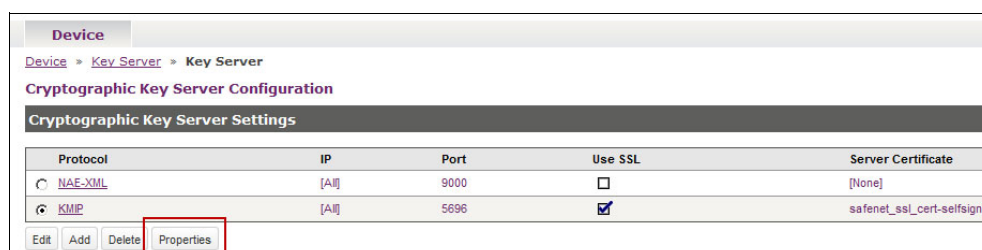


Figure 5-78 KMIP protocol created

4. In the KMIP Protocol properties, click **Edit** in the Authentication Settings area, as shown in Figure 5-79.

Authentication Settings	
Password Authentication:	Not Used
Client Certificate Authentication:	Not used
Trusted CA List Profile:	[None]
Username Field in Client Certificate:	[None]
Require Client Certificate to Contain Source IP:	<input type="checkbox"/>

Edit

Figure 5-79 KMIP Authentication Settings window

5. The Authentication Settings must be modified as follows:
- Password Authentication: “Not Used”.
 - Client Certificate Authentication:
 - If you have at least one DS8000 that was upgraded from Release 8.0 to release 8.1 in your encryption environment, select **Used for SSL session only**. DS8000 Release 8.0 systems do not have a UID field in the Gen 2 certificate.
 - If you have one or more DS8000 Storage Systems that were delivered with Release 8.1 or later, select **Used for SSL session and username (most secure)**. DS8000 Release 8.1 and later systems from manufacturing do have a UID field in the Gen 2 certificate. However, it is possible to use “Used for SSL session only”.
 - Trusted CA List Profile: Select the previously created Trusted CA List Profile.
 - Username Field in Client Certificate: Select **UID (User ID)** for DS8000 Storage Systems that were upgraded from Release 8.0 to Release 8.1.
 - Require Client Certificate to Contain Source IP: Do not select it.

6. A full configured KMIP profile is shown in Figure 5-80. Click **Save** when you are ready.

Device

Device » Key Server » Key Server

Cryptographic Key Server Configuration


Cryptographic Key Server Properties

Protocol:	KMIP
IP:	[All]
Port:	5696
Use SSL:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server Certificate:	safenet_ssl_cert-selfsign
Connection Timeout (sec):	3600
Allow Key and Policy Configuration Operations:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Allow Key Export:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

EditBack

Authentication Settings

Password Authentication:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Not Used <input type="radio"/> Optional <input type="radio"/> Required (most secure)
Client Certificate Authentication:	<input type="radio"/> Not used <input type="radio"/> Used for SSL session only <input checked="" type="radio"/> Used for SSL session and username (most secure)
Trusted CA List Profile:	DS8000
Username Field in Client Certificate:	UID (User ID)
Require Client Certificate to Contain Source IP:	<input type="checkbox"/>

 **Warning:** Editing a key server setting will reset all of its existing connections

SaveCancel

Figure 5-80 Configured KMIP profile

Adding a user to a key server based on the UID from the Gen 2 certificate

The final step is to create a user account for each DS8000 Release 8.1 or later in your environment that is encrypted.

Complete the following steps:

1. Still logged in to the Gemalto SafeNet KS GUI, click **Security** → **Local Authentication** → **Local Users & Groups** and click **Add** to add a user, as shown in Figure 5-81.

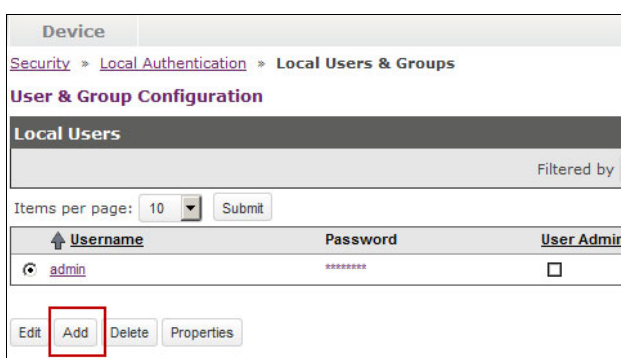


Figure 5-81 Adding a DS8000 user

2. The UID equals the UID that was extracted from the DS8000 Gen 2 certificate in “Extract the **UID** field from this certificate.” on page 112. In Figure 5-82, the UID is DS8K-2107-75LR811. Add as many different UIDs as you require in your environment and click **Save**. Complete the following fields:
 - Password: The password can be anything. The password is not supported by the DS8000.
 - User Administration Permission: Do not check it.
 - Change Password Permission: Do not check it.

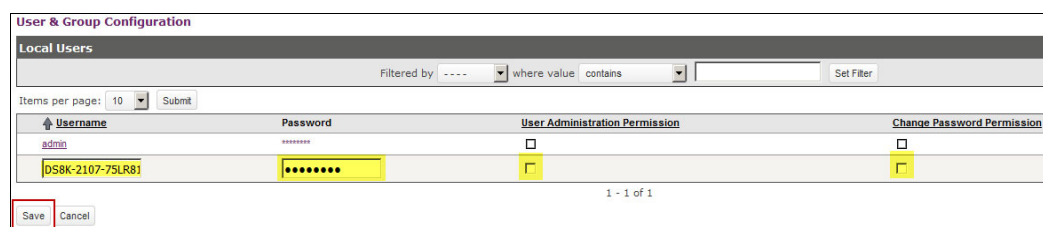


Figure 5-82 User details

The Gemalto SafeNet KS server is now ready to serve keys to the DS8000.

5.3.4 Configuring Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager

The Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager (DSM) is another third-party external key manager that is supported for DS8000 DAR encryption and TCT encryption to cloud storage.

For more information, see [Vormetric Data Security Manager](#).

Like IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, Thales Vormetric DSM provides a web browser-based GUI.

This section describes the procedure to configure Thales Vormetric DSM to serve keys to an encryption-enabled DS8000. The instructions are based on the assumption that the DSM servers are installed, clustered, and ready for configuration. The system clocks of all key servers must be synchronized.

Prerequisites

Before starting the Thales Vormetric DSM Configuration, make sure to satisfy the following prerequisites:

- ▶ Make sure that you configure two or more independent key servers in a cluster, and the system clocks on the servers are synchronized.
- ▶ Configure the RK (see “Creating the recovery key” on page 160).
- ▶ Client Certificate Authentication for SSL Session and UID only: Export the Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate to the client computer.

Note: DS8000 Release 8.1 and later features a Gen 2 certificate from manufacturing by default. DS8900F R9 features a Gen 2+ certificate that is active and a Gen 3 certificate that is not active.

If you need to use a CA-signed certificate, follow the instructions in 5.3.5, “Importing the CA certificate chain into Vormetric DSM” on page 135. This action must be completed *before* installing the new certificate on the DS8000.

Preparation steps

Note: Illustrations in this section are shown courtesy of Thales DIS CPL US, Inc.

Start the Thales Vormetric DSM Management console from a web browser and provide your login and password credentials. In our example in Figure 5-83, we used the ds8000 UID, which is defined as a DSM administrator.

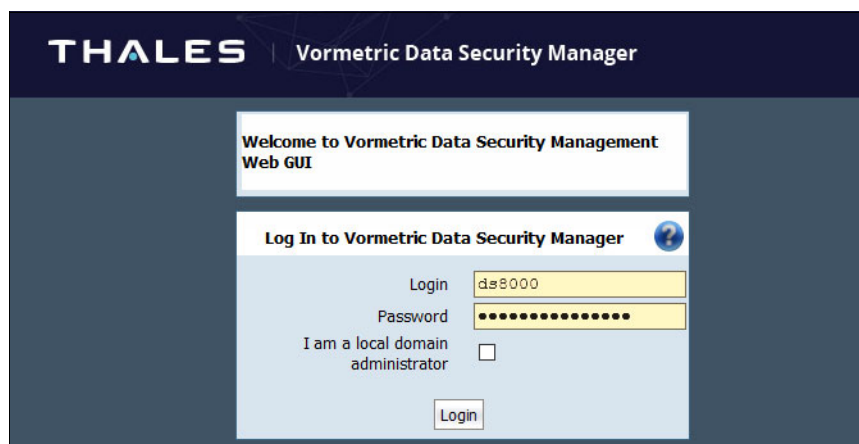


Figure 5-83 Log on to the Thales Vormetric Data Security Manager Management GUI

You must have a valid license to configure hosts and register agents with a DSM. To register and configure a DS8000 system, install a license file that contains KMIP agents. Licenses are provided by the Thales Vormetric DSM customer support and are uploaded to the DSM (see your DSM documentation on how to obtain a license file).

Complete the following steps:

1. Upload a license file:
 - a. Log on to a DSM HA node as a System/All administrator (other administrator types can view the license in the Management Console, but they cannot upload a license file. In our example, we defined an administrator that is named ds8000 with the All type.
 - b. Get a license file from Customer Support.
 - c. Select **System** → **License** in the menu bar. The License window opens, as shown in Figure 5-84.

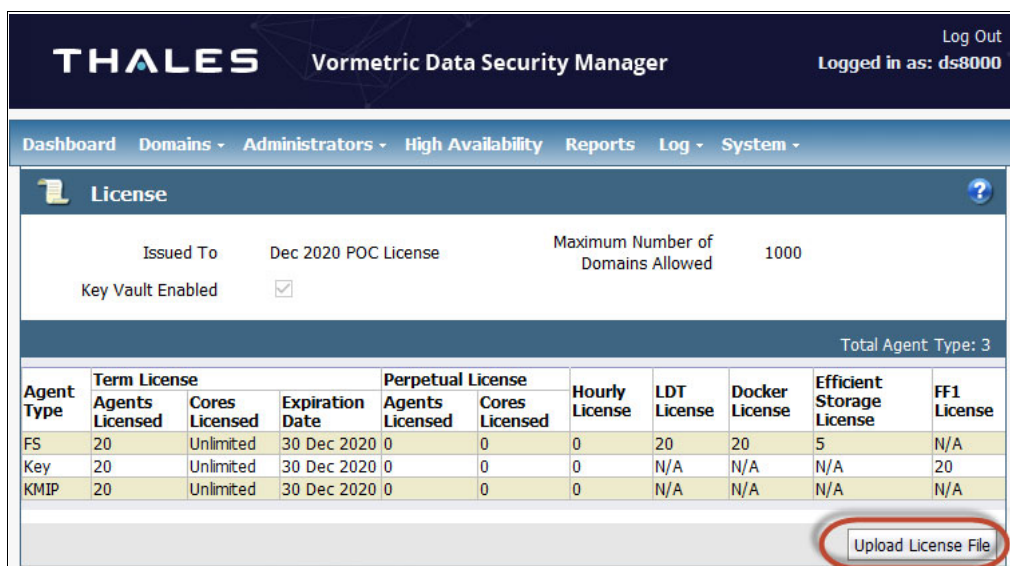


Figure 5-84 Installing system licenses

- d. Click **Upload License File**. The Upload License File window opens.
If you are in a domain, **Upload License File** is disabled. Click **Domain** → **Exit Domain** instead.
- e. In the **License File** dialog box, click **Browse** to find and select the license file, as shown in Figure 5-85.

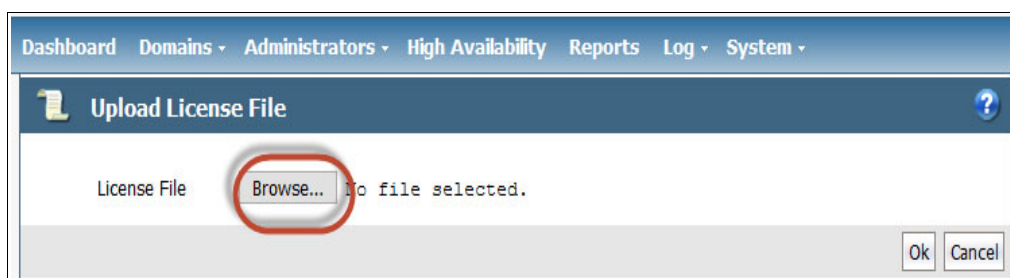


Figure 5-85 Browsing and selecting the license file

- f. Click **OK**.

2. Create a domain and enable KMIP:

- a. Select **Domain** → **Manage Domains** from the menu bar. The Manage Domains window opens, as shown in Figure 5-86.

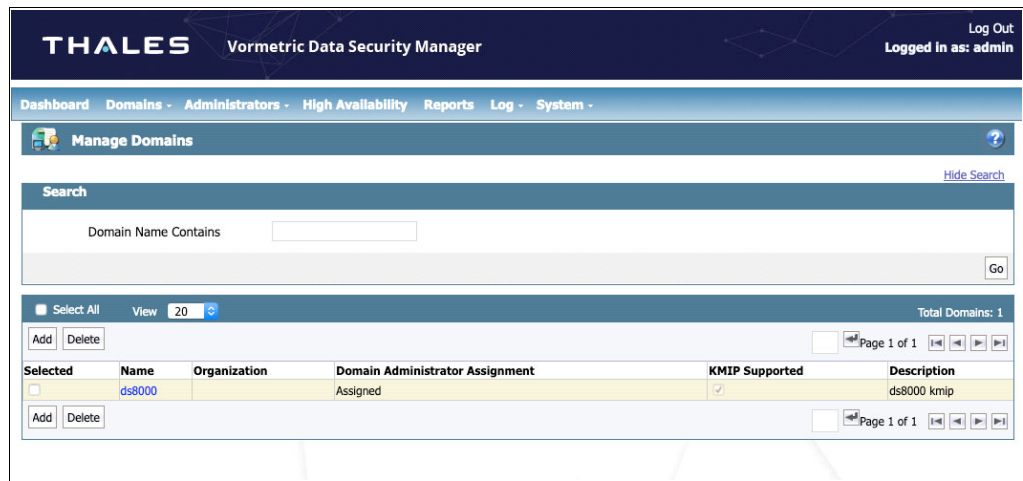


Figure 5-86 Managing and creating domains

- b. Click **Add** to open the Add Domains window. In the **General** tab, complete the details for the domain. Select **Enable KMIP**. Click Apply to create the domain, as shown in Figure 5-87.

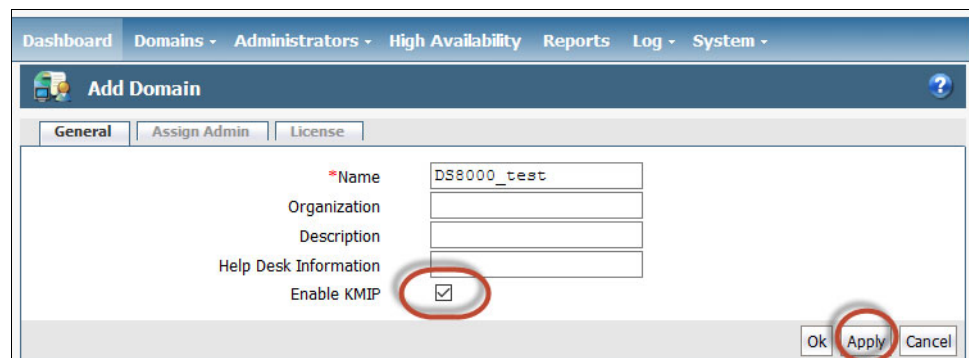


Figure 5-87 Add Domain window

- c. In the **Assign Admin** tab, select the administrator account that you created, and then click **Apply**, as shown in Figure 5-88.

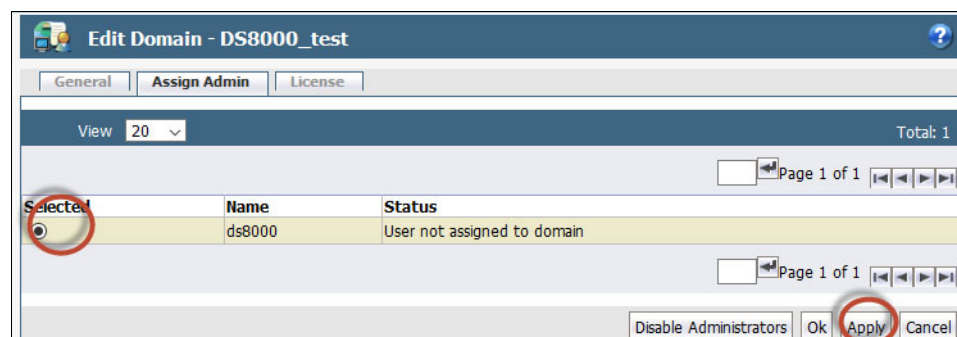


Figure 5-88 Assigning an administrator to the new domain

- d. In the **License** tab, complete the KMIP Agent information, and then click **OK** to return to the Manage Domain window.

Configuration steps

To configure a DS8000 storage system in Thales Vormetric DSM, log on to the DSM console as the Security administrator with Host role permissions, a Domain and Security administrator, or All administrator.

Complete the following steps:

1. Select **Domain** → **Switch Domains** from the menu bar to switch to the domain where you add the host, as shown in Figure 5-89.

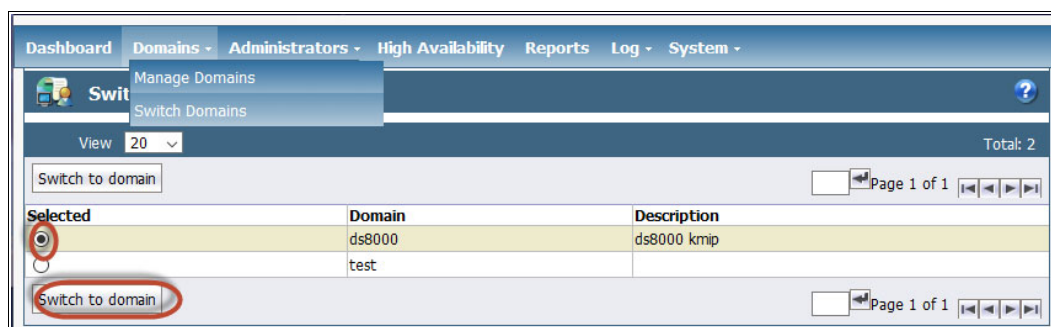


Figure 5-89 Switch Domain option

Make your selection, and then click **Switch to domain**.

2. Select **Hosts** → **Hosts** in the menu bar. The Hosts window opens, as shown in Figure 5-90.

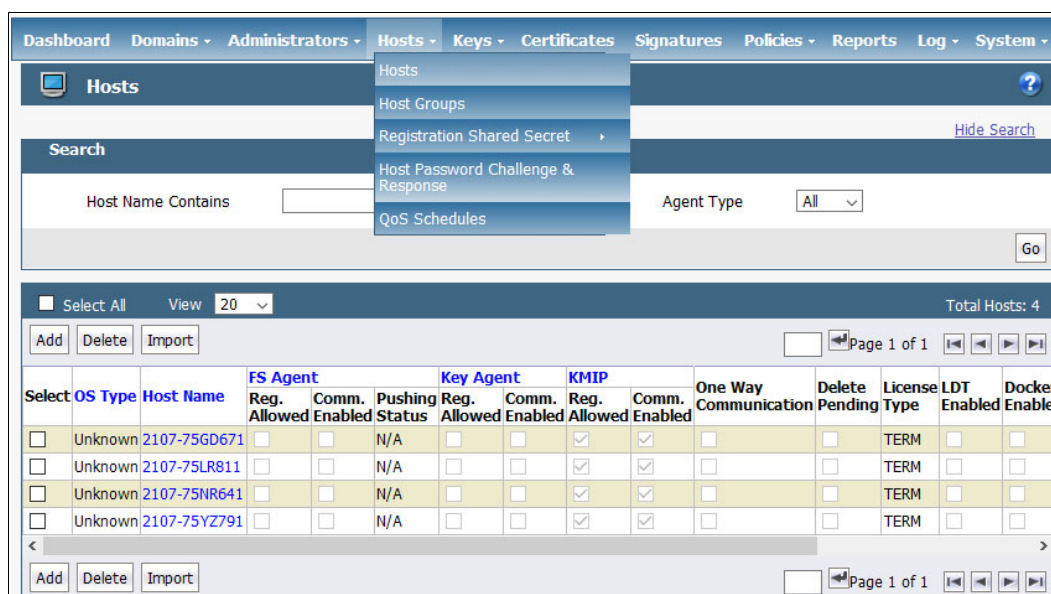


Figure 5-90 Hosts window

- Click **Add** to add a host. The Add Host window opens, as shown in Figure 5-91.

Figure 5-91 Add Host window

In the Add Host window, complete the details for the host as follows:

- Hostname

The hostname must match the CN field of the client certificate for the storage system. You can get the CN field by using the DS8000 DS CLI **showkeygrp** command, as shown in Example 5-7.

Example 5-7 Retrieving the CN from the DS8000 certificate

```
dscli> showkeygrp -certificate 1
Date/Time: December 16, 2020 6:41:16 PM MST IBM DS CLI Version: 7.9.20.181
DS: IBM.2107-75NR641
ID                1
certificate       GEN2
version          3
serial number    00:fd:1b:32:f1:35:b3:7c:74
issuer           0=ibmDisk,C=US
not valid before 06/26/2019 20:45:19 MST
not valid after  08/11/2032 17:36:55 MST
subject          CN=2107-75NR641,0=ibmDisk,C=US,uid=DS8K-2107-75NR641
WWNN             OTHERNAME=50:05:07:63:06:FF:C5:DD
size             2048
..
..
```

- Password Creation Method: Select **Generate**.
- License Type: Select **TERM** and **KMIP**.
- Under **Agent Information**, select **Communication Enabled**.

- Click **OK**. You are returned to the Hosts window.

- Now, import the DS8000 public certificate. From the Host window, click the hostname for the storage system, which opens the Edit Host window, as shown in Figure 5-92.

Edit Host - 2107-75NR641

General | GuardPoints | Sharing | Host Settings | FS Agent Log | Key Agent Log | Member

Host Information

Name: 2107-75NR641 Description:

OS Type: Unknown

FS Communication Port:

License Type:

FS Agent Locked: ☐

Support Challenge & Response: ☐

Password Creation Method:

Docker: ☐

Efficient Storage: ☐

Secure Start GuardPoint: ☐

System Locked: ☐

FS Agent One Way Communication: ☐

Regenerate Password: ☐

Live Data Transformation: ☐

Supported Encryption Mode: Offline

Encryption Key Protection: ☐

Cloud Object Storage: Disabled

Agent Information

Agent	Version	Certificate Fingerprint	Registration Allowed	Communication Enabled
FS			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Key			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
KMIP			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Import KMIP Cert | Ok | Apply | Cancel

Figure 5-92 Edit Host window

- Click **Import KMIP Cert** to import the DS8000 public certificate. The Import KMIP Client Certificate dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 5-93.

Dashboard | Domains | Administrators | Hosts | Keys | Certificates | Signatures | Policies | Reports | Log | System

Import KMIP Client Certificate ?

KMIP Client Certificate No file selected.

Ok Cancel

Figure 5-93 Browsing for the DS8000 KMIP communication certificate

- Click **Browse** to retrieve the file containing the DS8000 public communication certificate. Usually, you download the certificate as described in “Prerequisites” on page 129. You can also retrieve it by running the `showkeygrp -certificate 1` command, as shown in Example 5-7 on page 133.

8. Click **OK**. You return to the Edit Host window, which now shows the Certificate Fingerprint, as shown in Figure 5-94. The configuration is now complete.

Dashboard Domains Administrators Hosts Keys Certificates Signatures Policies Reports Log System

Edit Host - 2107-75NR641

Successfully uploaded client certificate issued by trusted CA.

General GuardPoints Sharing Host Settings FS Agent Log Key Agent Log Member

Host Information

Name: 2107-75NR641 Description:

OS Type: Unknown

FS Communication Port: 7024

License Type: TERM

FS Agent Locked: ☐

Support Challenge & Response: ☐

Password Creation Method: Generate

Docker: ☐

Efficient Storage: ☐

Secure Start GuardPoint: ☐

System Locked: ☐

FS Agent One Way Communication: ☐

Regenerate Password: ☐

Live Data Transformation: ☐

Supported Encryption Mode: Offline

Encryption Key Protection: ☐

Cloud Object Storage: Disabled

Agent Information

Agent	Version	Certificate Fingerprint	Registration Allowed	Communication Enabled
FS			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Key			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
KMIP	N/A	51:D2:EF:3D:54:01:11:0C:D4:45:BD:11:25:F6:D8:1B:12:5E:40:6C	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Import KMIP Cert Ok Apply Cancel

Figure 5-94 Edit Host

5.3.5 Importing the CA certificate chain into Vormetric DSM

This step is required for DSM to trust a Customer Defined Certificate that is installed on the DS8000. This process must be done first; that is, *before* the new certificate is installed on the DS8000.

Complete the following steps:

1. Log in to Vormetric DSM as administrator and Select **System** → **KMIP Trusted CA Certificates** (see Figure 5-95).

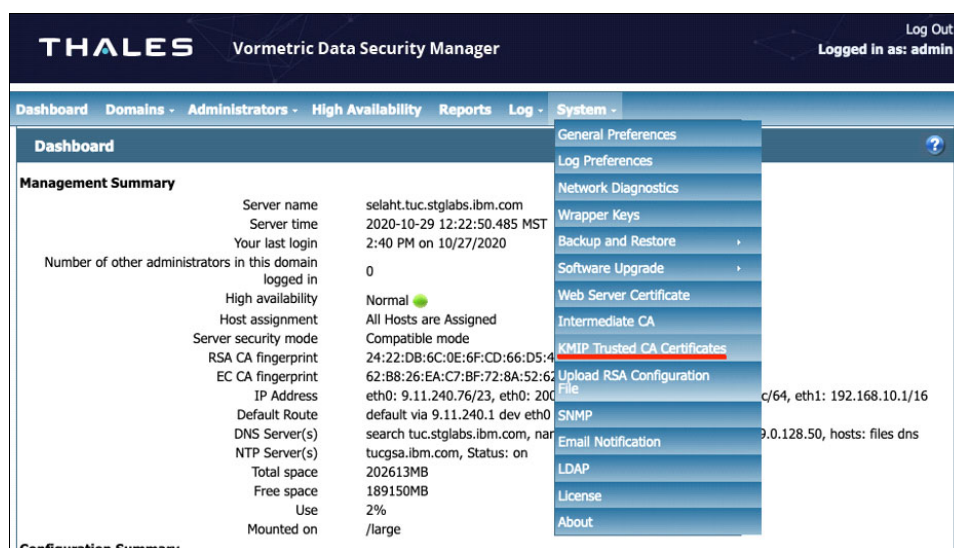


Figure 5-95 Selecting KMIP Trusted CA Certificates

2. Browse for the full certificate chain in the CA File Name field and then click **Import/Update Certificate** (see Figure 5-96). The certificates in the certificate chain are displayed in Figure 5-96.

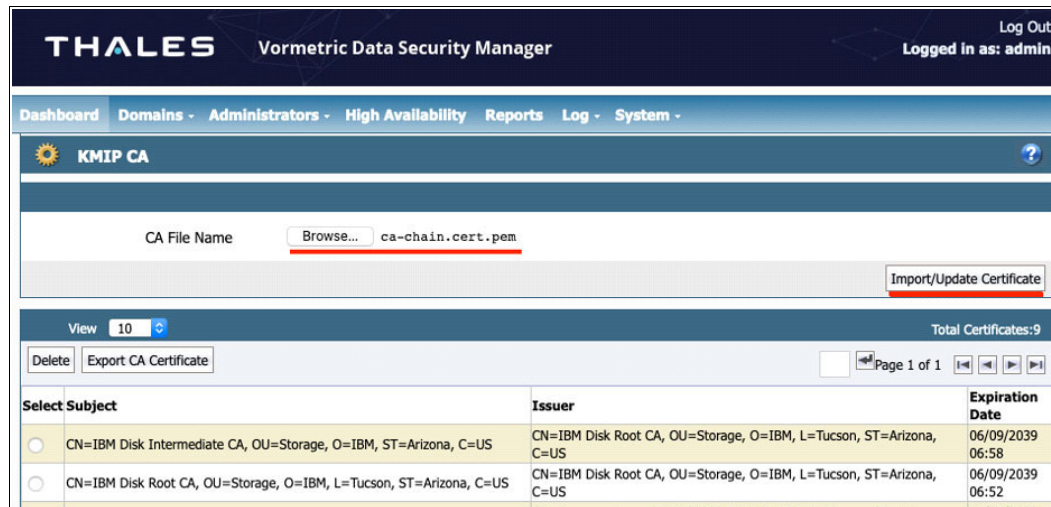
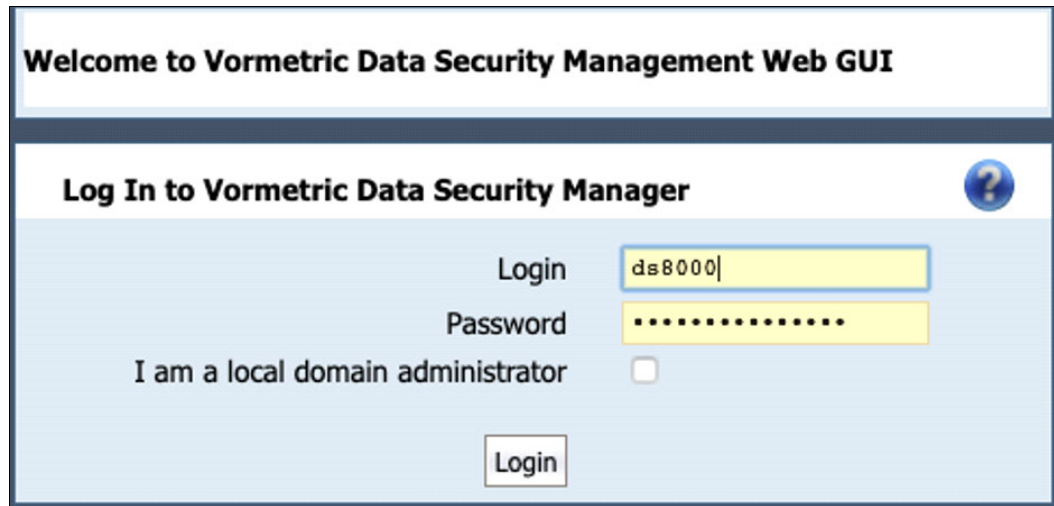


Figure 5-96 Browsing the certificate chain

3. Log in to DSM as DS8000 device administrator (see Figure 5-97).



Welcome to Vormetric Data Security Management Web GUI

Log In to Vormetric Data Security Manager

Login: ds8000

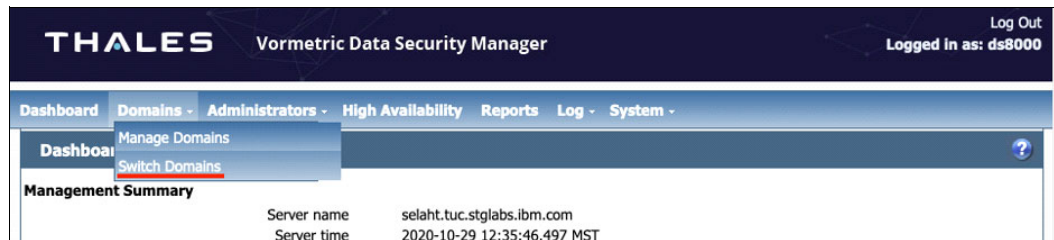
Password:

☐ I am a local domain administrator

Login

Figure 5-97 Logging on as the DS8000 administrator

4. Select **Domains** → **Switch Domains** (see Figure 5-98).



THALES Vormetric Data Security Manager

Log Out Logged in as: ds8000

Dashboard Domains Administrators High Availability Reports Log System

Manage Domains

Switch Domains

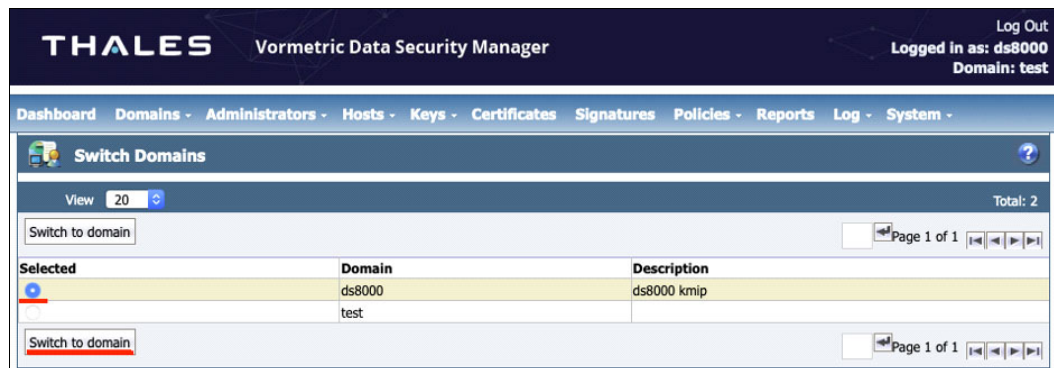
Management Summary

Server name: selaht.tuc.stglabs.ibm.com

Server time: 2020-10-29 12:35:46.497 MST

Figure 5-98 Switch Domains

5. Select the **ds8000** row and click **Switch to domain** (see Figure 5-99).



THALES Vormetric Data Security Manager

Log Out Logged in as: ds8000 Domain: test

Dashboard Domains Administrators Hosts Keys Certificates Signatures Policies Reports Log System

Switch Domains

View: 20 Total: 2

Switch to domain

Selected	Domain	Description
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	ds8000	ds8000 kmip
<input type="radio"/>	test	

Switch to domain

Page 1 of 1

Figure 5-99 Confirming Switch to domain

6. Select **Hosts** → **Hosts** (see Figure 5-99 on page 137).

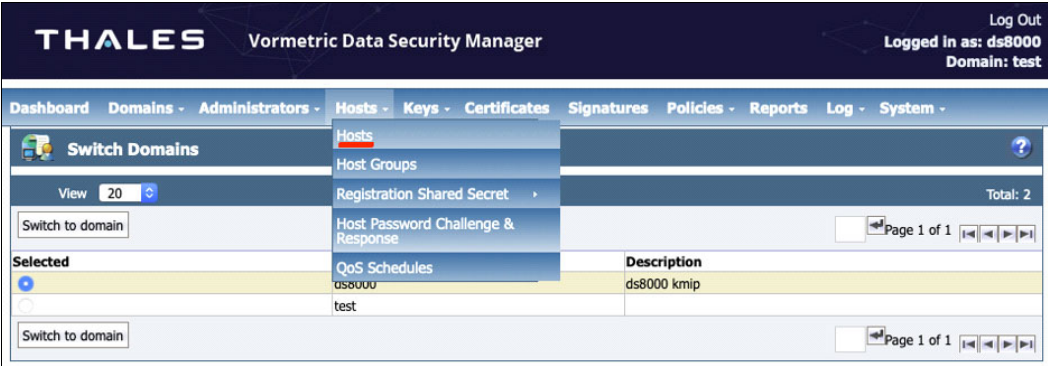


Figure 5-100 Selecting Hosts

7. Select the Host Name for which you want to update the certificate (see Figure 5-101).

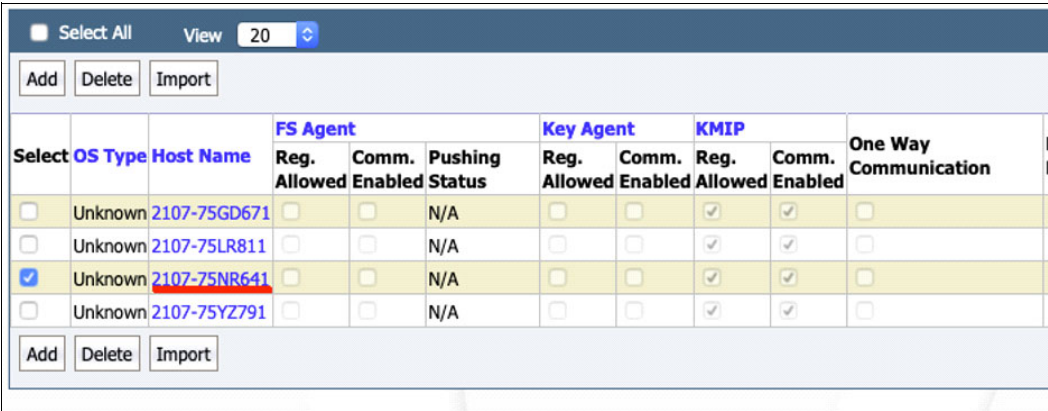


Figure 5-101 Confirming the host selection

- Click **Import KMIP Cert** (see Figure 5-102).

Edit Host - 2107-75NR641

General | GuardPoints | Sharing | Host Settings | FS Agent Log | Key Agent Log | Member

Host Information

Name: 2107-75NR641 | Description: da6

OS Type: Unknown

FS Communication Port: 7024

License Type: TERM

FS Agent Locked: ☐

Support Challenge & Response: ☐

Password Creation Method: Generate

Docker: ☐

Efficient Storage: ☐

Secure Start GuardPoint: ☐

System Locked: ☐

FS Agent One Way Communication: ☐

Regenerate Password: ☐

Live Data Transformation: ☐

Supported Encryption Mode: Offline

Encryption Key Protection: ☐

Cloud Object Storage: Disabled

Agent Information

Agent	Version	Certificate Fingerprint	Registration Allowed	Communication Enabled
FS			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Key			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
KMIP	N/A	51:D2:EF:3D:54:01:11:0C:D4:45:BD:11:25:F6:D8:1B:12:5E:40:6C	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Import KMIP Cert | Ok | Apply | Cancel

Figure 5-102 Importing the DS8000 KMIP Certificate

- Click **Browse** and select a certificate file, and then select **OK** (see Figure 5-103).

THALES Vormetric Data Security Manager

Log Out | Logged in as: ds8000 | Domain: ds8000

Dashboard | Domains | Administrators | Hosts | Keys | Certificates | Signatures | Policies | Reports | Log | System

Import KMIP Client Certificate

KMIP Client Certificate | Browse... | demo.crt

Ok | Cancel

Figure 5-103 Selecting a certificate file

- The message that is shown in Figure 5-104 is displayed if the process is successful.

THALES Vormetric Data Security Manager

Dashboard | Domains | Administrators | Hosts | Keys | Certificates | Signatures

Edit Host - 2107-75NR641

• Successfully uploaded client certificate issued by trusted CA.

Figure 5-104 Certificate import completed message

5.3.6 Configuring Thales CipherTrust Manager

Thales CipherTrust Manager is a third-party centralized key management platform like IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager that is fully supported by DS8000 Release 9.2 and later. Thales CipherTrust Manager was formerly known as Next Generation KS.

Thales CipherTrust Manager is available as a hardware or virtual software appliance.

The examples that follow are from Version 2.0, which supports KMIP 1.1 and authentication by using a local user or LDAP/Active Directory authentication.

Like IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, Thales CipherTrust Manager provides a web browser-based GUI.

Thales CipherTrust Manager can manage up to 1,000,000 keys and 1,000 devices. It supports the HSM to store the master key.

For more information about Thales CipherTrust Manager, see [CipherTrust Manager](#).

This section describes the procedure to configure Thales CipherTrust Manager to serve keys to an encryption-enabled DS8000. The instructions are based on the assumption that the Thales CipherTrust Manager servers are installed, clustered, and ready for configuration. The system clocks of all key servers must be synchronized.

Preparation

When using Thales CipherTrust Manager KMIP Compatible Key Servers, KMIP must be configured with the necessary client certificate authentication policy. The following policies are supported by the DS8000 R9.2:

- ▶ Client Certificate Authentication that is used for an SSL session only
- ▶ Client Certificate Authentication for SSL Session and UID

A UID is added to the Gen 2 and Gen 3 certificate in the DS8000 by manufacturing, which connects the DS8000 to the KMIP capable key server by using Client Certificate Authentication for SSL Session and UID. It is the more secure way.

Both methods are supported and covered in this paper.

Prerequisites

Before starting the Thales CipherTrust Manager Configuration, make sure to satisfy the following prerequisites:

- ▶ Two independent key servers are configured in a cluster.
- ▶ The RK is configured (see “Creating the recovery key” on page 160).
- ▶ The root certificate for the DS8000 is downloaded to the client computer from IBM Documentation for the DS8000, as described in 5.9, “Migrating certificates” on page 196.
- ▶ Client Certificate Authentication for SSL Session and UID *only*: The Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate is exported to the client computer to extract the UID. For more information about how to export it and how to extract the UID from it, see “Exporting and using DS8000 Encryption Communication Certificate (Gen 2)” on page 112.

Note: DS8000 Release 8.1 and later features a Gen 2 certificate from manufacturing by default. DS8000 R9.1 and later features a Gen 2+ certificate that is active and a Gen 3 certificate that is not active.

Configuration

Note: Illustrations in this section are shown courtesy of Thales DIS CPL US, Inc.

Multi-layer Certificate Chain of Trust: Establishing a successful TLS handshake with a DS8000 requires presenting the entire certificate chain of trust to the DS8000. This process includes both the root and intermediate CA certificates when using the factory-supplied certificates. If a customer-defined certificate is used, you must add the entire CA chain of certificates.

Complete the following steps to configure the KMIP server immediately after installation (SSL is mandatory for KMIP and must be configured):

1. Import and install the DS8000 root and intermediate CA certificates.
2. Create a registration token.
3. Configure the KMIP interface.
4. Obtain the KMIP public certificate to use as a trust anchor when creating the key server on the DS8000.
5. Create DS8000 users and add them to the appropriate groups.
6. Restart the KMIP System service.

Importing and installing the DS8000 root and intermediate CA certificates

For each certificate, complete the following steps:

1. On the Thales CipherTrust Manager home page, click **Keys & Access Management** (see Figure 5-105).

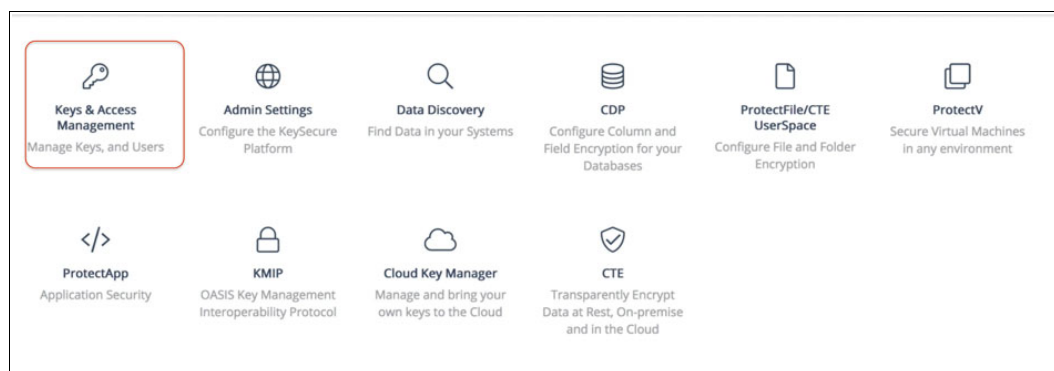


Figure 5-105 Select Keys & Access Management option

2. Add the DS8000 root and intermediate CA certificates as external CAs, as shown in Figure 5-106 on page 142:
 - a. Click **CA** to open the Certificate Authorities window.
 - b. Expand **Upload External Certificate**.
 - c. Paste the PEM formatted text from a DS8000 certificate into the text box and click **Upload**.
 - d. Repeat these steps for each DS8000 root and intermediate CA certificate.

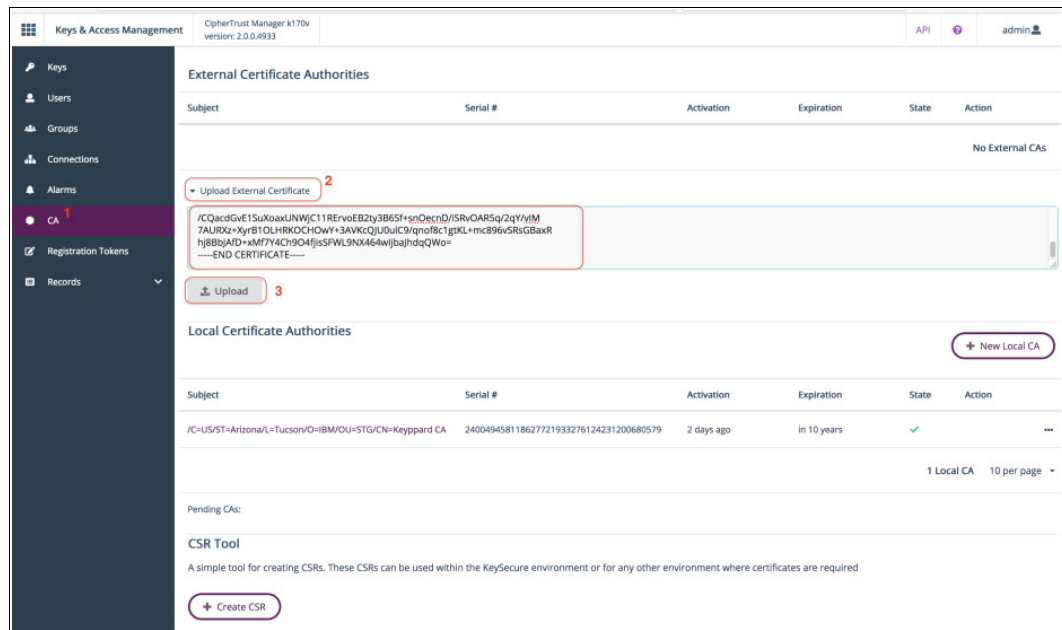


Figure 5-106 Uploading the DS8000 certificate

Creating a registration token

Complete the following steps:

1. On the Thales CipherTrust Manager home page, click **KMIP** (see Figure 5-107).

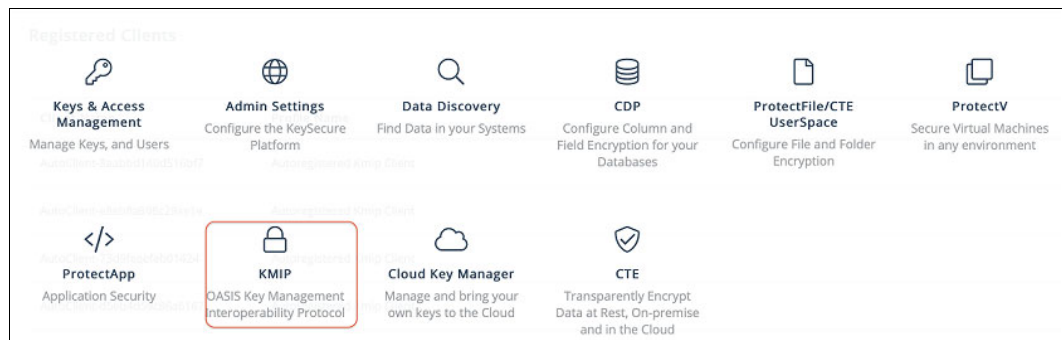


Figure 5-107 Selecting the KMIP option

2. Select **Registration Token** and then **+New Registration Token** (see Figure 5-108).



Figure 5-108 New Registration Token

3. Follow the wizard and copy the token when the wizard completes (see Figure 5-109).

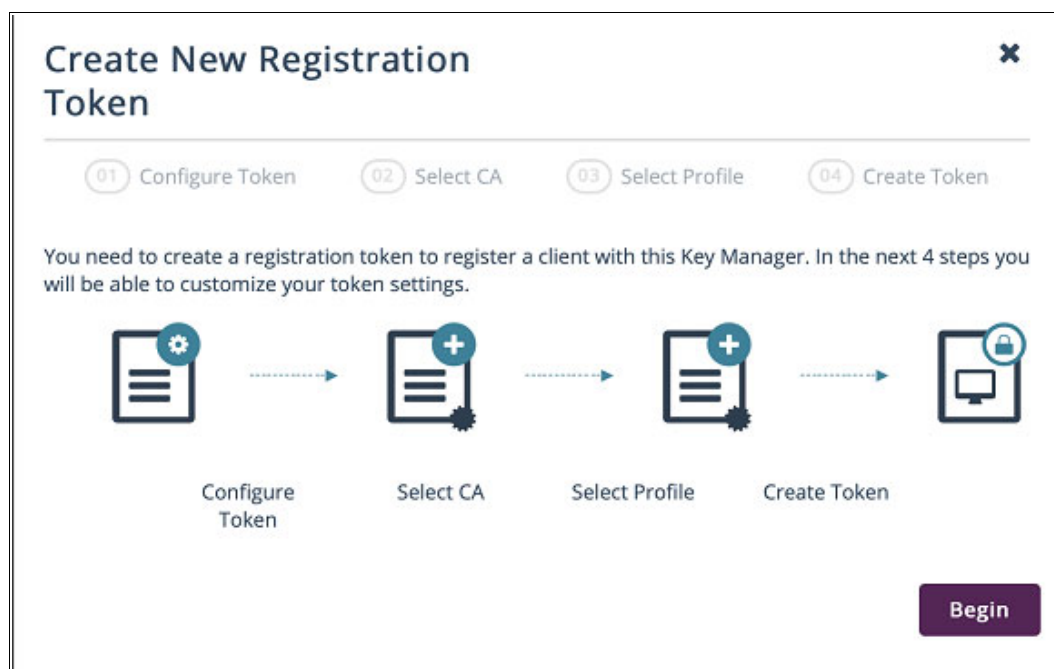


Figure 5-109 Create New Registration Token wizard

Configuring the KMIP interface

Complete the following steps:

1. In the KMIP Interface Configuration window:
 - a. On the Thales CipherTrust Manager home page, click **Admin Settings** (see Figure 5-110).

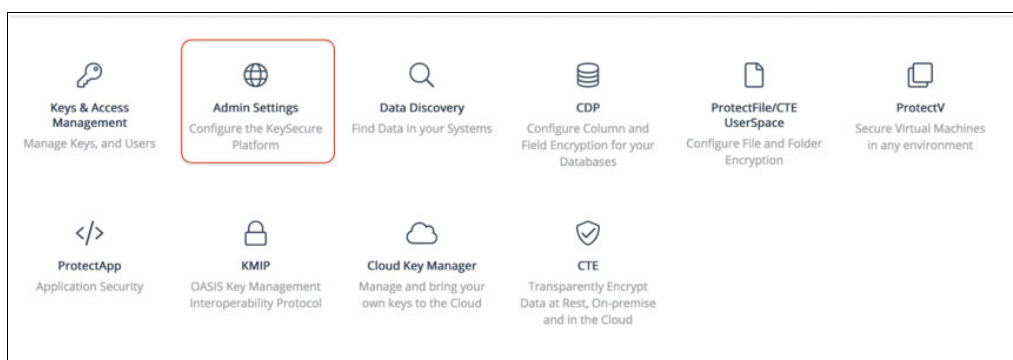


Figure 5-110 Selecting the Admin Settings option

- b. Select **System** → **Interfaces** to open the Interface Configurations window.
- c. Click the ellipsis icon at the upper right of the KMIP Interface Configuration window and select **Edit** (see Figure 5-111 on page 144).

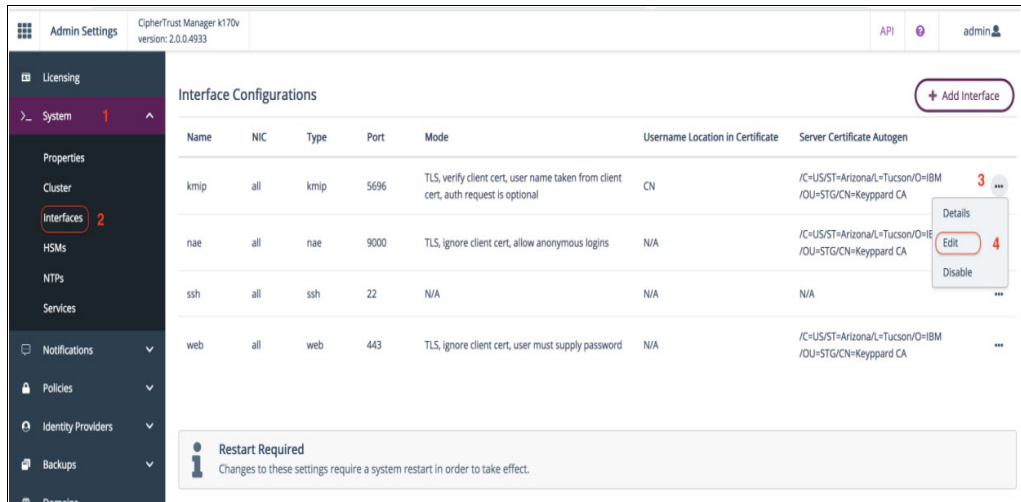


Figure 5-111 Editing the KMIP Interface

- d. Select a DS8000 CA certificate from the External Trusted CAs certificate list or click the + icon to upload a new certificate, as shown in Figure 5-112. Repeat for each DS8000 root and intermediate CA certificate.

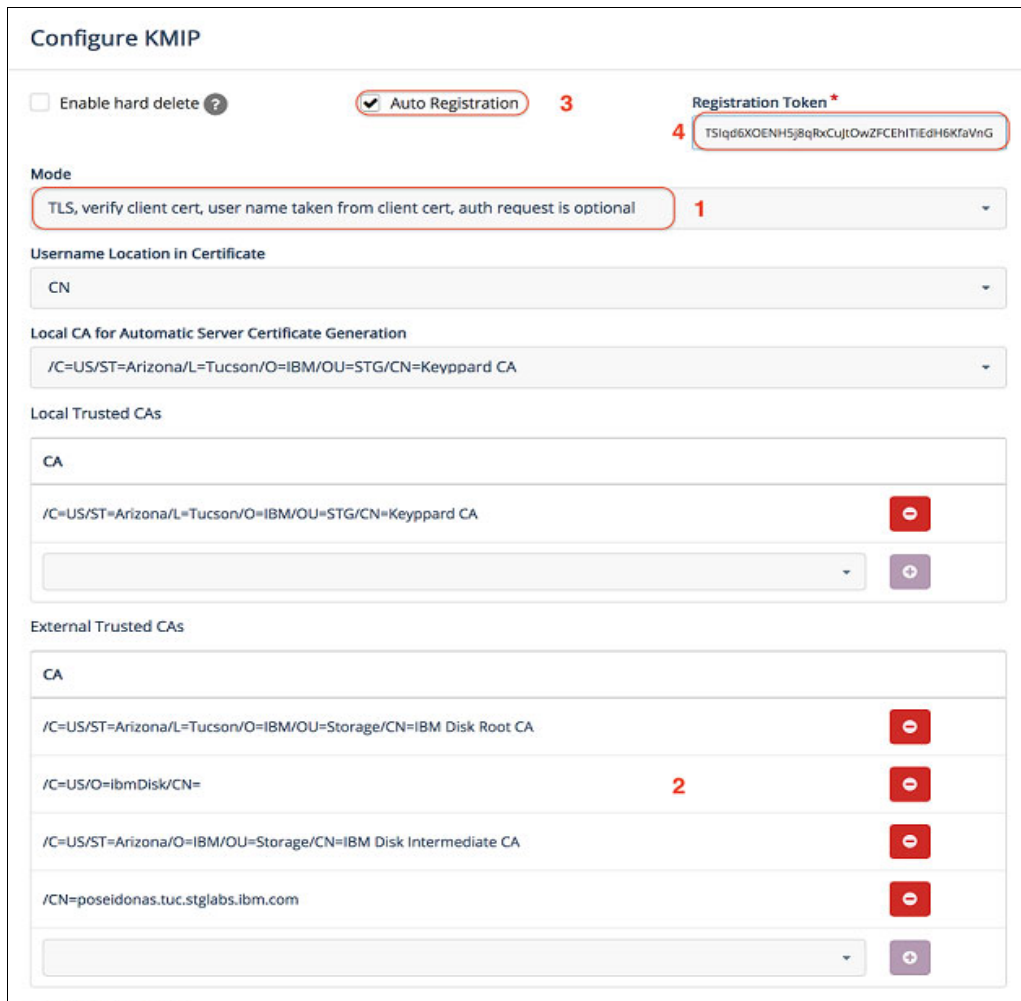


Figure 5-112 Adding a CA Certificate to the KMIP interface

- e. Enable **Auto Registration** and provide a registration token. The token can be created as described in “Creating a registration token” on page 142.
- f. Set **Mode** to one of the following options:
 - **TLS, verify client cert, username taken from client cert, auth request is optional (tls-cert-pw- opt)**

Note: The username must match the value that is created in “Creating DS8000 users and adding them to the appropriate groups”.

- **TLS, verify client cert, allow anonymous logins (tls-pw-opt)** (best practice)
- g. If **Mode** is set to “**TLS, verify client cert, username taken from client cert, auth request is optional**”, Set **Username Location in Certificate** to one of the following options:
 - **CN**
 - **UID**

Obtaining the KMIP public certificate

Complete the following steps:

1. Go to the KMIP Interface Configuration window:
 - a. In the Thales CipherTrust Manager home page, click **Admin Settings** (see Figure 5-113).

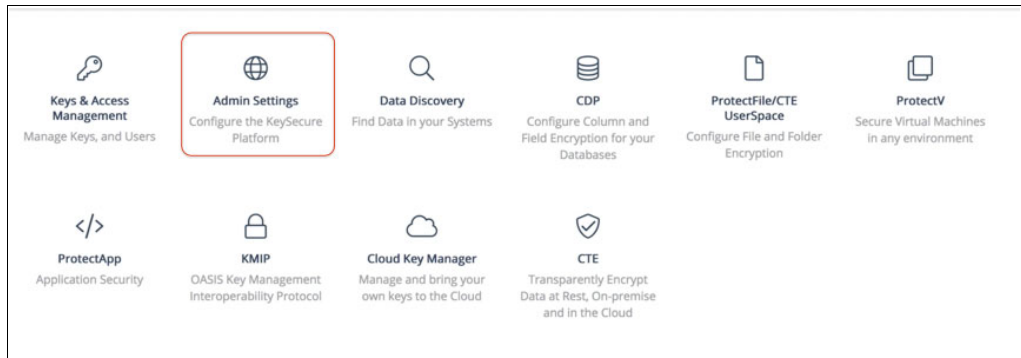


Figure 5-113 Selecting the Admin Setting option

- b. Click the ellipsis icon at the upper right of the KMIP Interface Configuration window, and then select **Edit**.

- c. Click **Download Current Certificate**, as shown Figure 5-114.

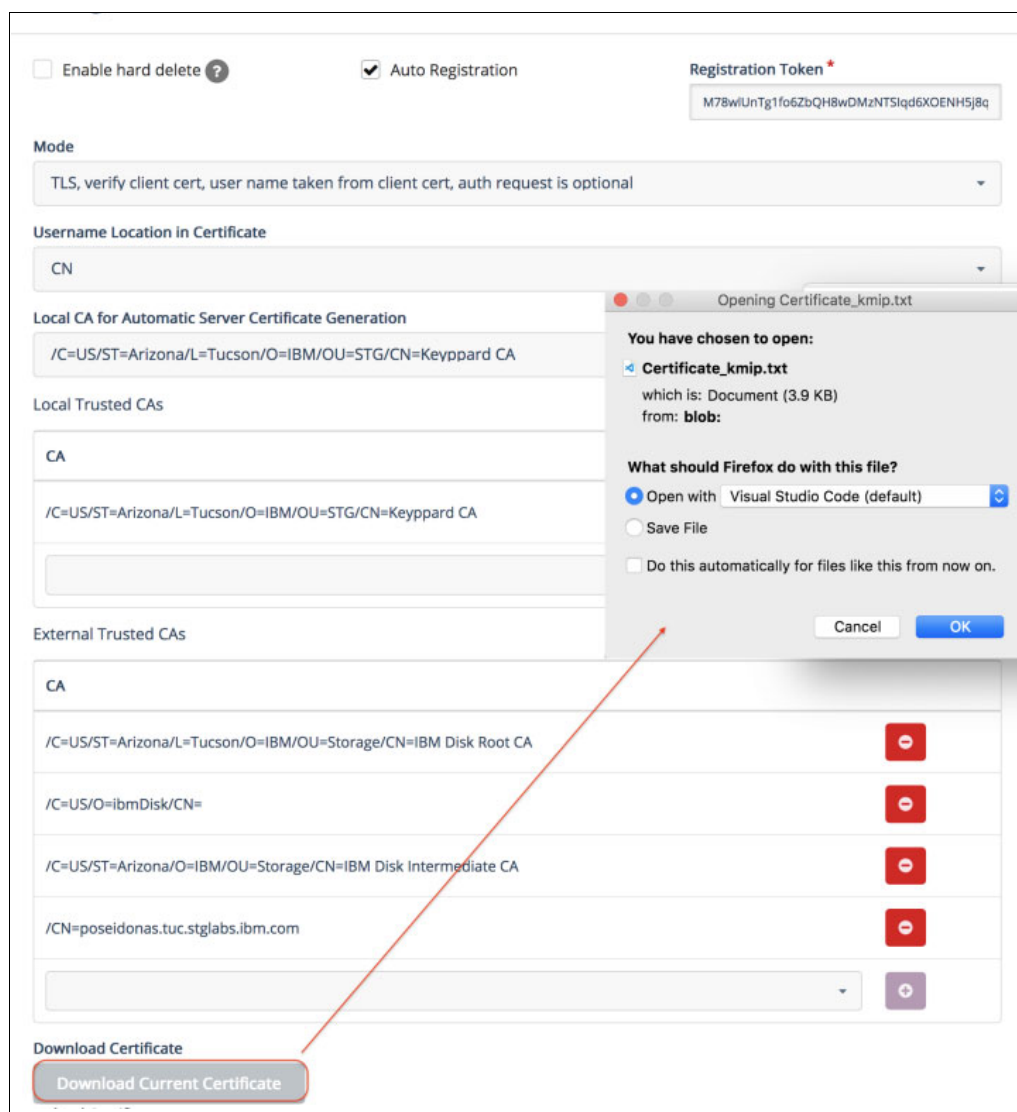


Figure 5-114 Download Current Certificate

- d. Save the file.

This file is used later when creating the key server on the DS8000 system.

Creating DS8000 users and adding them to the appropriate groups

Complete the following steps:

1. Create a user:
 - a. In the Thales CipherTrust Manager home page, click **Key and Access Management**, as shown in Figure 5-115.

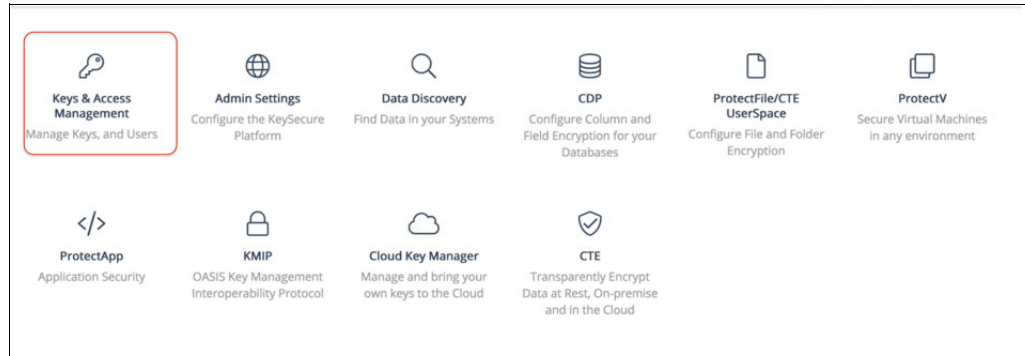


Figure 5-115 Selecting the Key & Access Management option

- b. Click **Users**, and then click **Create New User**, as shown in Figure 5-116.

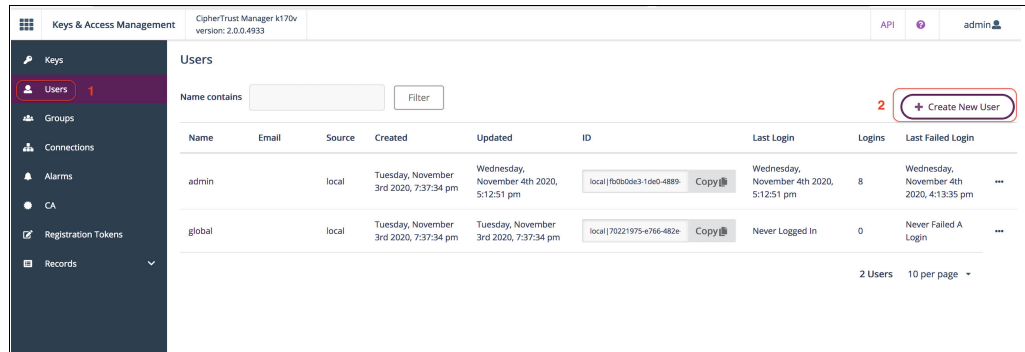
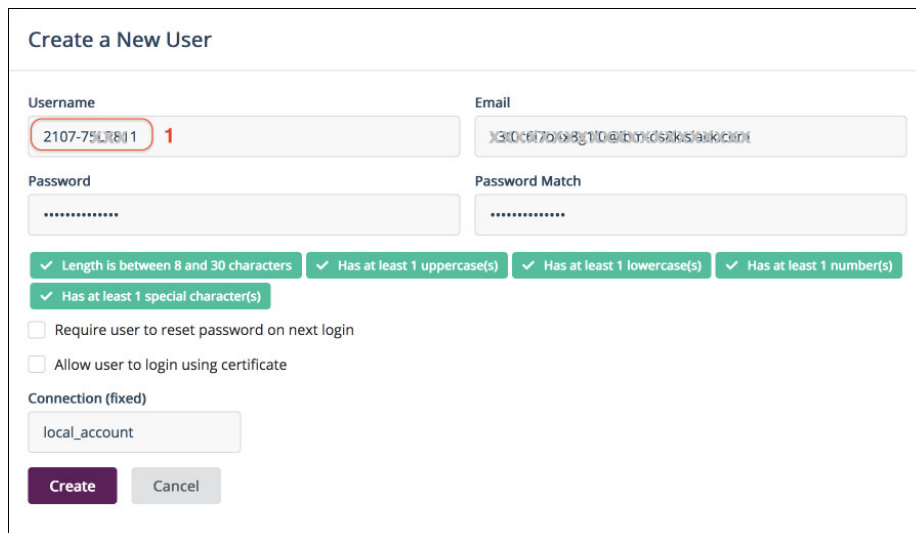


Figure 5-116 Creating a user

Complete the required fields, as shown in Figure 5-117 on page 148.



Create a New User

Username: 2107-75LRB1 1

Email: 2107-75LRB1@ibm-cskslab.com

Password: [Redacted]

Password Match: [Redacted]

☒ Length is between 8 and 30 characters
 ☒ Has at least 1 uppercase(s)
 ☒ Has at least 1 lowercase(s)
 ☒ Has at least 1 number(s)
 ☒ Has at least 1 special character(s)

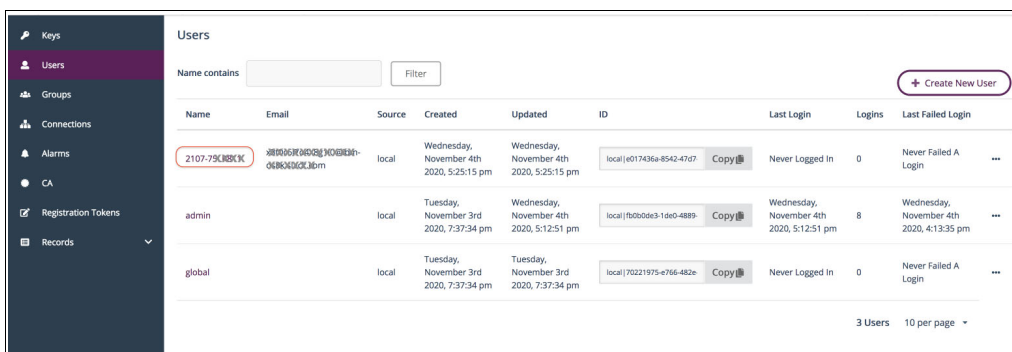
☐ Require user to reset password on next login
☐ Allow user to login using certificate

Connection (fixed): local_account

Create Cancel

Figure 5-117 Create a New User field

- c. Verify the user details in the Users window.
2. Add the user to groups:
 - a. Click the username (see Figure 5-118).



Users

Name contains: [Filter]

+ Create New User

Name	Email	Source	Created	Updated	ID	Last Login	Logins	Last Failed Login
2107-75LRB1	2107-75LRB1@ibm-cskslab.com	local	Wednesday, November 4th 2020, 5:25:15 pm	Wednesday, November 4th 2020, 5:25:15 pm	local e017436e-8542-47d7	Never Logged In	0	Never Failed A Login
admin		local	Tuesday, November 3rd 2020, 7:37:34 pm	Wednesday, November 4th 2020, 5:12:51 pm	local fb0b0663-1d60-4889	Wednesday, November 4th 2020, 5:12:51 pm	8	Wednesday, November 4th 2020, 4:13:35 pm
global		local	Tuesday, November 3rd 2020, 7:37:34 pm	Tuesday, November 3rd 2020, 7:37:34 pm	local 70221975-e766-482e	Never Logged In	0	Never Failed A Login

3 Users 10 per page

Figure 5-118 Selecting the username

- b. Expand **Groups**, find the group, and click **Add** (see Figure 5-119).

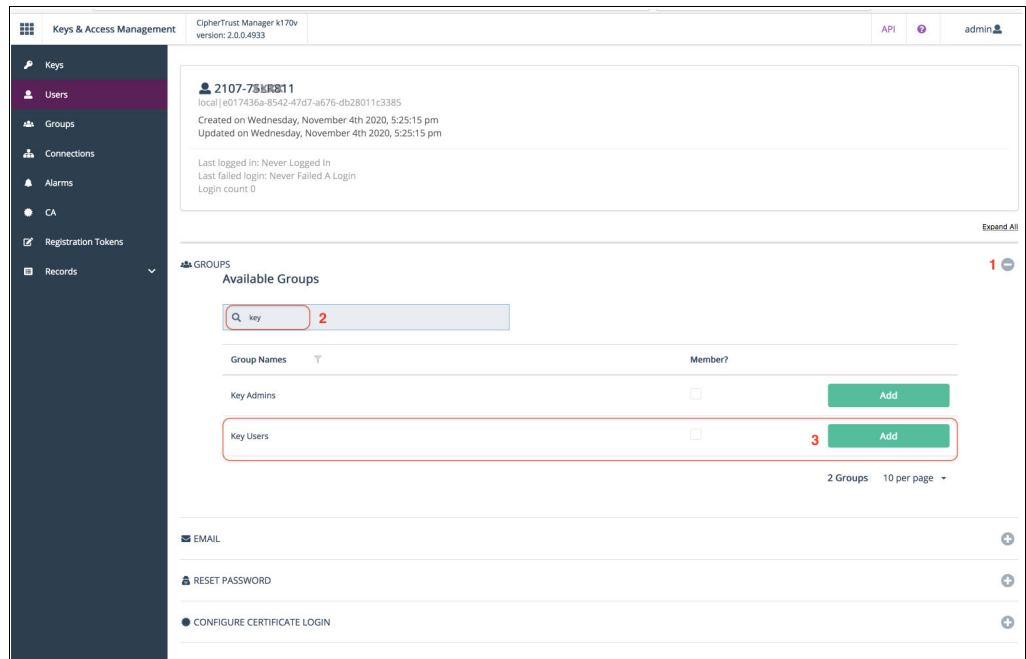


Figure 5-119 Adding groups to a user

Note: The user must be added to a group with permissions to create keys and perform operations on keys that they own.

- c. For DAR, you can use the default Key Users group.
- d. For TCT, if there are multiple DS8000 systems that can retrieve an object, the user should also be a member of a user-defined group, and each key should have the group added for key sharing.
3. Complete the required fields.

Note: If the KMIP interface mode requires **Username taken from client certificate**, the value of the username must match the value of the required field that is contained in the DS8000 client public certificate.

4. Verify the user details in the Users window.

Restarting the KMIP system service

Complete the following steps:

1. Select **System** → **Services**.
2. A window opens to confirm the KMIP restart. Click **Restart kmip** (see Figure 5-120).

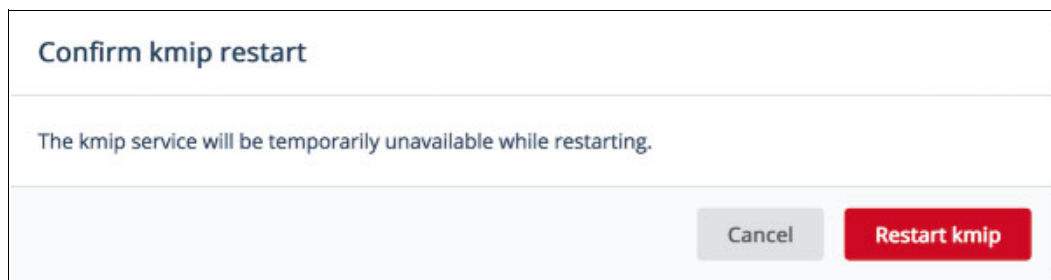


Figure 5-120 Restarting KMIP

The Thales CipherTrust Manager server is now ready to serve keys to the DS8000 server.

5.4 Configuring data-at-rest

This section describes the following topics:

- ▶ Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using IBM Proprietary Protocol
- ▶ Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using KMIP
- ▶ DS8000 configuration for data-at-rest encryption by using DS GUI
- ▶ DS8000 CLI configuration for data-at-rest encryption
- ▶ IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager authentication mechanisms

5.4.1 Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using IBM Proprietary Protocol

With the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server setup complete, you can now add the configuration details for DS8000 DAR encryption with IBM Proprietary Protocol or KMIP, as described in this section. For more information about TCT encryption, see 5.5, “Configuration for TCT encryption” on page 181. For more information about IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security, see 5.6, “IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration” on page 191.

Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for a data-at-rest configuration with IBM Proprietary Protocol

Complete the following steps:

- 1. From the Welcome window, in the Key and Device Management pane, select **DS8000**. Then, from the **Go to** menu, select **Guided key and device creation**.

These actions provide the guidance for steps that are required to add a storage facility image that the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager serves. Figure 5-121 shows these selections.

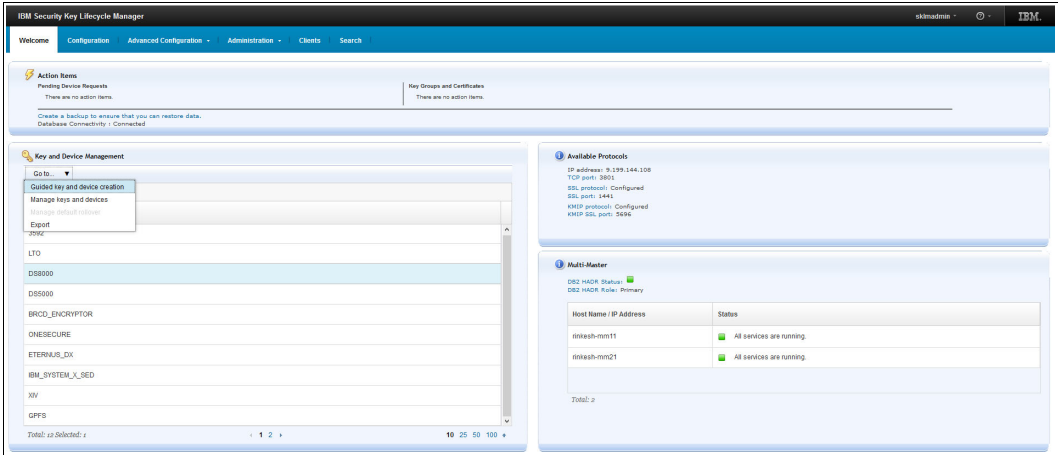


Figure 5-121 Guided key and device creation for DS8000

- 2. Click **Create** to start creating the certificate (see Figure 5-122) that will be associated with the storage facility image.

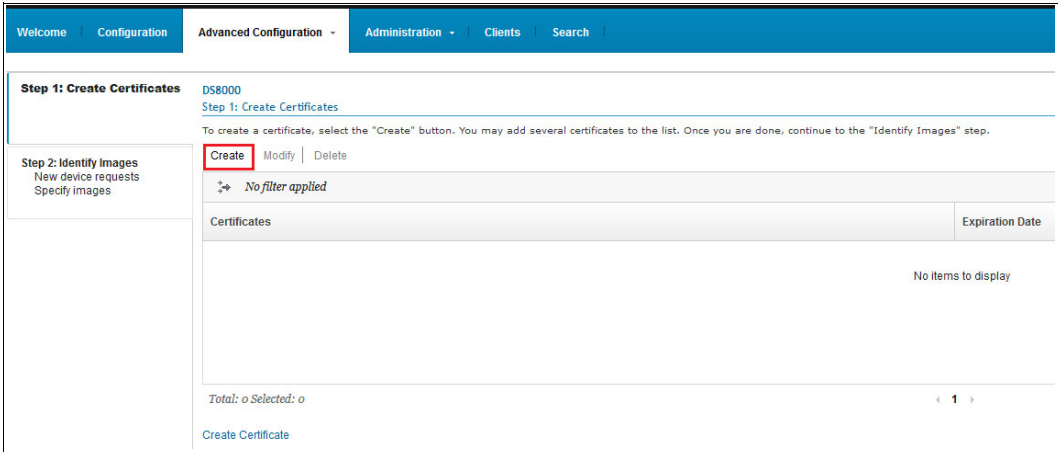


Figure 5-122 Creating the DS8000 certificate

3. After completing the required fields (see Figure 5-123), click **Create Certificate**.

Note: Do not confuse this certificate with the one that was created in “Option 1: Creating a self-signed TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 85 for network communication.

Create Certificate

☒ **Create self-signed certificate**
Use a self-signed certificate in a known environment. A client cannot verify a self-signed certificate before accepting a connection.

☐ **Request certificate from a third-party provider**
Use a certificate generated by a third-party provider as a more secure means of communication. A client can verify a certificate from a third-party provider before accepting a connection.

Self-signed Certificate

*Certificate label in keystore:
ds8k_tuc_02

*Certificate description (common name):
Certificate for DS8K

*Validity period of new certificate (in days; for example, 3 years is 365 x 3 = 1095 days):
1095

*Algorithm:
RSA

Optional Certificate Parameters

Create Certificate Cancel

Figure 5-123 Create Certificate window to use for the storage facility image

This certificate that is created here is used with the DS8000 storage image to encrypt the data key (DK). The maximum validity period of a certificate is 9000 days (more than 24 years).

Both self-signed certificates and third-party certificates are supported.

To use a third-party signed SSL certificate, follow the same steps to create the request, and export and import the signed certificate, as described in “Option 2: Creating a certificate that is signed by a third-party provider” on page 87, but for the Device Certificate this time, and not for the SSL / KMIP Server Certificate.

After the certificate is created, a warning to create a backup displays (see Figure 5-124).

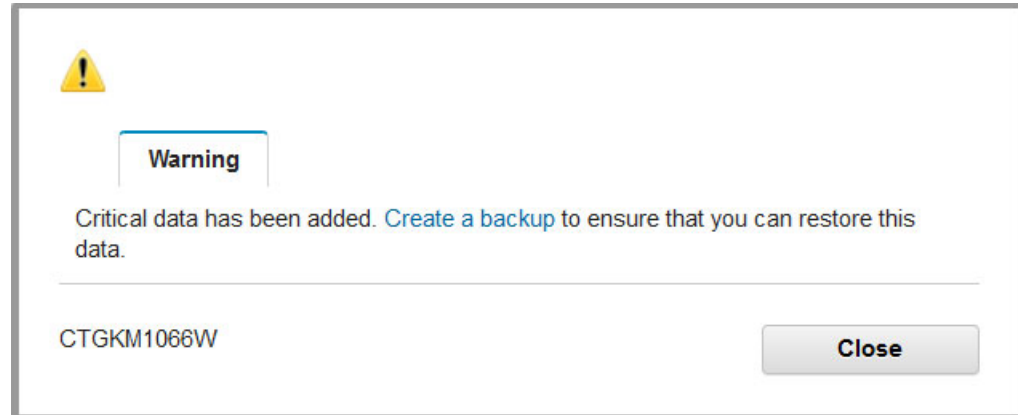


Figure 5-124 Warning to help ensure the creation of a backup

Creating a backup includes the two certificates that were created: one for network communication and one that is going to be associated with the storage image for DK encryption. You can wait until after all storage images are defined to create the backup. It takes about 2 minutes to create the backup, and there is no progress indicator.

4. If you want to create the backup now, click **Create a Backup**. If the backup is to be created after the storage images are defined, click **Close**.

The new certificate is available to associate with the storage image that you define next.

5. Click **Go to Next Step** at the bottom of the window, as shown in Figure 5-125.

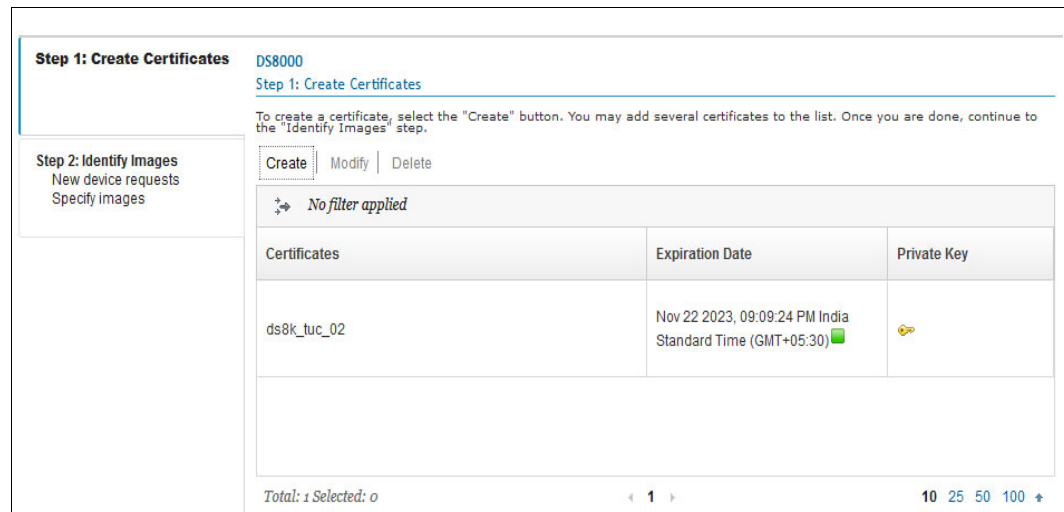


Figure 5-125 Create Certificate window for DS8000 Guided Path

6. In the Step 2: Identify Images window (see Figure 5-126 on page 154), and add the storage image that is to be managed by the key server.

If all the key servers are on the same platform, for example, Linux, only the primary certificate is used. If the key servers use multiple platforms, the secondary certificate also is created on the alternative platform.

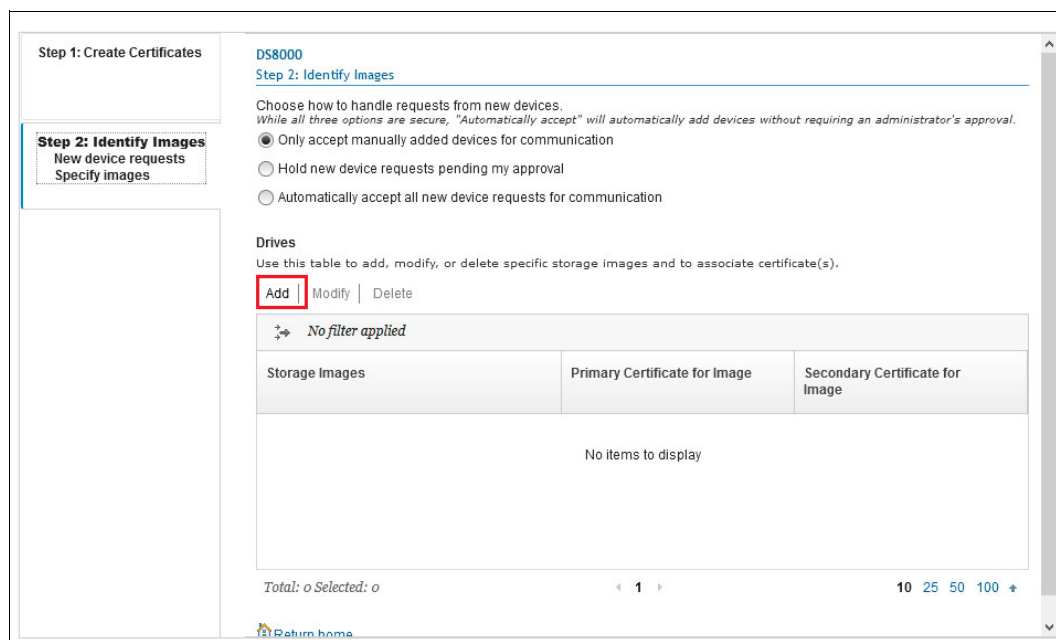


Figure 5-126 Adding a storage image

- Under the Drives section, click **Add** to define the storage facility image. Enter the storage image and enter the certificate label that you created. The example in Figure 5-127 shows the correct format of the information that is required. All DS8000 models use the Storage Image ID with a 1 at the end (2107-75XXXX1) format for the serial number.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Storage Image' dialog box. It has a title bar 'Add Storage Image'. Inside, there is a text input field for '*Storage Image' containing the value '2107-75BVK91'. A tooltip points to this field with the text 'Enter 12 character device serial number for the device.' Below this are two more text input fields: 'Primary certificate for image' and 'Secondary certificate for image', each followed by a 'Select' button. At the bottom, there is a large text area for 'Description:'. At the very bottom, there are two buttons: 'Add Storage Image' and 'Cancel'.

Figure 5-127 Add Storage Image window

In that window, if you click **Select** after the **Primary certificate for image** field, you see the window that is shown in Figure 5-128, in which all certificate names are listed.

The window is titled "Primary certificate for image". It features a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and the text "No filter applied". Below this is a table with a single column header "Name". The table contains one entry, "ds8k_tuc_02", which is highlighted with a light blue background and a dashed blue border. At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar that reads "Total: 1 Selected: 1" and a pagination control showing "1" between left and right arrows. To the right of the pagination are the numbers "10" and "25". At the very bottom are two buttons: "Select" and "Cancel".

Figure 5-128 Selecting the primary certificate for image

8. Select the certificate (**ds8k_tuc_02** in this example).

After selecting the primary certificate for image, you return to the Add Storage Image window that is shown in Figure 5-129. Click **Add Storage Image** to complete the task.

The window is titled "Add Storage Image". It contains several input fields and buttons. At the top is a field labeled "*Storage Image" with the value "2107-75BVK91". Below this is a field labeled "Primary certificate for image" with the value "ds8k_tuc_02", followed by "Select" and "Clear" buttons. Underneath is a field labeled "Secondary certificate for image" which is empty, followed by a "Select" button. A "Description:" label is above a text area containing the text "Associate SFI with primary certificate". At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "Add Storage Image" and "Cancel".

Figure 5-129 Add Storage Image window

The task to add a storage image is complete, as shown in Figure 5-130.

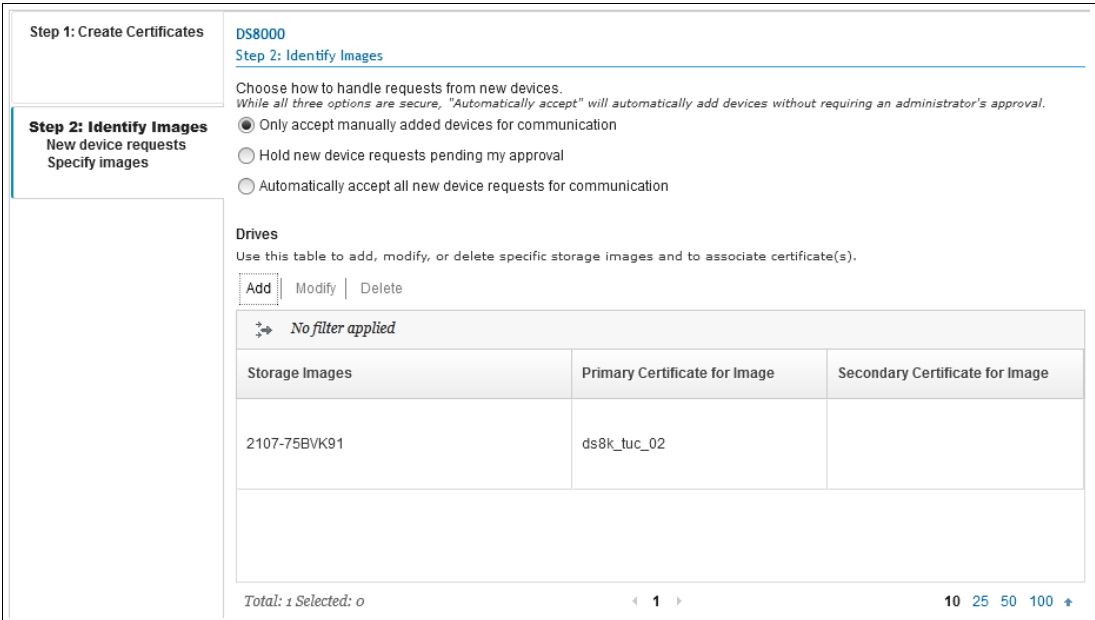


Figure 5-130 DS8000 machine defined

Verifying the DAR configuration with IBM Proprietary Protocol

Complete the following steps:

1. Verify that the storage image and certificate information are correct. From the Welcome window, select **DS8000** and under Key and Device Management, select **Manage keys and devices**, as shown in Figure 5-131. It is a good idea to verify all changes when adding storage images.

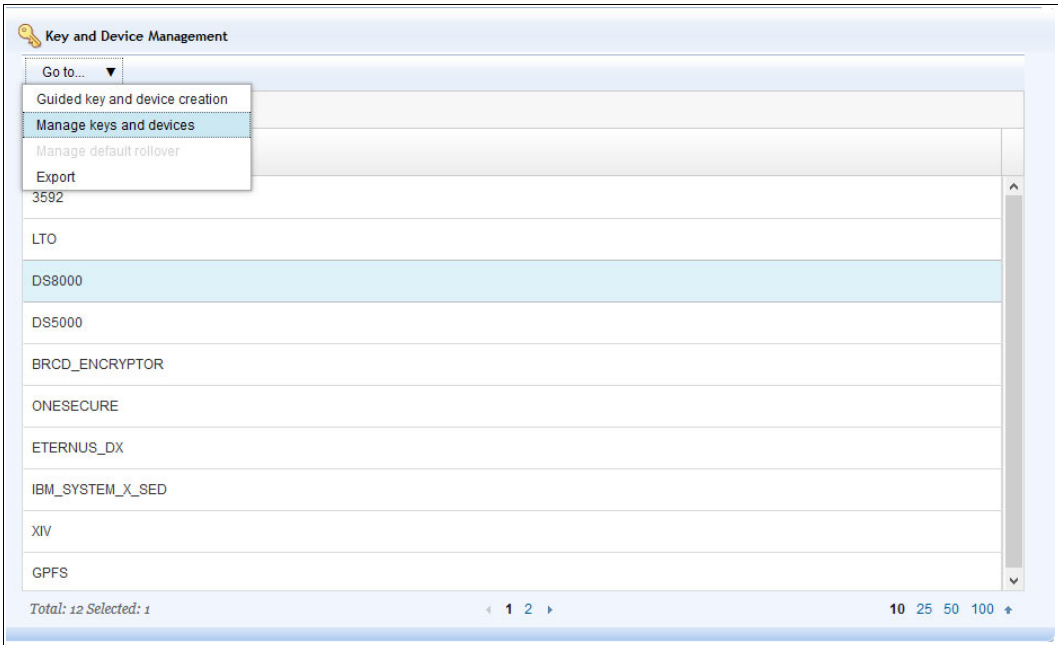


Figure 5-131 Manage keys and devices menu

2. Check all the keys and storage images to verify that the information is correct, as shown in Figure 5-132.

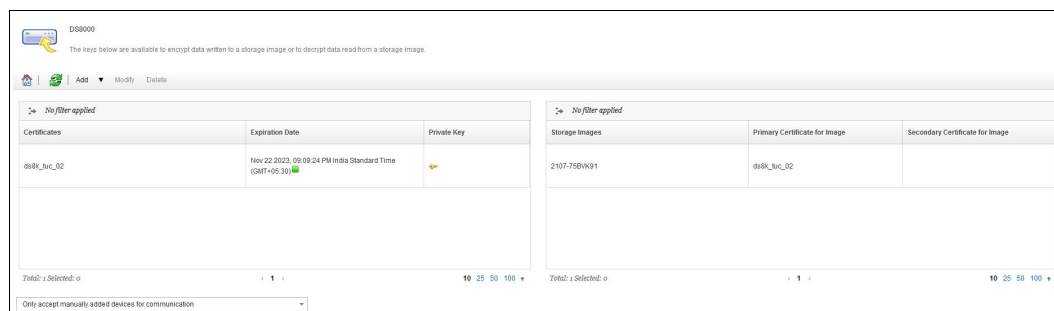


Figure 5-132 Checking the keys and storage images

3. Ensure that all modifications made to the Security Key Lifecycle Manager in the previous steps are replicated to all redundant Security Key Lifecycle Manager instances before moving on to DS8000 configuration:
 - If Non-Incremental remote replication is enabled, go to the **Replication configuration** menu and manually replicate, as described in step 5 on page 95, and wait for replication to complete before configuring the DS8000.
 - If Incremental remote replication is enabled, go to the **Replication configuration** menu and manually replicate, as described in step 5 in “Creating a backup” on page 92, and wait for replication to complete prior to configuring DS8000.
 - In StandAlone with manual replication environments, if no backup was created, create one now, as described in “Backup and restore” on page 92. Restore the new backup to all clones prior to configuring DS8000.
 - In Multi-Master environments, the certificate and devices are automatically synchronized. No action is necessary to replicate before configuring the DS8000.

5.4.2 Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using KMIP

If you are using KMIP instead of IBM Proprietary Protocol, no other setup is required in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server. Directly proceed with 5.4.3, “DS8000 configuration for data-at-rest encryption by using DS GUI” on page 157.

5.4.3 DS8000 configuration for data-at-rest encryption by using DS GUI

This section explains how to configure DAR encryption on the DS8000 by using the DS GUI and the DS CLI. The high-level configuration sequence includes the following steps (DS8000 encryption is part of the Base Function license and no longer requires a license key):

1. Create more *storage* and *security* administrator users.
2. Create the RK.
3. Save the RK in a secure location.

4. Enable encryption:
 - a. If you use IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager:
 - i. Define the key labels (if IBM Proprietary Protocol is used).
 - ii. Configure the key server connection to the DS8000.
 - iii. Authorize the RK.
 - b. If you use Thales Vormetric DSM or Thales CipherTrust Manager:
 - i. Configure the key server connection to the DS8000.
 - ii. Authorize the RK.
5. Configure and administer encrypted arrays, ranks, and storage pools.

For more information about enabling NIST SP 800-131a-compliant encryption certificates and TLS 1.3 communication, see 5.8, “NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers” on page 196.

Creating storage and security administrators by using the DS GUI

The DS8000 includes an internal authentication and authorization service that is called the *basic authentication service*. This service also provides local user management. With the DS8000, you also use an external authentication service, such as an LDAP server, but still use the internal authorization service to grant access to resources as defined by these DS8000 user group roles:

- ▶ admin
- ▶ secadmin
- ▶ op_storage
- ▶ op_volume
- ▶ op_copy_services
- ▶ service
- ▶ monitor
- ▶ ibm_engineering
- ▶ ibm_service

With the introduction of the encryption RK on DS8000, a *dual control* security process is required to prevent unauthorized use of the RK. This dual control process requires two separate user accounts to process most recovery commands. If these accounts are owned by two separate people, the RK cannot be used by any one person to gain access to encrypted data.

The first user role is in the *admin* user group and is called *Storage Administrator*. The second user role, *secadmin*, is called *Security Administrator*. Both users are created on the DS8000 by default, and you should assign these roles to two individuals.

To define new UIDs or modify the default usernames, complete the following steps:

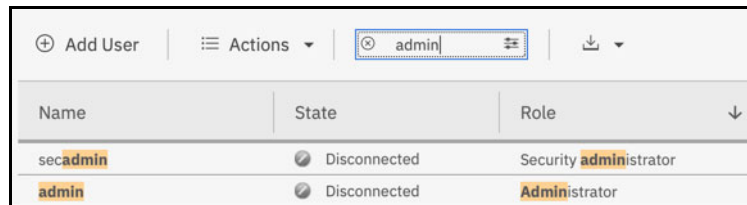
1. Sign on to the DS8000 GUI with Storage Administrator or Security Administrator privileges, depending on which role is needed.
2. From the left pane of the Welcome window, select the **User Access** icon and then select **Users**, as shown Figure 5-133.



Figure 5-133 Selecting the Users option

Passwords: The initial admin password is *admin* and the secadmin password is *secadmin*. The first time that you log in, you must change the password. Because these users are owned by different individuals, the admin and secadmin passwords must not be stored in one place.

The list of users that are filtered for admin is shown in Figure 5-134. The full unfiltered list includes all users on the system. The default users are admin and secadmin.

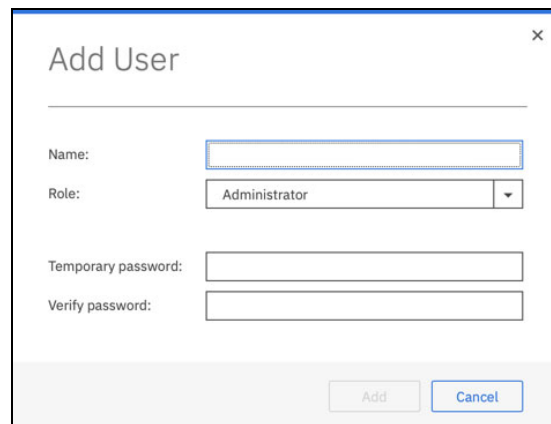


The screenshot shows a web interface for user administration. At the top, there is a search bar with 'admin' entered, and buttons for 'Add User', 'Actions', and a download icon. Below this is a table with columns for Name, State, and Role. Two users are listed: 'secadmin' and 'admin', both with a 'Disconnected' state and roles of 'Security administrator' and 'Administrator' respectively.

Name	State	Role
secadmin	Disconnected	Security administrator
admin	Disconnected	Administrator

Figure 5-134 User Administration window

3. Click the **Add User** option to create users (see Figure 5-135).



The screenshot shows a modal window titled 'Add User'. It contains four input fields: 'Name' (a text box), 'Role' (a dropdown menu with 'Administrator' selected), 'Temporary password' (a text box), and 'Verify password' (a text box). At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Add' and 'Cancel'.

Figure 5-135 Add User window

A user who has the Security Administrator role cannot have the authority of any other user role. Also, a user with any other user role cannot have the Security Administrator authority concurrently. The secadmin user is required to create users with the Security Administrator authority. All other authorities are disabled if you are logged in as the user belonging to the secadmin group authority. Any attempt to select any other role results in an error message, as shown in Figure 5-136 on page 160. The security administrator role is required for creating the RK.

The screenshot shows a 'Add User' window with the following fields and values:

- Name:** secadmin_backup
- Role:** A dropdown menu is open, displaying a list of roles: Administrator, Physical operator, Logical and copy operator, Logical operator, Copy operator, IBM engineering, IBM service, and Monitor.
- Temporary password:** Security administrator
- Verify password:** Physical operator

Figure 5-136 Adding a user by using the Security administrator role

4. After you enter the new username, Security Administrator role, and temporary password and verification, click **Add** to complete this task.

Creating the recovery key

Whenever an encryption technology is applied, a new type of risk appears: *deadlock*. This situation happens, for example, when a DS8000 cannot obtain a required DK from the key server because no key server can communicate during a restart of the DS8000 system. As a consequence, all data on the DS8000 becomes inaccessible because the data can no longer be decrypted without the keys.

The risk of a deadlock can be substantially minimized by maintaining redundant (dual-platform) key servers, but it cannot be eliminated. The *RK* feature provides a way to get out of a deadlocked state.

Without the RK, the DS8000 data becomes unrecoverable if access to the key servers is permanently lost (typically if the key servers are corrupted and not recoverable).

Note: Creating an RK applies only for DAR encryption. It is not supported by TCT encryption or IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

The decision about whether to create the RK must be made at this stage. Creation enables the RK automatically. If you decide to proceed without creating the RK, you can enable it later. However, all DS8000 logical configuration, including volumes, ranks, and extent pools, must be removed (deleted) to do so. The same disruptive process happens if you create the RK during initial configuration and later decide to disable it.

Configuring or disabling an RK

Complete the following steps to configure or disable an RK:

1. Log in to the DSGUI as a user with Security Administrator privileges. If the DS8000 does not have any extent pool that is defined yet, the window that is shown in Figure 5-137 opens in the GUI only. Decide whether to configure or disable it at this stage. If you configure it, continue with step 2. If you disable it, continue with step 4.

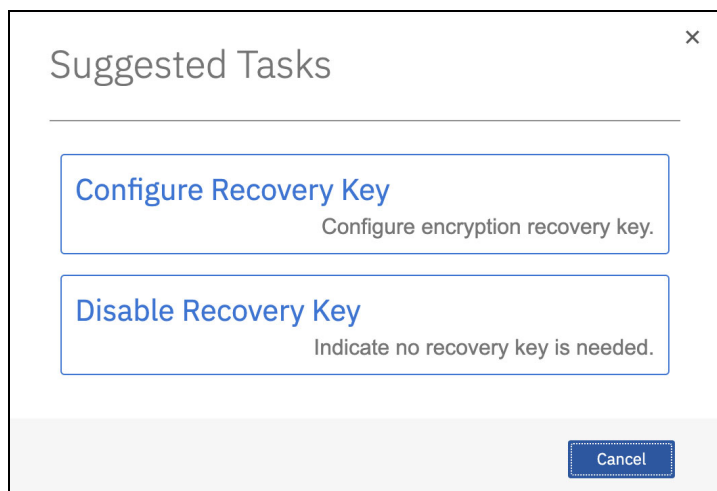


Figure 5-137 Recovery Key decision

2. If the Configure Recovery Key option was selected, the DS8000 automatically generates an RK. It is displayed as a 64-hexadecimal character key with dashes between every four characters. The Security Administrator must record and protect this key because there is no way to view the key from the key server. You can select and copy the key. Click **Enable** to continue, as shown in Figure 5-138.

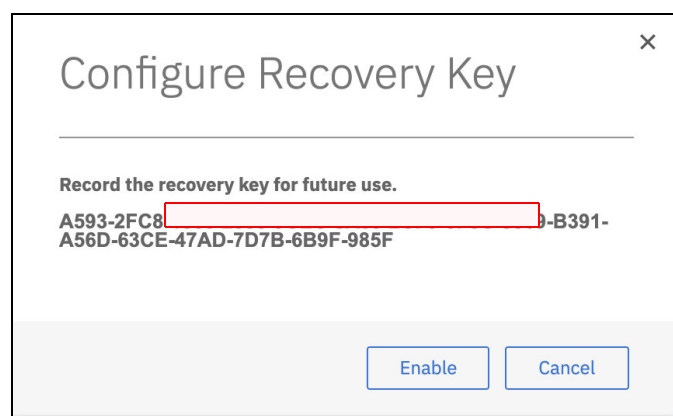


Figure 5-138 Configure Recovery Key (or disable recovery key) window

Saving the key text: The Security Administrator is responsible for recording and storing the RK in a safe place. This key is critical to recovery of a deadlock condition. Any person that knows the RK can unlock the DS8000.

3. To help ensure that the RK was recorded correctly, enter it into the Verify Recovery Key field (see Figure 5-139) and click **Verify**. This information can also be pasted into the field.



Figure 5-139 Recovery key verification

After the key is verified, it is still not active because it is waiting for the Storage Administrator to authorize the newly created RK. At this stage, you can log off as the Security Administrator user, log back in with the Storage Administrator access and continue as described in the next section.

4. If the Disable Recovery Key option was selected, the DS8000 automatically disables the RK. After the key was disabled, the change is still not active because it is waiting for the Storage Administrator to authorize the disabled RK.

At this stage, you can log off as the Security Administrator user, log back in with the Storage Administrator access, and continue as described in the next section.

DS8000 enabling data-at-rest encryption

The data that is encrypted within the DS8000 is partitioned in one *encryption key group*. The encryption key group that contains encrypted data is enabled to access data through one DK that is obtained from a key server. After DAR encryption is enabled, all data on the system is encrypted.

Note: As of this writing, the DS8000 supports only one encryption key group for DAR encryption. It must be configured for IBM Proprietary Protocol or KMIP. The IBM Proprietary Protocol is supported by IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers only. Separate encryption key groups are used for TCT and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption.

Enabling DAR encryption with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager by using KMIP requires a Multi-Master or Master-Clone with Incremental Replication configuration of the key server. The key servers do not require any other configuration to serve keys to the DS8000.

KMIP has been supported starting with DS8000 Release 8.5 and IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager 3.0.0.2.

To configure the DS8000, complete the following steps.

Note: Some figures in this section might not reflect the latest DS GUI version. However, the process that is described here remains the same.

1. After the RK is created, log on to the DS8000 GUI as a user with Administrator role to enable the encryption and authorize the previously generated RK. From the DS8000 GUI Welcome window, click **Settings** and then, **Security**, as shown in Figure 5-140.

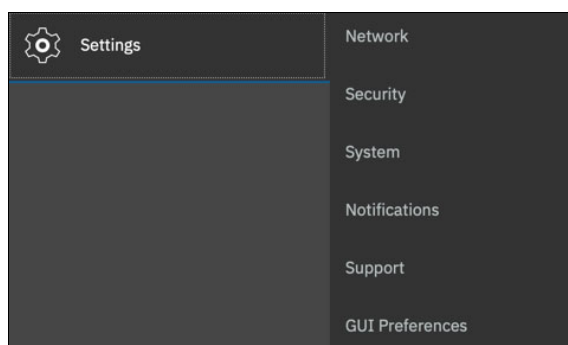


Figure 5-140 Go to the Encryption window

2. The encryption wizard is shown in Figure 5-141. This wizard is started only when you enable the encryption for the first time. Click **Enable Encryption** to continue.

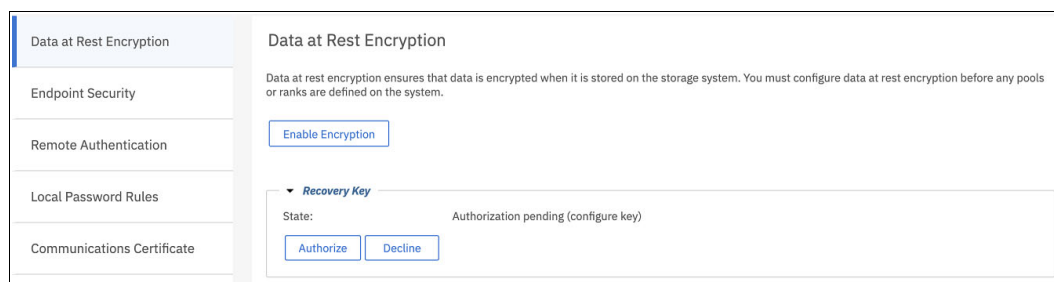


Figure 5-141 Encryption wizard: Enable Encryption

The Welcome window opens (see Figure 5-142 on page 164). The prerequisites for the next steps are that at least two key servers must be configured, online, and connected to the DS8000. Click **Next** to continue.

Note: Security Key Lifecycle Manager was renamed IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager since the release of the DS8000 Release 9.2 DS GUI.

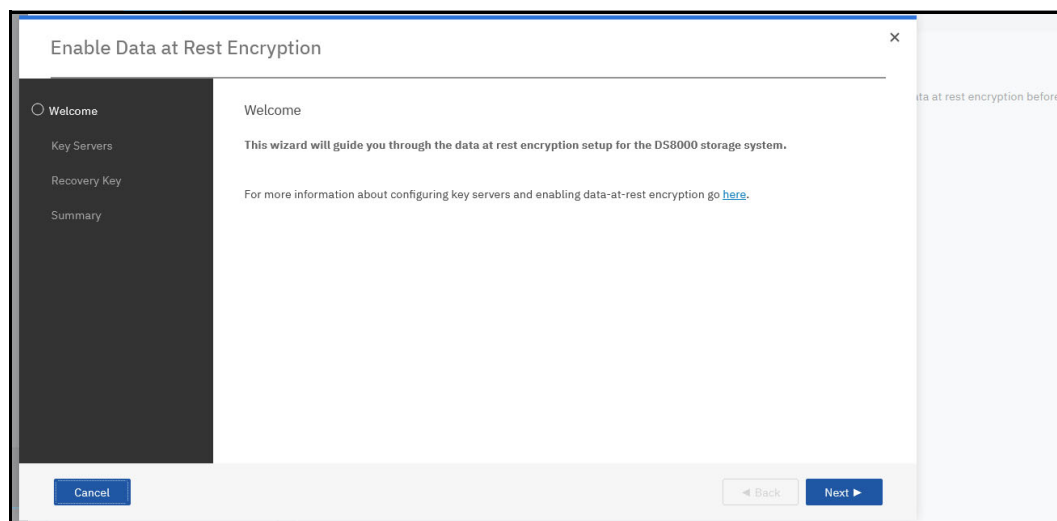


Figure 5-142 Encryption wizard: Welcome window

3. Select the Key Server Type depending on the setup:
 - Select **IBM GKLM (TLS)** to use TLS port 1441 to communicate with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager if IBM Proprietary Protocol is used.
 - If KMIP is used, select **KMIP Compatible (TLS)**, as shown in Figure 5-143. It is the default selection.

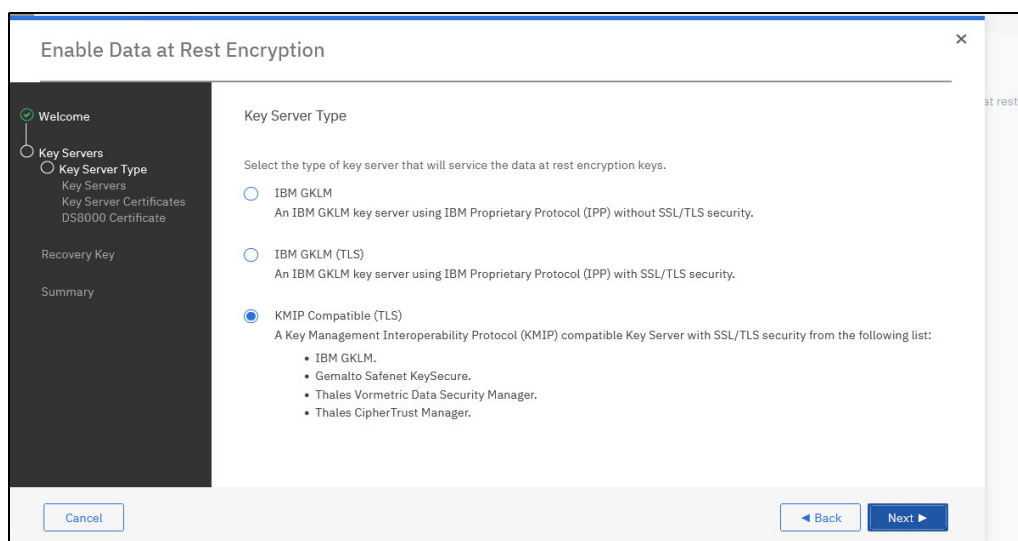


Figure 5-143 Type selection

Note: If you select **IBM GKLM** as Key Server Type, the default port number for the key servers is set to 3801. Port 3801 is the default IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP port for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager: It is not secured by TLS and therefore not recommended.

However, if you choose that option instead of TLS at your own risk, you must *not* provide key server certificates as part of key server configuration.

If you select Key Server Type **IBM GKLM (TLS)**, the key servers' port is set to 441, and you must update it with port 1441. You also must provide key server certificates, even if you change the key server port number to the IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP port of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, which defaults to 3801, as shown in Figure 5-144.

If your key server port number is the IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP port of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and you configured a certificate when creating the key server object, key server communication fails because the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is communicating through TCP and the DS8000 is communicating by using TLS. This situation results in errors during encryption enablement.

Figure 5-144 shows the default ports as displayed in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager GUI Welcome window.

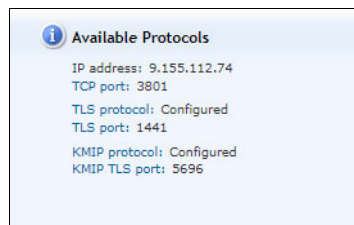


Figure 5-144 Default ports in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

4. Configure the key servers. The DS8000 supports up to four key servers. Consider the following points regarding multiple- and single-site configurations:
 - In multiple site configurations, at least two of the key server ports should be assigned to isolated key servers at separate physical sites. The remaining ports can be connected to general key servers.
 - In single-site configurations, at least two of the key server ports should be assigned to isolated key servers at the same site.

The DS8000 configuration for encryption also requires that at least two active key servers be connected and defined at the DS8000 instance.

The DS8000 monitors all configured key servers. Client notification is provided for loss of access to key servers and other key server-related errors through DS8000 client notification mechanisms (SNMP traps and email, if configured) in the following ways:

- Loss of access to key servers is reported at 5-minute intervals.
- Loss of the ability for at least two key servers to provide key services that can prevent access to the data on the DS8000 is reported at 8-hour intervals.
- The inability of any one key server to provide key services that can prevent access to data on the DS8000 is also reported at 8-hour intervals.

In Figure 5-145, two key servers are defined. You can add up to four or remove key servers by clicking the + or - sign next to each key server field. Specify the host address (IP address or full qualified hostname of the key server). Click **Next**.

The screenshot shows a wizard window titled "Enable Data at Rest Encryption". On the left is a sidebar with a progress indicator showing steps: Welcome, Key Servers (current), Key Server Type, Key Servers, Key Server Certificates, DS8000 Certificate, Recovery Key, and Summary. The main area is titled "Key Servers" and contains the instruction "Define the IP address or host name of the KMIP key servers". Below this is a table with two columns: "Host Name" and "Port". The first row contains "vinz" and "5696". The second row contains "zuul" and "5696". To the right of the second row is a plus sign icon (+). Below the table are two links: "Use existing key servers from IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security." and "Use existing key servers from TCT encryption.". At the bottom of the window are three buttons: a question mark icon (?), a "Cancel" button, and a "Next" button with a right-pointing arrow.

Figure 5-145 Encryption wizard: Defining key servers

- Each key server connection is tested. The message that is shown in Figure 5-146 is displayed if all the key servers that you defined are accessible. Click **OK**.

Note: The ports can also be changed and must match the setting on the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Test 2 Key Servers". Inside the dialog, there is an information icon (i) followed by the text "Key server test completed successfully.". At the bottom right of the dialog is an "OK" button.

Figure 5-146 Encryption wizard: Test Key Servers

- If the setup is using IBM Proprietary Protocol, continue with step 7. If KMIP is used, continue with step 8.

7. Define the key label for the DK that is generated by the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server during the certificate creation step on the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server. (It is not required when the KMIP protocol is used.)

This key label must match the label that is defined as described in 5.4.1, “Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using IBM Proprietary Protocol” on page 150. In this example, this key label is named `ds8900_cert`.

Only one key label is required when all IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers are installed on the open systems platforms with the same keystore type. A dual key label option is applicable only if at least one IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server is installed on an IBM Z server (z/OS) and the other on the open systems platform because of the different keystore type that is used on IBM Z servers. In addition, the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager on IBM Z does not support TCT encryption.

As shown in Figure 5-147, only one label is defined because all IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers are installed on the same platform with the same keystore type. Click the **+** sign to add a key label for the dual platform support. You can add the key label even after the encryption is enabled.

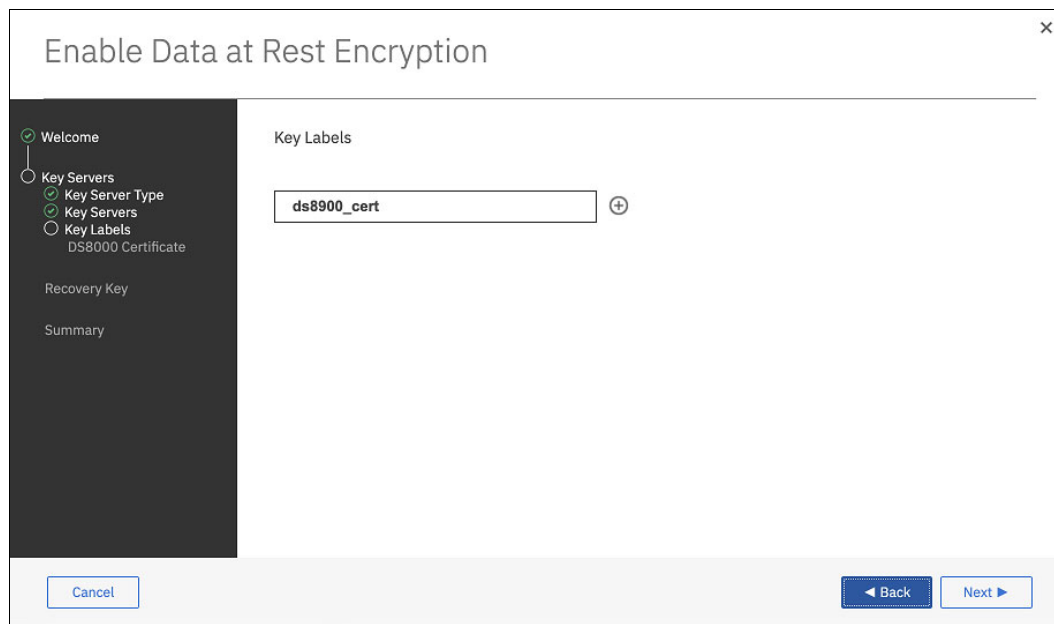


Figure 5-147 Defining the key label

You can continue by using the encryption wizard, although the key label that you provided does not match the key label that you specified in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server. The label verification is done as the last step of the encryption enablement process. Click **Next** to continue.

8. Transfer the SSL certificates from the key servers to the DS8000 server, as shown in Figure 5-148 and Figure 5-149. The System defined (GEN2) certificate that was created in step 2 does not need to be exported. This certificate is known in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

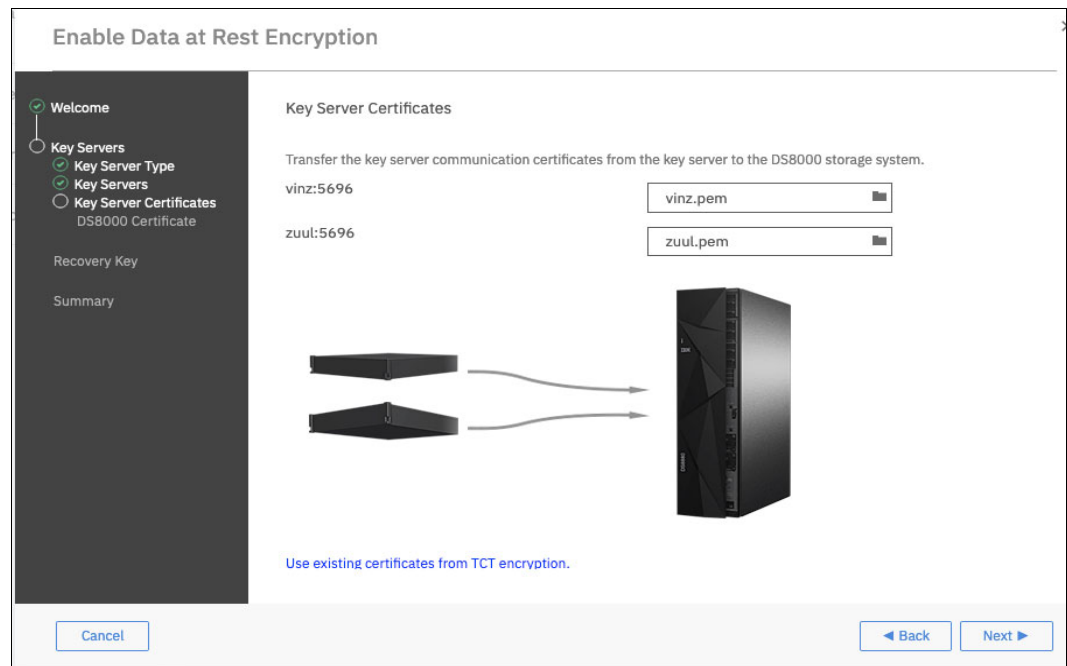


Figure 5-148 Transferring the SSL certificates to a DS8000 server: Step 1

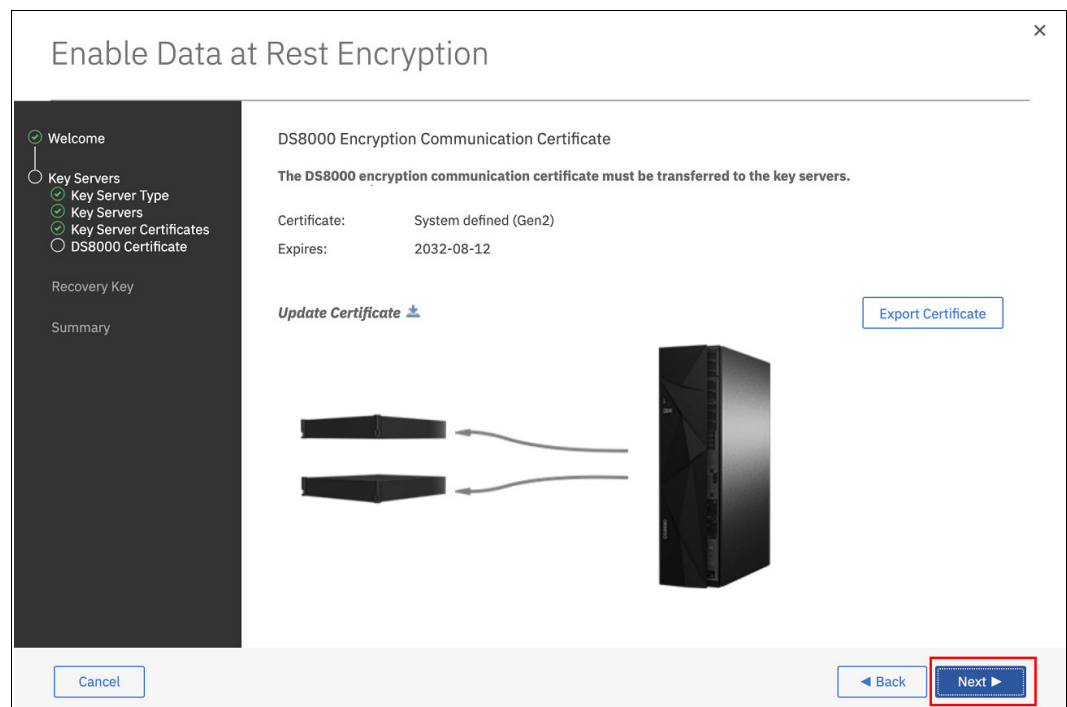


Figure 5-149 Transferring the SSL certificates to a DS8000 server: Step 2

Exporting the SSL certificates is described in “Exporting the TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 91 for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, “Creating a self-signed SSL server certificate” on page 118 for Thales Vormetric DSM, and “Obtaining the KMIP public certificate” on page 145 for Thales CipherTrust Manager.

9. Authorize the pending request for the RK from the Security Administrator (if not done yet). Click **Authorize**, as shown in Figure 5-150.

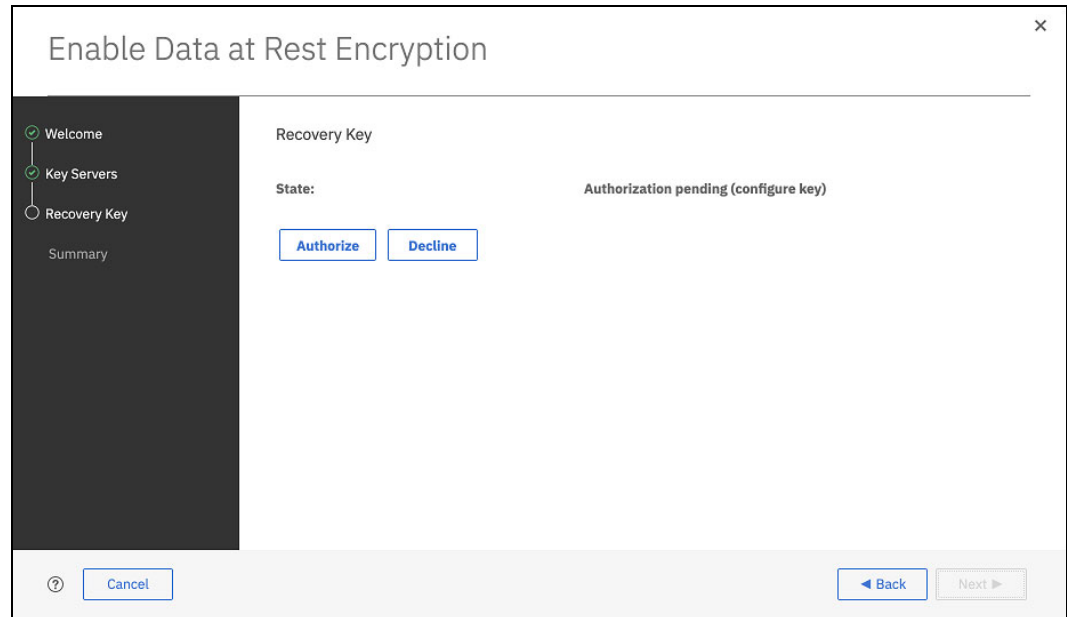


Figure 5-150 Authorizing the recovery key

10. The confirmation message window opens (see Figure 5-151). Click **Yes** to continue.

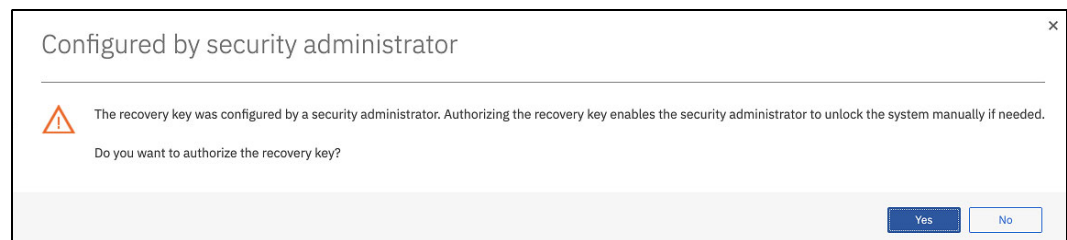


Figure 5-151 Confirming the recovery key authorization

The RK state changes to Configured when the RK authorization is confirmed (see Figure 5-152). If the RK is disabled, the state shows as disabled.

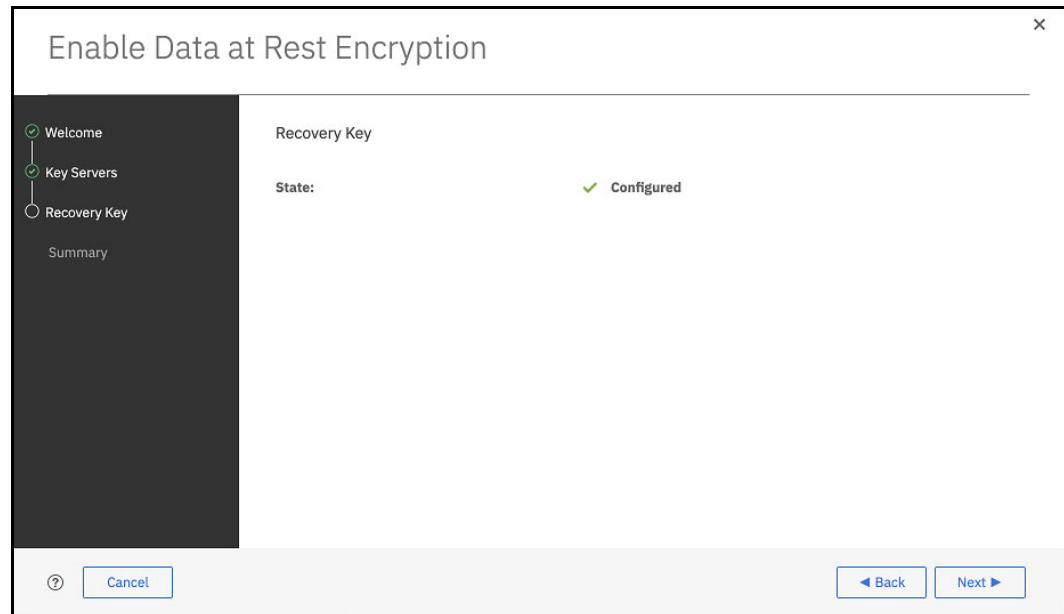


Figure 5-152 Recovery key configured

11. Figure 5-153 shows a summary of the configuration. Click **Finish** to start all tasks that are required to enable the encryption.

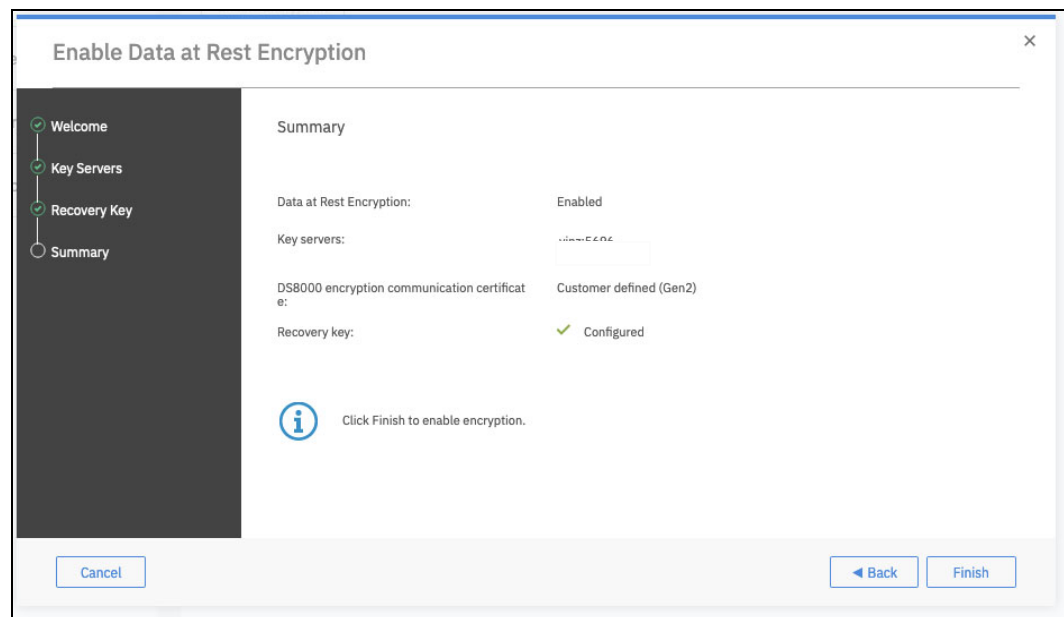


Figure 5-153 Summary window

12. Encryption enablement tasks take approximately 1 minute. Expand the **View more details** section to see the task list. The overall progress is displayed as a percentage. When the completed message displays, click **Close**.

In the Encryption window (see Figure 5-154), the encryption state is Enabled and the encryption key is Accessible. By expanding each section, you get more information. In this example, one key label exists and in this case, two key servers that are accessible and online.

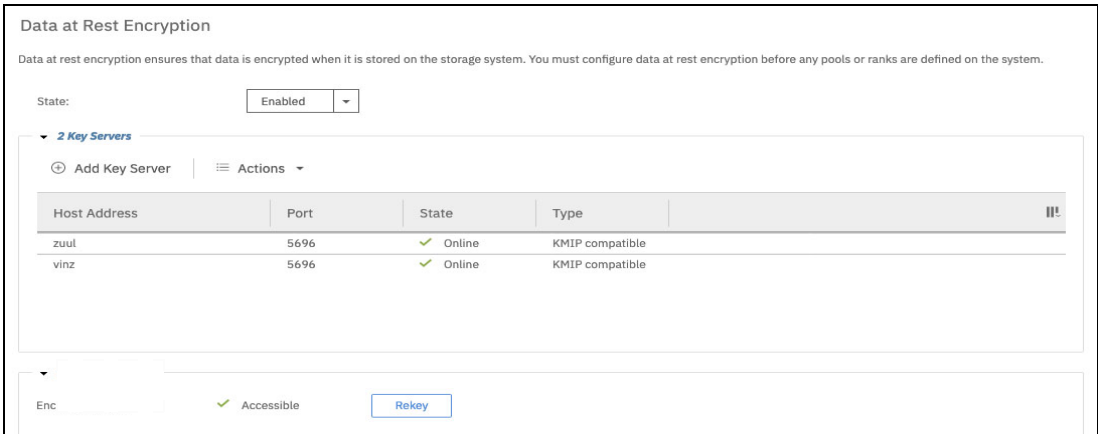


Figure 5-154 Encryption enabled and accessible

The overall process to enable encryption on a DS8000 by using the GUI interface is simple. It takes approximately 5 minutes to complete all these steps. Now, you are ready for logical configuration, that is, create ranks, extent pools, and volumes. When you create the extent pools, you cannot disable the encryption unless you delete all the volumes, ranks, and extent pools.

There are a few options that are available to manage the encryption environment. You can rekey the DK and RK. For more information, see 6.1, “Rekeying the data key for data-at-rest encryption” on page 210 and 6.2, “Recovery key usage and maintenance” on page 217.

5.4.4 DS8000 CLI configuration for data-at-rest encryption

You can configure DAR on the DS8000 server by using the DS CLI. The high-level configuration sequence includes the following steps:

1. Enable the RK (for DAR encryption only).
2. Configure the Key Manager server connection to the DS8000.
3. Configure the encryption key group.

Configure and administer the encrypted storage pools and assign arrays.For more information about enabling NIST SP 800-131a compliant encryption certificates and TLS 1.3 communication, see 5.8, “NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers” on page 196.

For more information about the CLI and commands, see *IBM DS8000 Series Command-Line Interface User's Guide*, SC27-9562.

Enabling the recovery key for data-at-rest encryption

Note: Creating and managing an RK applies to DAR encryption only.

As described in “Creating the recovery key” on page 160, the risk of a deadlock situation can be substantially minimized by maintaining redundant (dual-platform) IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers for DAR encryption, but it cannot be eliminated.

The RK feature for DAR encryption provides a way to get out of a deadlock state.

You can enable or disable RK management. This choice must be made before you configure any encryption key group.

The encryption key group and RK start in the unconfigured state. See Example 5-8.

Example 5-8 The *lskeygrp* command

```
dsccli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label label2
keyprotocol type name
-----
1  unconfigured unconfigured -          -          -          - - - -
-      N/A
```

To configure the RK by using CLI commands, complete the following steps:

1. The CLI command that is used to configure the RK must be entered by a user with Security Administrator (secadmin) authority. Run the **mkrekey** command, as shown in Example 5-9.

Example 5-9 Configuring the recovery key by using the *mkrekey* command

```
dsccli> mkrekey -dev IBM.2107-75xxx1 1
-----
CMUC00392I mkrekey: The access Recovery Key
0123-4569-4443-3334-3334-0123-4569-3334-4443-3334-3334-0123-4569-4443-3334-3334 for
encryption group 1 has been created, pending verification.

dsccli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label label2
keyprotocol type name
-----
1  unconfigured newkeyveripend -          -          -          - - - -
-      -      N/A
```

You can copy the new RK text from the terminal and save it in a file, which can be used for printing. However, this approach is not preferable because the key can be discovered by a network sniffer. A better approach is to write the key on a piece of paper.

The Security Administrator is responsible for writing the RK and storing the paper in a safe place.

2. The secadmin runs the **managereckey -action verify** command to help ensure that the written key is correct, as shown in Example 5-10.

Example 5-10 Verifying the recovery key

```
dsccli> managereckey -dev IBM.2107-75xxx1 -action verify - key
0123-4569-4443-3334-3334-0123-4569-3334-4443-3334-0123-4569-4443-3334-3334 1
-----
CMUC00393I managereckey: The access Recovery Key for encryption group 1 has been
verified, pending authorization.

dsccli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      rekeystate    rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label label2
keyprotocol type name
-----
1   unconfigured newkeyauthpend -          -          -          - - -
-   -          N/A
```

The RK is now in the Authorization Pending status.

3. After the RK is verified, the Storage Administrator authorizes usage of the RK that was created. You must log on as a user with Storage Administrator authority to run the **managereckey -action authorize** command, as shown in Example 5-11.

Example 5-11 Authorizing the recovery key

```
dsccli> managereckey -dev IBM.2107-75xxx1 -action authorize 1
CMUC00406W managereckey: Are you sure that you want to authorize the creation of the
access Recovery Key for encryption group 1? [Y/N]:Y
-----
CMUC00395I managereckey: The pending Recovery Key management operation for encryption
group 1 has been authorized.

dsccli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      rekeystate    rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label label2
keyprotocol type name
-----
1   unconfigured configured  02/05/2024 -          -          -          - - -
-   N/A
```

To disable the RK by using CLI commands, complete the following steps:

1. The CLI command that is used to disable the RK must be entered by a user with Security Administrator (secadmin) authority. Run the **managereckey** command, as shown in Example 5-12.

Example 5-12 Disabling the recovery key

```
dsccli> managereckey -action disable 1
-----
CMUC00416I managereckey: The access recovery key for key group 1 has been
disabled, pending authorization.

dsccli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      rekeystate    rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label label2
keyprotocol type name
-----
1   unconfigured disableauthpend -          -          -          - - -
-   -          N/A
```

2. After the RK is disabled, the Storage Administrator authorizes the disabled RK. You must log on as a user with Storage Administrator authority to run the **managereckey -action authorize** command, as shown in Example 5-13.

Example 5-13 Authorizing the disabled recovery key

```
dscli> managereckey -action authorize 1
CMUC00418W managereckey: Are you sure that you want to authorize the disable of
the access recovery key for key group 1? [Y/N]: y
CMUC00395I managereckey: The pending recovery key management operation for key
group 1 has been authorized.
```



```
dscli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      reckeystate reckeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label
label2 keyprotocol type name
```

1	unconfigured	disabled	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	N/A						

To enable the RK by using CLI commands, complete the following steps. The encryption key group must be in the unconfigured state to enable the RK.

1. The CLI command used to enable the RK must be entered by a user with Security Administrator (secadmin) authority. Run the **managereckey** command, as shown in Example 5-14.

Example 5-14 Enabling the recovery key

```
dscli> managereckey -action enable 1
CMUC00415I managereckey: The access recovery key for key group 1 has been
enabled, pending authorization.
```



```
dscli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      reckeystate  reckeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus
label label2 keyprotocol type name
```

1	unconfigured	enableauthpend	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	N/A					

2. After the RK is requested to be enabled, the Storage Administrator authorizes the enabled RK. You must log on as a user with Storage Administrator authority to run the **managereckey -action authorize** command, as shown in Example 5-15.

Example 5-15 Authorizing enablement of the recovery key

```
dscli> managereckey -action authorize 1
CMUC00417W managereckey: Are you sure that you want to authorize the enable of
the access recovery key for key group 1? [Y/N]: y
CMUC00395I managereckey: The pending recovery key management operation for key
group 1 has been authorized.
```



```
dscli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      reckeystate  reckeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label
label2 keyprotocol type name
```


1	unconfigured	unconfigured	-	-	- -
-	-	-	N/A		
....					

Configuring the key server connection

The DS8000 supports up to four Key Manager Server connections per encryption key group. However, only one encryption key group (encryption key group 1) is available for DAR encryption.

An intermixing between different sorts of key servers connections is not allowed. KMIP and IBM Proprietary Protocol protocols cannot be intermixed for DAR encryption.

Having an IBM Proprietary Protocol DAR key group and KMIP for the key group for TCT encryption or IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security in parallel is allowed when you use IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager for the key servers.

The following suggestions apply to configurations per encryption key group:

- ▶ In multiple site configurations, at least two of the key server ports should be assigned to isolated key servers at separate physical sites. The remaining ports can be connected to general key servers.
- ▶ In single-site configurations, at least two of the key server ports should be assigned to isolated key servers at the same site.

The DS8000 configuration for encryption also requires that at least two active key servers be connected and defined at the DS8000 installation. The following configuration describes how to connect the key servers by using these port assignments:

- ▶ SSL/TLS port 1441 for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager
- ▶ KMIP port 5696 for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager
- ▶ Port 5697 for Thales Vormetric DSM
- ▶ Port 5697 for Thales CipherTrust Manager

If you must connect the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager by using SSL/TLS v1.2 for NIST SP 800-131a compliance, see 5.8, “NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers” on page 196. Then, see “Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers for data-at-rest encryption” on page 176.

Note: When running `mkkeymgr` to configure IBM Proprietary Protocol key managers, be aware that port 3801 is the default IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP port for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

IBM Proprietary Protocol communication on the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP port is not secured by TLS and it is not recommended because it is not as secure.

However, if you choose that option at your own risk instead of TLS, you must not provide key server certificates as part of key server configuration.

In your `mkkeymgr` parameters, if you select the port that is used for IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP communication on IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (default is 3801), do *not* provide a certificate location.

If your key server port number is the IBM Proprietary Protocol TCP port of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and you configured a certificate when creating the key server object, key server communication fails because the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager is communicating through TCP and the DS8000 is communicating through TLS. This situation results in errors during encryption enablement.

Figure 5-155 shows the default ports as displayed in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager GUI Welcome window.

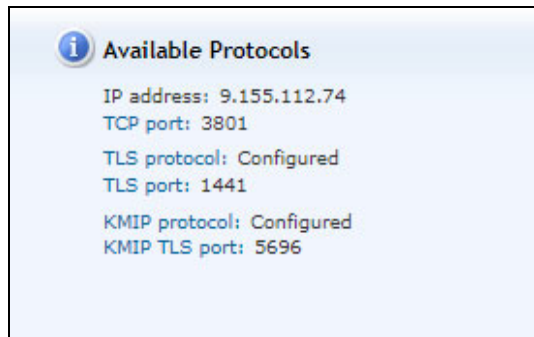


Figure 5-155 Default ports in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

Configuring IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers for data-at-rest encryption

To configure the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server connection, use the `mkkeymgr`, `mkkeygrp`, and `lskeymgr` commands.

With DS8000 Release 8.5 and later, your configuration commands must also specify the encryption type `dar` and the encryption key group number. (The defaults are IPP protocol, type `DAR` (DAR), and encryption key group 1.)

Complete the following steps:

1. Run the **mkkeymgr** command at the **dscli** command line, with the parameters and variables for IBM Proprietary Protocol and DAR that are shown in Example 5-16.

Example 5-16 Creating one or more key servers with IBM Proprietary Protocol

```
dscli> mkkeymgr -addr 9.123.456.10 -serverport 1441 -cert
/home/source/keba_ssl_kmip_2.cer -keyprotocol IPP -type dar -keygrp 1 1
-----
CMUC00354I mkkeymgr: The key server 1 has been created.
```

Commands for KMIP are shown in Example 5-17.

Example 5-17 Creating one or more key servers with KMIP

```
dscli> mkkeymgr -addr 9.123.456.11 -serverport 5696 -cert
/home/source/keba_ssl_kmip_2.cer -keyprotocol KMIP -type dar -keygrp 1 1
-----
CMUC00354I mkkeymgr: The key server 1 has been created.
```

Repeat the **mkkeymgr** command for key servers 2 - 4, if required.

2. Verify that the new IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server was added successfully, the state is active, and the status is normal. Run the **lskeymgr** command with the **-l** parameter, as shown in Example 5-18.

Example 5-18 Verifying the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
Date/Time: October 1, 2019 5:07:38 PM CEST IBM DS CLI Version: 7.9.0.509 DS: -
ID  state  status keyprotocol addr      port type keygrp
-----
  1  active  normal  IPP           9.123.456.10 1441  DAR   1
```

3. Create the Key group with IBM Proprietary Protocol (see Example 5-19) or for KMIP (see Example 5-20).

Example 5-19 Creating a Key Group with IBM Proprietary Protocol

```
mkkeygrp -keyprotocol ipp -label ds8900 -type dar 1
```

Example 5-20 Creating a Key Group with KMIP

```
mkkeygrp -keyprotocol kmip -type dar 1
```

4. The encryption key group is created in the accessible state (see Example 5-21 and Example 5-22 on page 178). All key servers are in the active state and have a normal status (see Example 5-23 on page 178 and Example 5-24 on page 178).

Example 5-21 Encryption key group state with IBM Proprietary Protocol

```
dscli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID  state  rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label
label2 keyprotocol type name
-----
  1  accessible configured 02/05/2024 02/05/2024      -   normal ds8900 -
  IPP      DAR   DAR_1
```

Example 5-22 Encryption key group state with KMIP

```
dscli> lskeygrp -l 1
ID state      rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate grpstatus mgrstatus label
label2 keyprotocol type name
-----
1 accessible configured 02/05/2024 02/05/2024 - normal - -
KMIP DAR DAR_1
```

Example 5-23 Key server state with IBM Proprietary Protocol

```
dscli> lskeymgr -l -keygrp 1
ID state status keyprotocol addr port type keygrp
-----
1 active normal IPP 9.123.456.10 1441 DAR 1
2 active normal IPP 9.123.456.10 1441 DAR 1
```

Example 5-24 Key server state with KMIP

```
dscli> lskeymgr -l -keygrp 1
ID state status keyprotocol addr port type keygrp
-----
1 active normal KMIP 9.123.456.10 5696 DAR 1
2 active normal KMIP 9.123.456.11 5696 DAR 1
```

A DAR encryption key group contains a set of extent pools, each of which has a set of associated ranks and volumes. The remote mirror and copy functions can migrate data within or between encryption key groups.

You can now start creating the extent pools.

You do not need to specify or enable any other parameters to start using the encrypted DS8000 disks. When you select arrays, the encryption status for each array is displayed.

5.4.5 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager authentication mechanisms

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager has different levels of authentication for incoming requests from IBM Proprietary Protocol and KMIP devices.

Certificate authentication for TLS 1.3 communication

The first level of authentication is done by validating certificates. The DS8000 server communicates with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager over TLS 1.3. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager has the root and intermediate certificates (Gen 2 and Gen 3) of DS8000 certificates in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager truststore.

Therefore, if the DS8000 server uses default certificates, the certificates are automatically trusted by IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (see Figure 5-156).

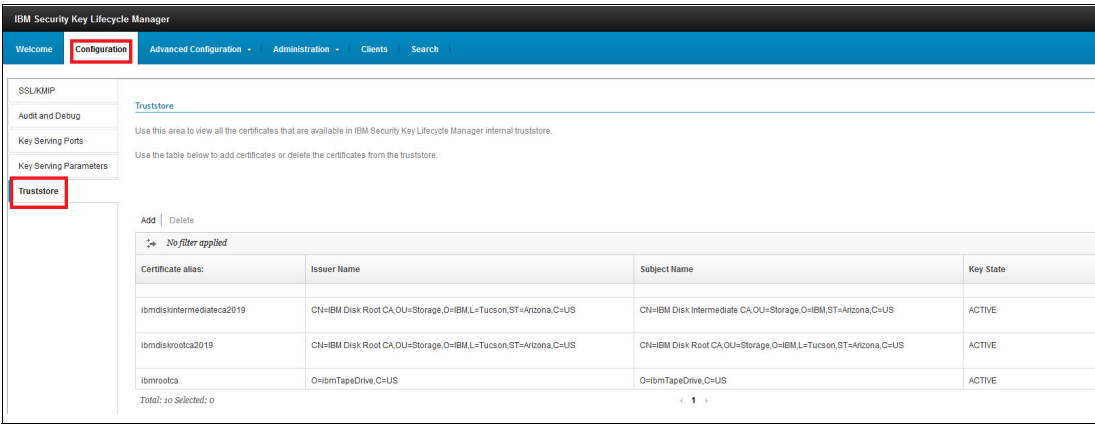


Figure 5-156 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager truststore

If the DS8000 server presents the Chain of Trust and the root certificate of that certificate chain is trusted in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, the entire chain is automatically trusted. You do not have to import and trust all the intermediate levels and endpoint certificate in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers do not present the Chain of Trust to the DS8000 devices; therefore, ensure that the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server certificate or certificate-signing IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server certificate is trusted at the DS8000 endpoint.

Note: The certificate that is described here is the network communication certificate, which should not be confused with the certificate that is created for the DAR or TCT encryption.

Device authentication for IBM Proprietary Protocol

A DS8000 server can communicate with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager by using the IBM Proprietary Protocol over TLS communication channels. In IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, you can configure policy to have step-up authentication.

The following policy options are available for new DS8000 devices (see Figure 5-157).

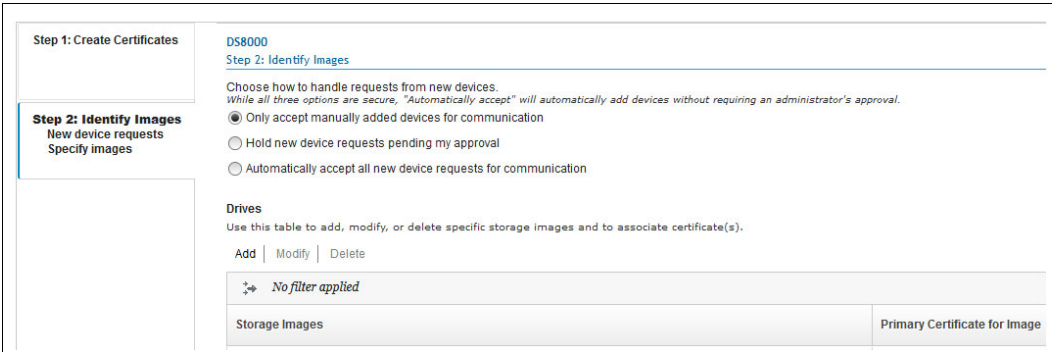


Figure 5-157 IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager device policies

- Only accept manually added devices for communication

This option is the default option, and it is the most secure option. When this option is configured, requests from new DS8000 devices are rejected automatically, so an administrator must manually configure the devices. This process is described in 5.4.1, “Setting up IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Key management by using IBM Proprietary Protocol” on page 150.

- Hold new device requests pending my approval

This option is a secure option when requests from new DS8000 devices are added to a pending list in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. An administrator of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager can approve or reject these requests from the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager UI.

To approve or reject a pending device, complete the following steps:

- Log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager UI. You see the Pending device link in the Action Items section of Welcome page (Figure 5-158).

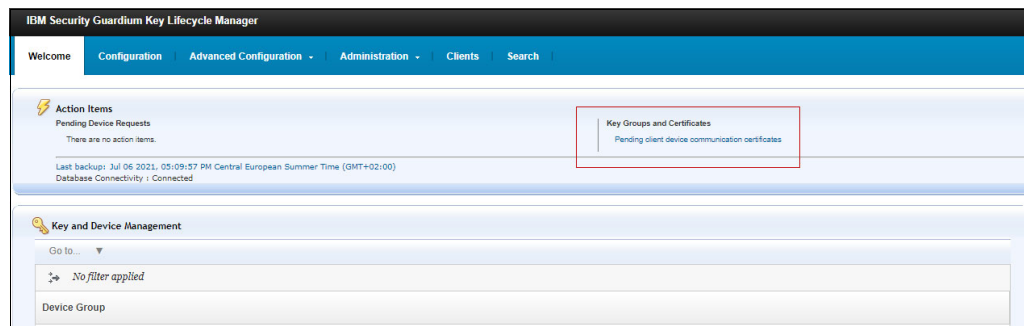


Figure 5-158 Pending Devices link on the Welcome page

- Click **Pending devices** to see a list of pending devices. Select any device and click **Accept** to approve the pending device (see Figure 5-159).

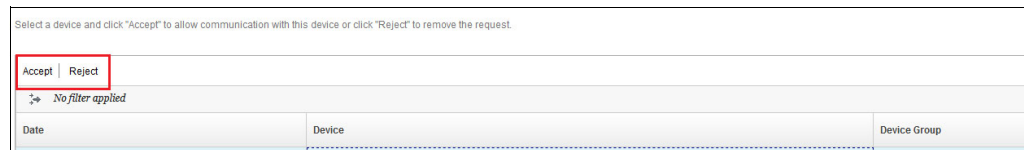


Figure 5-159 Pending devices

- Click **Accept** to approve the device (see Figure 5-160).

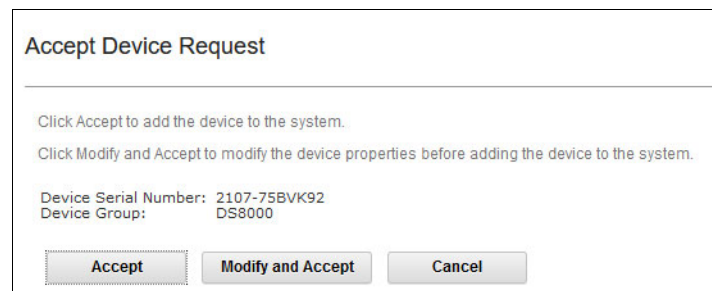


Figure 5-160 Accepting pending devices

- Automatically accept all new device requests for communication

This option is the least secure option. When this option is configured, a new device request is approved automatically.

Certificates in Transparent Cloud Tiering

Even when certificates are trusted in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager truststore, they will not be served keys until they are added to the DS8000_TCT device group. After certificates are added to the DS8000_TCT device group, any of the endpoints that are associated with those certificates can access any keys that are created in the DS8000_TCT device group. For more information, see 5.5, “Configuration for TCT encryption” on page 181.

Worldwide node name authentication in IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security

IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager composes the names of the peer-to-peer device groups from the worldwide node names (WWNNs) of the peers (endpoint devices) in the group. The device group contains the security credentials in the form of a WWNN in the Subject Alternative Name of the certificates that the endpoints use to communicate with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. For more information, see 3.8, “DS8000 endpoint encryption key management by using KMIP” on page 60.

5.5 Configuration for TCT encryption

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager creates keys to encrypt data objects that are transferred from the DS8000 to the cloud by TCT and by using the KMIP.

To use TCT encryption, you must set up the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager with a DS8000 device. After the device is configured, you can enable TCT encryption by using a DSCLI command at any time. You run this command independently from DAR encryption and without affecting access to the data.

Note: Enablement of TCT encryption in the DS8000 GUI is not supported at the time of this writing.

TCT encryption includes the following prerequisites:

- The DS8000 must be Release 8.5 or later
- IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager must be Version 3.0.0.2 or later. Use the supported IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager 4.x
- IBM Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager must run in a Multi-Master or Master-Clone with Incremental Replication environment.

Thales Vormetric DSM and Thales CipherTrust Manager are supported by TCT encryption.

5.5.1 Setting up TCT encryption

The following process is used to set up TCT encryption:

1. Export the certificate from the DS8000.
2. Transfer the certificate to the key server.
3. Import the DS8000 certificate into the key server TCT device group.
4. Configure DS8000 TCT by using CLI.

Exporting the DS8000 certificate

Most often when you set up and use TCT encryption, it is not necessary to have DAR encryption enabled. However, the Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate can be exported through the DSGUI only when DAR encryption is enabled, or while you are using the DAR encryption activation wizard. Consider the following points:

- ▶ If DAR encryption is enabled, log in to the DS8000 GUI and export the DS8000 Encryption Communication Certificate by using one of the following options:
 - Use DS CLI, as shown in Example 5-25.

Example 5-25 Exporting the certificate by using the CLI

```
dscli> managekeygrp -action exportcert -certType GEN3 -loc  
C:\Users\xxxxx\ds8k_75xxx1_gen3_cert.pem 1  
Date/Time: September 30, 2019 5:23:36 PM CEST IBM DS CLI Version: 7.9.0.491 DS:  
IBM.2107-75xxx1  
CMUC00490I managekeygrp: The certificate for key group 1 has been exported.
```

- If DAR encryption is enabled, select **Settings** → **Security** → **Data-at-rest encryption**, and then click **Export Certificate**, as shown in Figure 5-161.

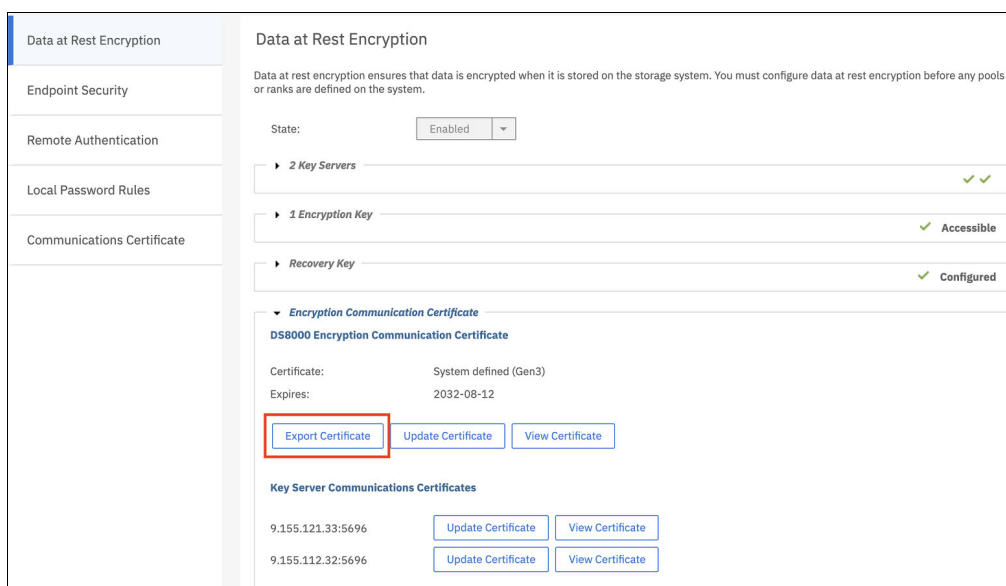


Figure 5-161 Export Certificate option

- ▶ If DAR encryption is not enabled and no logical configuration exists, log in to the DS8000 GUI and select **Settings** → **Security** → **Data-at-rest encryption**. Then, follow the wizard after you select **Enable**, as described in “DS8000 enabling data-at-rest encryption” on page 162 to enable DAR encryption.

Continue until you reach the DS8000 Certificate step as shown in Figure 5-162. Export it by clicking **Export Certificate**.

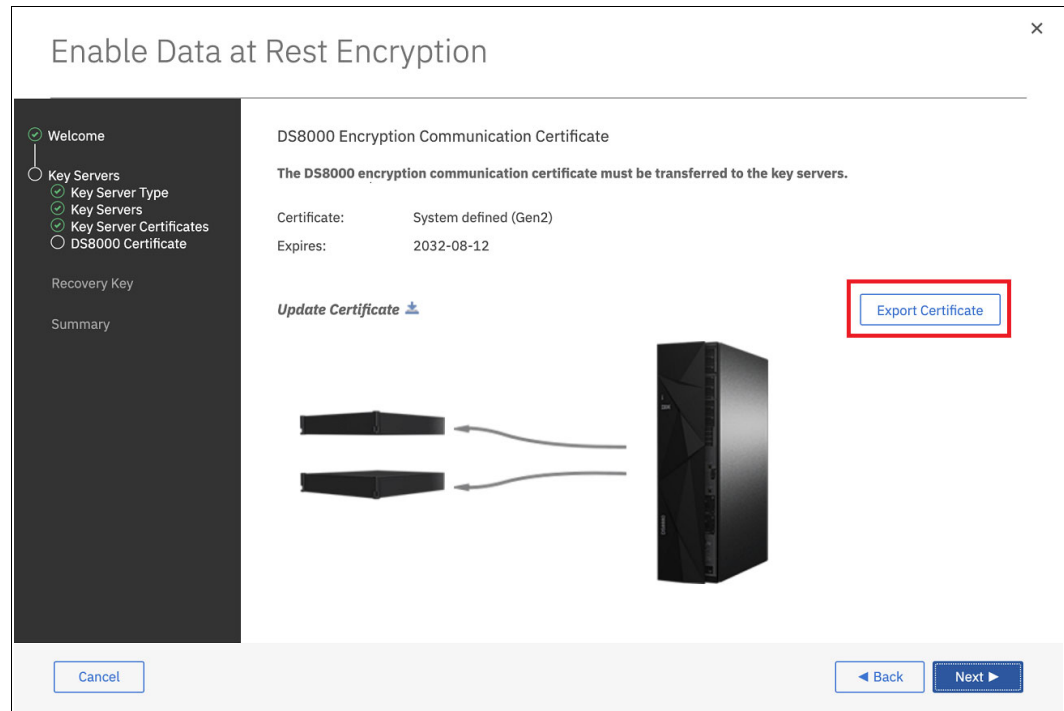


Figure 5-162 Export Certificate option

- If DAR encryption is not enabled and a logical configuration exists, you can export the certificate by using the CLI, as shown in Example 5-25 on page 182. Even if no key manager and keygroup were configured, you can export the certificate.

Transferring the certificate to the key server

Then, you must transfer the file to the primary key manager server. Example 5-26 shows running the **scp** command to transfer the certificate file and shows the target directory `/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data` on IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager where the file needs to reside. You can use the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager GUI in a later step to upload the certificate as well.

Example 5-26 Certificate transfer to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

```
[root@sklma source]# scp ds8k_75xxxx1_gen3_cert.pem
root@0.0.0.1:/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data/

ds8k_75BRX70_gen2_cert.pem 100% 1270    1.2KB/s   00:00
[root@sklma source]#
```

DS8000 TCT encryption certificate (Gen 2) import (IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager)

The exported certificate can now be imported to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Primary Master server. Complete the following steps to finish the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager configuration:

1. Log in to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager GUI and locate the device group “DS8000_TCT” in “Key and Device Management” on the left side, as shown in Figure 5-163.

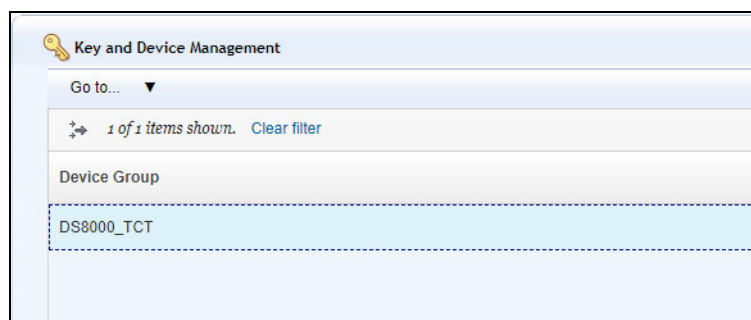


Figure 5-163 DS8000_TCT option in Key and Device Management window

2. Right-click the group **DS8000_TCT** and select **Manage keys and devices**, as shown in Figure 5-164.

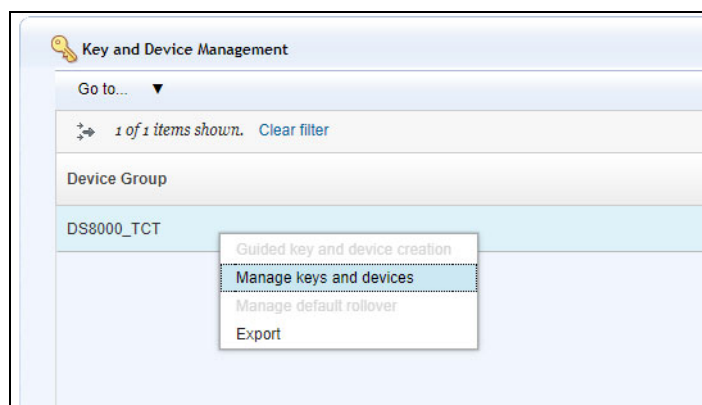


Figure 5-164 Managing keys and devices

3. The window that is shown in Figure 5-165 allows you to add or delete a certificate and the associated node name. You can also modify the node name that is associated with a certificate. Click **Add** and then select **Certificate** to import the DS8000 Encryption Communication Certificate (Gen 2).

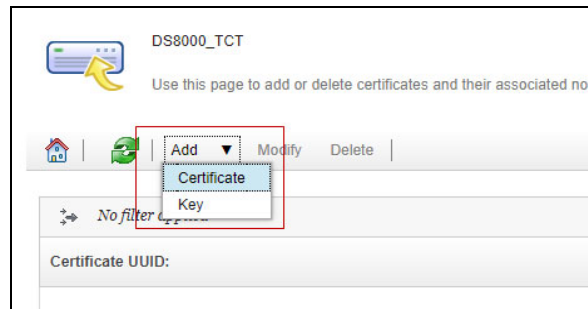


Figure 5-165 Adding a certificate

4. In the Add Certificate window, enter a unique certificate alias name. Then, browse for the certificate file that was transferred in “Exporting the DS8000 certificate” on page 182, as shown in Figure 5-166.

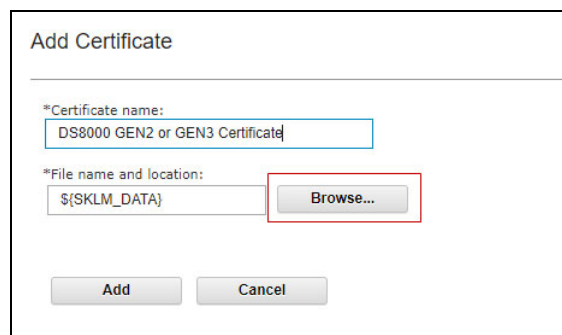


Figure 5-166 Certificate alias

5. If you did not use the default directory `/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data`, browse and select the directory where the certificate file that was transferred in an earlier step. If you did not upload it, you can do it now by clicking **Upload**, as shown in Figure 5-167.

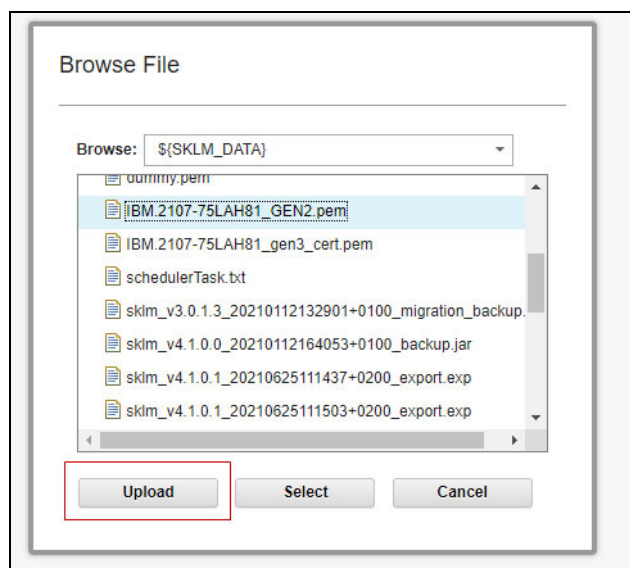


Figure 5-167 Uploading the GEN2 or GEN3 certificate

Then, highlight the certificate file, and click **Select**, as shown in Figure 5-168.

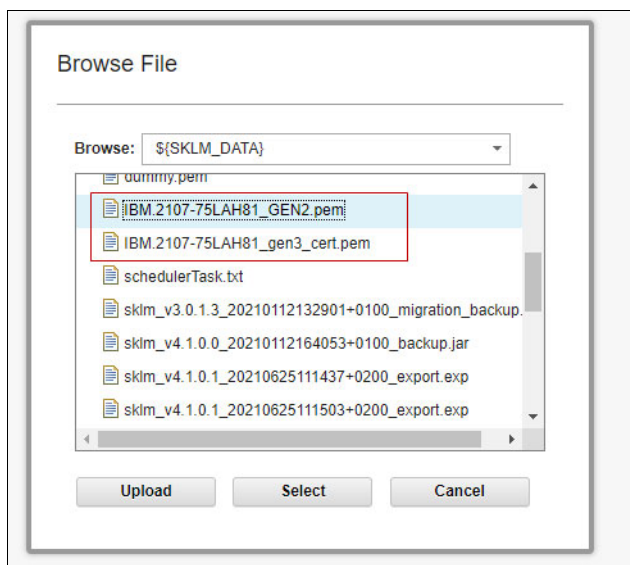
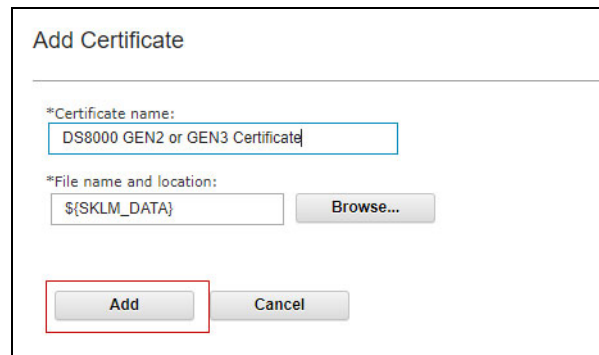


Figure 5-168 Browse File window

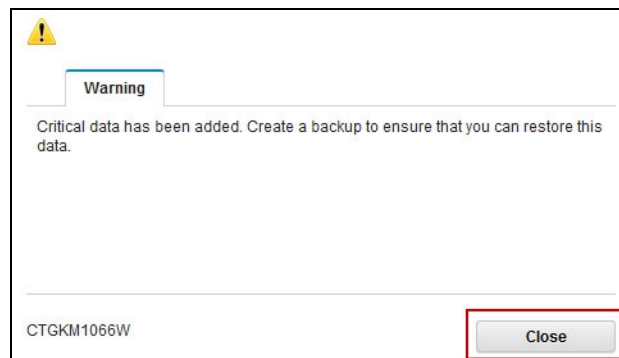
6. Select **Add** in the Add Certificate window, as shown in Figure 5-169.



The 'Add Certificate' window contains two text input fields. The first field, labeled '*Certificate name:', contains the text 'DS8000 GEN2 or GEN3 Certificate'. The second field, labeled '*File name and location:', contains the text '\${SKLM_DATA}'. To the right of the second field is a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom of the window are two buttons: 'Add' and 'Cancel'. The 'Add' button is highlighted with a red rectangular border.

Figure 5-169 Add Certificate window

7. A warning to create a backup is displayed. Click **Close** (see Figure 5-170) and create a backup now or later. For more information, see “Creating a backup” on page 92.



The warning window has a yellow warning icon in the top left corner. It features a tab labeled 'Warning'. The main text area contains the message: 'Critical data has been added. Create a backup to ensure that you can restore this data.' At the bottom left, the text 'CTGKM1066W' is displayed. At the bottom right, there is a 'Close' button, which is highlighted with a red rectangular border.

Figure 5-170 Take a backup warning window

8. Confirm that the certificate was imported successfully and appears in the list, as shown in Figure 5-171.



The 'Certificate list' window shows a table with three columns: 'Certificate UUID', 'Name', and 'Endpoint Count'. Above the table, there is a search bar with the text 'No filter applied'. The table contains one row of data, which is highlighted with a red rectangular border. The row contains the following values: 'CERTIFICATE-b376ff7-47656ba5-dc15-4c48-89c2-bdadb6c7650e' for the UUID, 'ds8880 75bn70' for the Name, and '0' for the Endpoint Count.

Certificate UUID	Name	Endpoint Count
CERTIFICATE-b376ff7-47656ba5-dc15-4c48-89c2-bdadb6c7650e	ds8880 75bn70	0

Figure 5-171 Certificate list

The key servers are now configured and synchronized. For Multi-Master setup, the synchronization is done automatically. To create the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server connection for TCT, proceed to “DS8000 CLI configuration for TCT”.

DS8000 CLI configuration for TCT

To configure the key servers with KMIP for TCT encryption, run the **lskeymgr**, **mkkeymgr**, and **managekeymgr** commands, as shown in the following steps:

1. To view the list of registered key servers, if any exist, run the **lskeymgr** command (see Example 5-27).

Example 5-27 Listing the key managers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
Date/Time: 10 October 2024 15:34:44 CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS: -
ID state  status keyprotocol addr          port type keygrp
=====
 1 active  normal KMIP          9.155.121.33 5696 DAR   1
 2 active  normal KMIP          9.155.112.32 5696 DAR   1
```

2. This example shows two key managers that are configured in the DS8000 for DAR encryption by using the KMIP. If those servers are prepared to serve keys for both types (DAR encryption and TCT encryption), the connection can be modified by using the **managekeymgr** command in Step 1. If the key server cannot be used for TCT encryption, see “Creating a TCT key server” on page 189 to create key servers.

Adding a TCT key group to a KMIP key server

Complete the following steps:

1. Run the **managekeymgr** command to modify the key servers and add encryption key group 2 for TCT, as shown in Example 5-28.

Example 5-28 Managing key managers

```
dscli> managekeymgr -action addgrp -keygrp 2 -type tct 1
CMUC00563I managekeymgr: The key group was added to the key manager successfully.

dscli> managekeymgr -action addgrp -keygrp 2 -type tct 2
CMUC00563I managekeymgr: The key group was added to the key manager successfully.
```

2. Verify the extra connections by using the **lskeymgr** command, as shown in Example 5-29. Both key servers show now type = DAR,TCT and keygrp = 1,2.

Example 5-29 Listing key managers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
ID state  status keyprotocol addr          port type      keygrp
=====
 1 active  normal KMIP          0.000.000.01 5696 DAR,TCT 1,2
 2 active  normal KMIP          0.000.000.02 5696 DAR,TCT 1,2
```

3. Configure encryption key groups for TCT encryption, as shown in Example 5-30.

Example 5-30 Creating an encryption key group

```
dscli> mkkeygrp -keyprotocol kmip -type tct 2
CMUC00358I mkkeygrp: The key server key group 2 has been created.
```

4. List the encryption key groups, as shown in Example 5-31.

Example 5-31 Listing an encryption key group

```
dscli> lskeygrp
ID state      rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate keyprotocol type name
=====
1  accessible configured 10/01/2019 10/02/2019 KMIP      DAR DAR_1
2  accessible disabled  -          10/02/2019 KMIP      TCT TCT_2
```

A TCT encryption key group contains a set of cloud server connections.

You can now configure the cloud server connection for TCT with the encryption parameters. For more information, see *IBM DS8000 Transparent Cloud Tiering: DS8000 Release 9.3*, SG24-8381.

Creating a TCT key server

Complete the following steps:

1. Run the **lskeymgr** command (see Example 5-32) to view the list of registered key servers, if any.

Example 5-32 Listing key managers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
ID state  status keyprotocol addr          port type keygrp
=====
1  active  normal IPP          0.000.000.01 441  DAR  1
2  active  normal IPP          0.000.000.02 441  DAR  1
```

The preceding example shows two key managers that are configured in the DS8000 for DAR encryption by using the IBM Proprietary Protocol.

Key managers that are configured with IBM Proprietary Protocol cannot be used for TCT encryption. The encryption type **tct** is not supported by IBM Proprietary Protocol and TCT encryption requires the KMIP protocol. You cannot have IBM Proprietary Protocol and KMIP protocols on the same key server.

Therefore, key servers must be created.

To create key servers, use the **mkkeymgr** command, as shown in Example 5-33 on page 190.

Specify the following values:

- Server certificate (**-cert**) that was exported in “Exporting the TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 91
- Protocol (**-keyprotocol**) **KMIP**
- Servers IP address or hostname (**-addr**)
- Encryption type (**-type**) **tct**
- Encryption key group (**keygrp**) **2**
- New key server ID

Example 5-33 Creating key servers

```
dscli> mkkeymgr -cert
/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data/ssl_kmip_server_cert.cer
-keyprotocol KMIP -addr 0.000.000.10 -type tct -keygrp 2 10
CMUC00354I mkkeymgr: The key server 10 has been created.

dscli> mkkeymgr -cert
/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data/ssl_kmip_server_cert.cer
-keyprotocol KMIP -addr 0.000.000.11 -type tct -keygrp 2 11
CMUC00354I mkkeymgr: The key server 11 has been created.
```

Note: The **-cert** parameter specifies the location of the certificate file that was exported earlier. This certificate is used as a trust anchor to authenticate the certificate of the specified key server when a TLS security protocol is used. If the parameter is not specified, only non-TLS protocols that do not require a trust anchor certificate are allowed. The certificate is in the PEM or DER format. The TLS security protocol is required when you use KMIP.

2. Verify the new connections by using the **lskeymgr** command, as shown in Example 5-34. The key servers 1 and 2 that use IBM Proprietary Protocol by way of port 441 still show **type = DAR** and **keygrp = 1**. However, the new key servers 10 and 11 that use KMIP by way of port 5696 show **type = TCT** and **keygrp = 2**.

Example 5-34 Listing all key servers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
ID  state  status keyprotocol addr          port type keygrp
=====
  1  active  normal IPP          0.000.000.01 441  DAR   1
  2  active  normal IPP          0.000.000.02 441  DAR   1
 10  active  normal KMIP          0.000.000.10 5696 TCT   2
 11  active  normal KMIP          0.000.000.11 5696 TCT   2
```

3. Configure encryption key groups for TCT encryption, as shown in Example 5-35.

Example 5-35 Creating encryption key group

```
dscli> mkkeygrp -keyprotocol kmip -type tct 2
CMUC00358I mkkeygrp: The key server key group 2 has been created.
```

4. List encryption key groups, as shown in Example 5-36.

Example 5-36 Listing encryption key group

```
dscli> lskeygrp
ID  state      rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate keyprotocol type name
=====
  1  accessible configured 10/01/2024 10/02/2024 DAR      DAR DAR_1
  2  accessible disabled  -          10/02/2024 KMIP      TCT TCT_2
```

A TCT encryption key group contains a set of cloud server connections.

You can now configure the cloud server connection for TCT with the encryption parameters. For more information, see *IBM DS8000 Transparent Cloud Tiering: DS8000 Release 9.3*, SG24-8381.

5.6 IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security configuration

This section provides a brief overview of the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security encryption setup on the target DS8000 (IBM DS8A00 or IBM DS8900F).

Tip: For more information about the setup that is required on the Z central processor complex (CPC) (initiator), see *IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for IBM DS8900F and IBM Z*, SG24-8455.

5.6.1 DS8000 GUI configuration for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security

Enabling IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security with the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager by using KMIP requires a Multi-Master configuration of the key server. The key servers do not require any more configuration to serve keys to the DS8900F, assuming that you exported the DS8000 certificates to the key servers.

To configure the DS8000, complete the following steps:

1. Log on to the DS8000 GUI as a user with Administrator role to enable the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security. From the DS8000 GUI Welcome window, click **Settings** and then, **Security**, as shown in Figure 5-172.

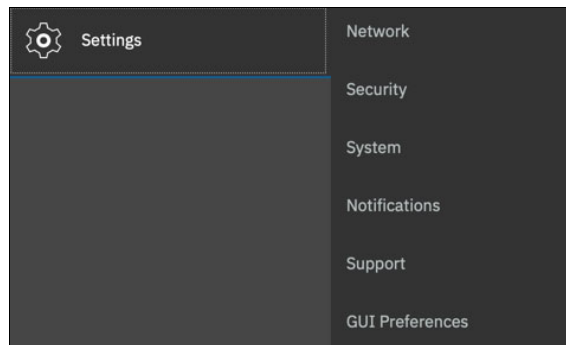


Figure 5-172 Go to the Encryption window

2. The encryption wizard is shown in Figure 5-173. This wizard is started only when you enable the IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for the first time. Click **Configure IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security** to continue.

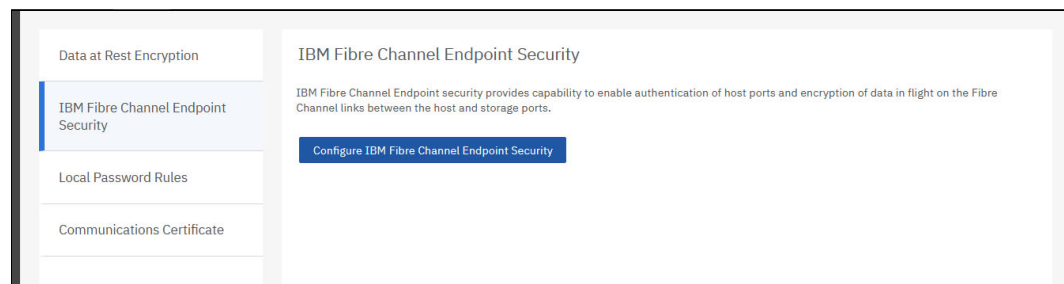


Figure 5-173 Configure Endpoint Security option

3. The Welcome window opens with the basic information that is related to the prerequisites for the next steps, such as at least two key servers should be already configured and online; that is, connected to the DS8000 (see Figure 5-174). Click **Next** to continue.

Configure Endpoint Security

Welcome

This wizard will guide you through the endpoint security setup for the DS8000 storage system.

Prerequisites

- Key servers are online and accessible.
- For KMIP compatible key servers: SSL certificate must be available.

Cancel Back Next

Figure 5-174 Welcome window

4. Configure the key servers. The DS8000 supports up to four key servers. In Figure 5-175, two key servers are defined. You can add up to four or remove key servers by clicking the + or - sign next to each key server field. Specify the host address (IP address or fully qualified hostname of the key server). If DAR or TCT encryption is set up, select **Use existing key servers from TCT encryption** at the bottom of the window. Click **Next**.

Configure Endpoint Security

Key Servers

Define the IP address or host name of the KMIP key servers

Host Name	Port
	5696
	5696 +

[Use existing key servers from TCT encryption.](#)

? Cancel Back Next

Figure 5-175 Defining key servers

- Each key server connection is tested. The message that is shown in Figure 5-176 is displayed if all the key servers that you defined are accessible. Click **OK**.

Note: The ports can also be changed and must match the setting on the IBM Security Guardium Lifecycle Manager key server. The default TLS port is 5696.

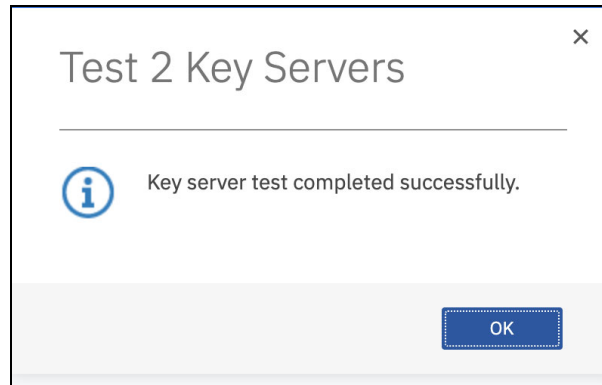


Figure 5-176 Test Key Servers window

- Transfer the SSL certificates from the key servers to the DS8000, as shown in Figure 5-177. Exporting the SSL certificates is described in “Exporting the TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 91 for IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager. If DAR or TCT encryption is set up, select **Use existing certificates from TCT encryption** at the bottom of the window.

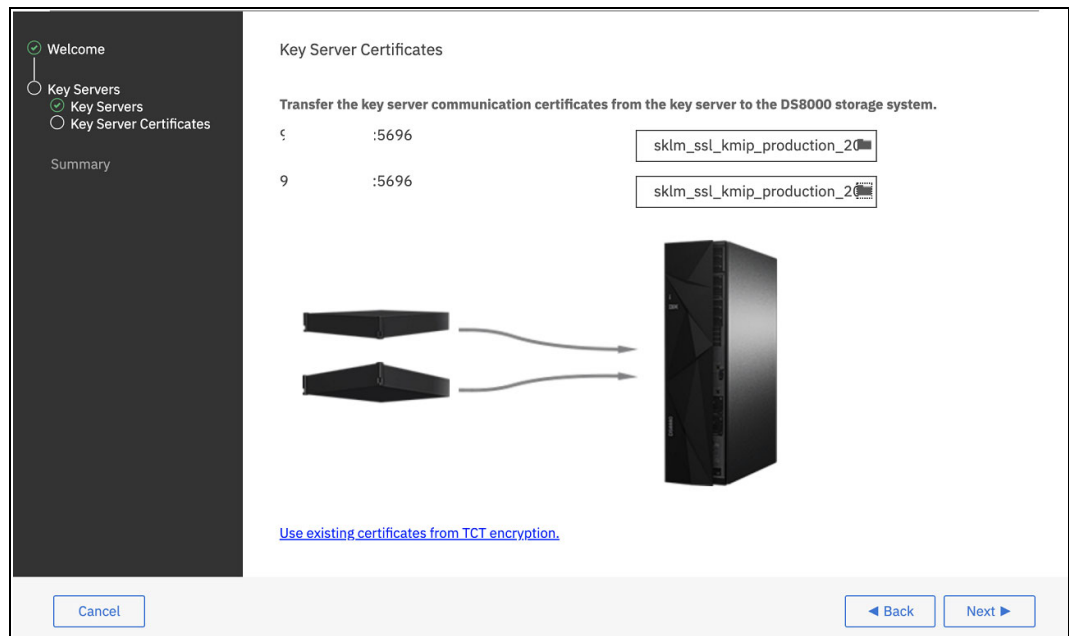


Figure 5-177 Transferring SSL certificates to DS8000

- Encryption enablement tasks take approximately 1 minute. Expand the **View more details** section to see the task list. The overall progress is displayed as a percentage. When the completed message displays, click **Close**.

In the Encryption window (see Figure 5-178), the encryption state is Enabled and the encryption key is Accessible. By expanding each section, you get more information.

The overall process to enable encryption on a DS8000 by using the GUI interface is simple. It takes approximately 5 minutes to complete these steps.

Now, configure the IBM Z. For more information, see *IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for IBM DS8900F and IBM Z*, SG24-8455.

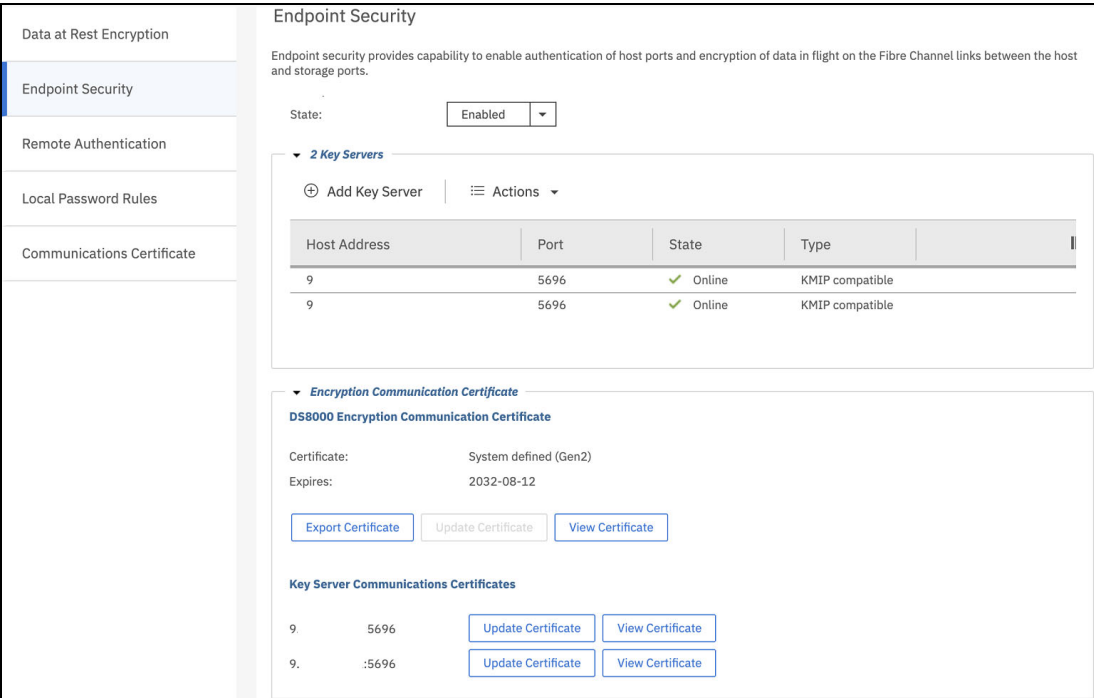


Figure 5-178 Encryption is enabled and accessible

5.6.2 DS8000 CLI configuration for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security

If you have a KMIP key group that is configured for DAR or TCT, you can add a key group for IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for the configured key servers.

Complete the following steps:

1. Check for current key managers, as shown in Example 5-37.

Example 5-37 Listing key managers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
ID  state  status keyprotocol addr          port type keygrp
=====
10 active normal KMIP      0.000.000.01 5696 DAR   1
11 active normal KMIP      0.000.000.02 5696 DAR   1
```

2. Add Endpoint key group 2 to each key manager, which is identified by ID 10 and 11, as shown in Example 5-38.

Example 5-38 Adding key group 2

```
dscli> managekeymgr -action addgrp -keygrp 2 -type endpoint 10
CMUC00563I managekeymgr: The key group was added to the key manager
successfully.
dscli> managekeymgr -action addgrp -keygrp 2 -type endpoint 11
CMUC00563I managekeymgr: The key group was added to the key manager
successfully.
```

3. Create key group 2, as shown in Example 5-39.

Example 5-39 Creating an IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security key group

```
dscli> mkkeygrp -keyprotocol kmip -type endpoint 2
CMUC00358I mkkeygrp: The key server key group 2 has been created.
```

4. Verify the key managers and see that Endpoint was added, as shown in Example 5-40.

Example 5-40 Verifying key managers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
ID state status keyprotocol addr port type keygrp
=====
```

10	active	normal	KMIP	0.000.000.01	5696	DAR,ENDPOINT	1,2
11	active	normal	KMIP	0.000.000.02	5696	DAR,ENDPOINT	1,2

If no KMIP key manager exists, create a key manager and key group by completing the following steps:

1. Create the key managers, as shown in Example 5-41.

Example 5-41 Creating endpoint key managers

```
dscli> mkkeymgr -cert C:\Users\xxx\sklm_ssl_kmip_production_2019.cer
-keyprotocol KMIP -addr 0.000.000.01 -type endpoint -keygrp 2 10
CMUC00354I mkkeymgr: The key server 10 has been created.
dscli> mkkeymgr -cert C:\Users\xxx\sklm_ssl_kmip_production_2019.cer
-keyprotocol KMIP -addr 0.000.000.02 -type endpoint -keygrp 2 11
CMUC00354I mkkeymgr: The key server 11 has been created.
```

2. Create the key group, as shown in Example 5-42.

Example 5-42 Creating a key group

```
dscli> mkkeygrp -keyprotocol kmip -type endpoint 2
CMUC00358I mkkeygrp: The key server key group 2 has been created.
```

3. Verify the key managers, as shown in Example 5-43.

Example 5-43 Verifying key managers

```
dscli> lskeymgr
ID state status keyprotocol addr port type keygrp
=====
```

10	active	normal	KMIP	0.000.000.01	5696	ENDPOINT	2
11	active	normal	KMIP	0.000.000.02	5696	ENDPOINT	2

5.7 Data-at-rest encryption and Copy Services functions

Copy Services operations are not affected by encrypting drives. The encryption applies only to DAR, which is the data that is physically written to the disk drives. If you are doing remote replication of the encrypted data, when the data is *read* from the source disk, it is decrypted, and sent across the network link. If the target storage system is also set up for encryption, when the data is written to disk at the target site, it is encrypted again. There is no relationship between the encryption that is done at the source and the encryption at the target. They are independent operations with their own sets of keys and potentially even their own key managers, depending on how the environment is configured.

This encryption strategy also holds true for IBM FlashCopy®. Although this copy is a T0 copy of data that resides only with the DS8000, when the source data is read and rewritten to the FlashCopy target volume, it is decrypted at *read* and re-encrypted at *write*. The encryption is not intrusive in terms of performance because it is all done by the drives.

5.8 NIST SP 800-131a requirements for key servers

If one or more key servers are configured on the DS8000, the Hardware Management Console (HMC) periodically connects to these servers to verify accessibility. When an encryption key group or recovery key (RK) is configured, the HMC also initiates secure connections to request key services and regularly validates that active data keys (DKs) remain valid across all configured key servers.

Key server communication uses IBM Proprietary Protocol, which is secured by digital certificates for authentication and data protection. To enhance security, TLS protocols can be layered on top of the proprietary protocol. TLS 1.2 and TLS 1.3 are supported, and enabling TLS is considered a best practice for securing key server connections between the HMC and the key servers. IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager (SGKLM) 4.2 and later includes NIST SP 800-131a-compliant Java levels to meet these requirements.

Periodic key server monitoring is handled by the DS/NI server on the HMC, while key service requests and DK validation are managed by the key client within the storage facility image, communicating through the DS/NI server.

5.9 Migrating certificates

Note: A Gen 2 certificate is set to the DS8000 Release 8.1 in the factory. Thus, a migration from Gen 1 to Gen 2 is not possible or required. Only machines that were upgraded from a previous level of code can be migrated. Gen 2 and Gen 3 certificates are delivered with all DS8900F: Although Gen 2 is active, Gen 3 is dormant.

Note: The encryption certificate may be updated to a system-defined or customer-defined certificate. The encryption key group must be configured and accessible using the factory default certificate before it can be updated.

5.9.1 Migrating from a Gen 2 to a Gen 3 certificate for encryption

To migrate from Gen 2 to Gen 3 certificate, complete the following steps:

1. Verify the version of the certificate that is being used for data encryption. Example 5-44 shows how to verify which certificate (Gen 2 or Gen 3) that the DS8000 is using.

Example 5-44 Determining which certificate the DS8000 uses for data encryption

```
dscli> showkeygrp 1
ID                               1
numranks                        4
numpools                        4
state                           accessible
reckeystate                     configured
reckeydate                      10/10/2019 14:48:09 CEST
datakeydate                     10/15/2019 11:45:50 CEST
grpstatus                       normal
mgrstatus                       normal
label                           -
label2                           -
certificate                     GEN2
certificate not valid before    08/22/2019 21:55:02 CEST
certificate not valid after     08/12/2032 02:36:55 CEST
certificate issuer               0=ibmDisk,C=US
certificate subject
CN=2107-75KMW81,0=ibmDisk,C=US,uid=DS8K-2107-75KMW81
endpoint enabled                Yes
certificate install state       Not Imported
pending cert valid not before  -
pending cert valid not after   -
pending cert issuer             -
pending cert subject            -
pending cert endpoint enabled   -
uuid                           KEY-4d74e7f-4cbabdc7-2d25-465f-b4c5-d065c2e8a097
keyprotocol                     KMIP
type                            DAR
name
DAR_1
```

2. Export the Gen 3 certificate from the DS8900F by using a GUI or CLI:

- Use the DS CLI, as shown in Example 5-45.

Example 5-45 Export certificate with CLI

```
dscli> managekeygrp -action exportcert -certType GEN3 -loc CMUC00490I managekeygrp:  
The certificate for key group 1 has been exported.
```

- Select **Settings** → **Security** → **Data-at-rest encryption**, and then click **Export Certificate**, as shown in Figure 5-179.

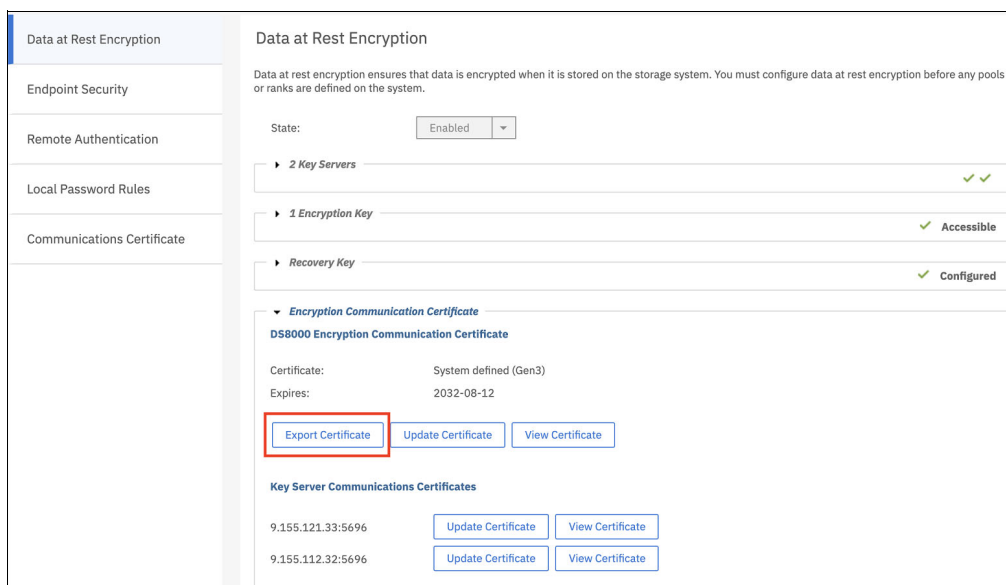


Figure 5-179 Export Certificate

3. Transfer the file to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager server.

Note: You need a method to transfer the certificate file that you exported from the DS8900F to the file system of the server on which IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager runs.

You also need a UID that includes sufficient access to add a file to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager import directory. On UNIX systems, this directory defaults to: /opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data.

Example 5-46 shows the use of the **scp** command to transfer the certificate file and the target directory /opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data on IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager where the file must reside. You can use the GUI to upload the certificate in a later step.

Example 5-46 Certificate transfer to IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager

```
[root@sklma source]# scp ds8k_75xxx1_gen3_cert.pem  
root@0.0.0.1:/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServer/products/sklm/data/ds8k_75BRX70_gen2_  
cert.pem 100% 1270    1.2 KBps    00:00
```

4. Import the Gen 3 certificate into the Client Device Certificates. Select **Advanced Configuration - Client Device Certificates**, as shown in Figure 5-180.



Figure 5-180 Client Device Certificates option

From the table header, click **Import**, as shown in Figure 5-181.

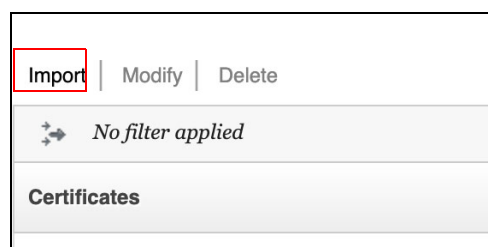


Figure 5-181 Importing a certificate

5. Enter a unique certificate name that you can recognize easily; for example, by including the DS8900F serial number. If you did not transfer the certificate yet, you can upload it now.

In the Import dialogue, select **Browse** → **Upload** and upload the certificate, as shown in Figure 5-182.

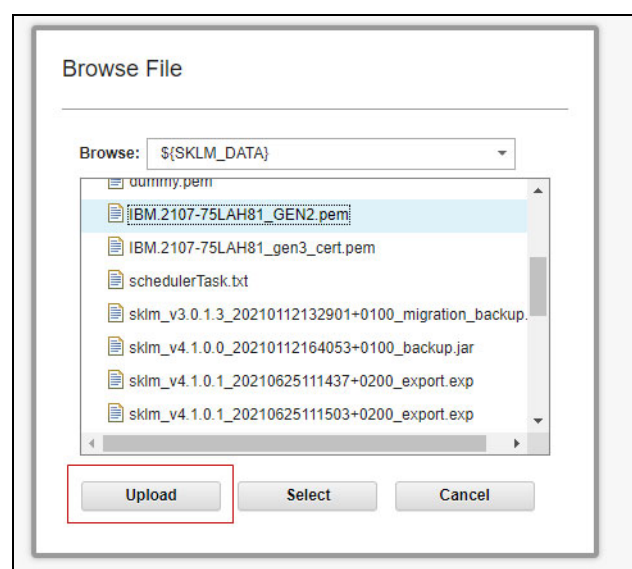
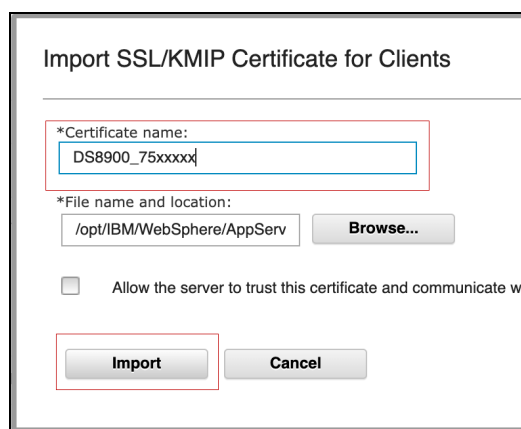


Figure 5-182 Uploading a certificate

6. Click **Browse** and locate the certificate that you copied or uploaded to the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager import directory. Finish the import process by clicking **Import** (see Figure 5-183).



The dialog box is titled "Import SSL/KMIP Certificate for Clients". It contains two main sections. The first section, labeled "*Certificate name:", has a text input field containing "DS8900_75xxxx" and a red rectangular highlight around it. The second section, labeled "*File name and location:", has a text input field containing "/opt/IBM/WebSphere/AppServ" and a "Browse..." button. Below these sections is a checkbox labeled "Allow the server to trust this certificate and communicate w". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Import" and "Cancel", with a red rectangular highlight around the "Import" button.

Figure 5-183 Importing certificate details

7. If TCT is activated, update TCT device group by completing the following steps:
 - a. In the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager welcome window, select **DS8000-TCT** → **Manage keys and devices**, as shown in Figure 5-184.

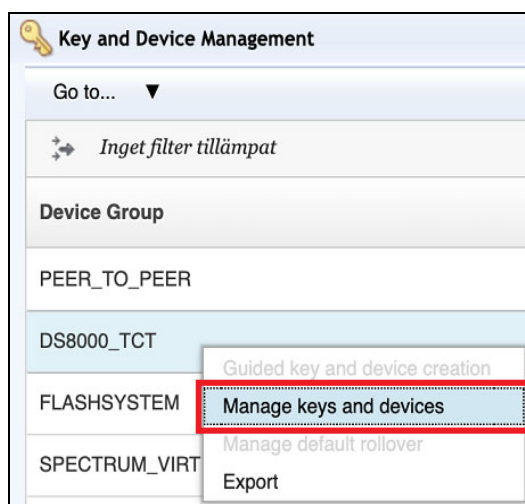


Figure 5-184 Selecting the Manage keys and devices option

- b. Select **Add** and then click **Certificate**.

- c. Select **Browse**, select the certificate, and then, **Select**. Click **Add**, as shown in Figure 5-185. Gen 3 certificate is now added to the DS8000 TCT Device Group.

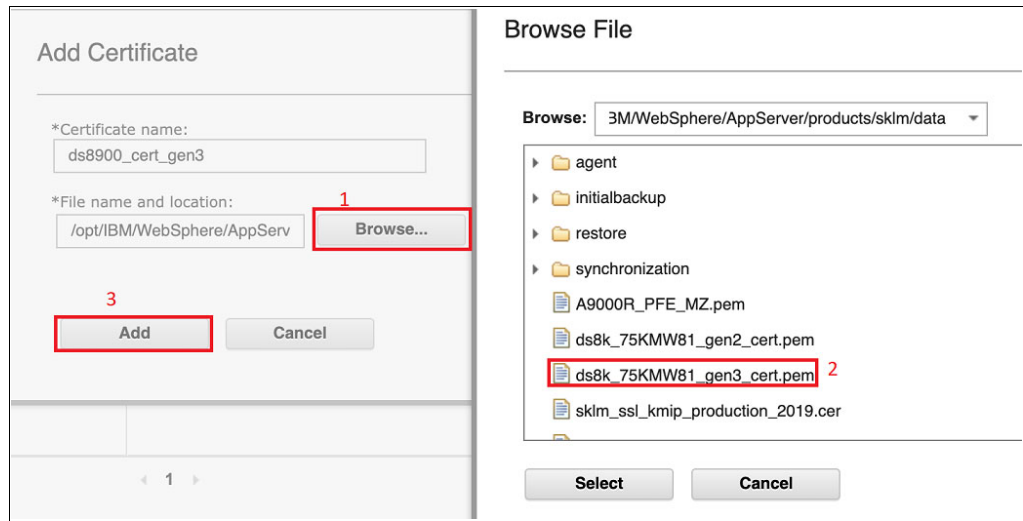


Figure 5-185 Add Certificate window

8. If IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security is activated, update the diagnostic device group and all peer-to-peer groups in IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

Complete the following steps:

- a. In the welcome tab of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager, filter for the DS8000 WWNN in the Key and Device Management section.

The DS8000 WWNN appears in at least two peer-to-peer device groups. One group is the diagnostic device group with the DS8000 WWNN repeated twice. The others are the IBM Z CPC - DS8000 association device groups whose names consist of the WWNN of the IBM Z CPC (as owner) and the WWNN of the DS8000 (as partner). One device group exists for each IBM Z and DS8000 pairing.

- b. Start with the z/DS8000 device groups. Highlight a group, right-click, and select **Manage Keys and Devices**, as shown in Figure 5-186.

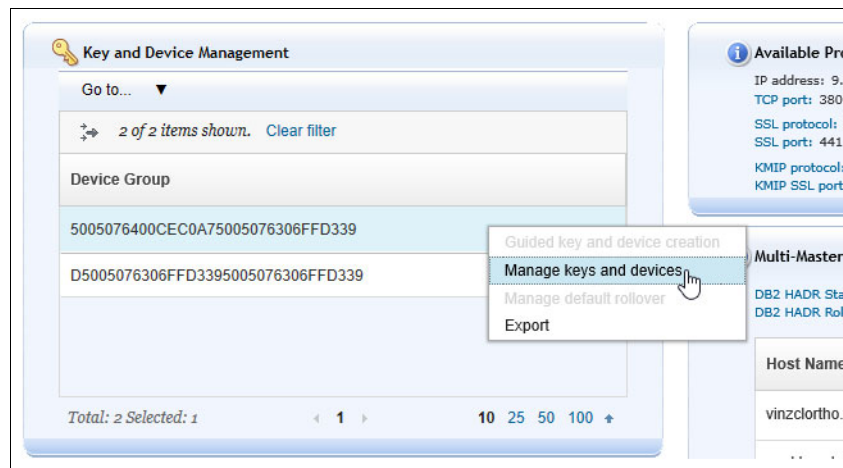


Figure 5-186 Selecting the Manage keys and devices option

- c. In the window, highlight the second item, which is the Partner device type, right click, and select **Modify**, as shown in Figure 5-187.

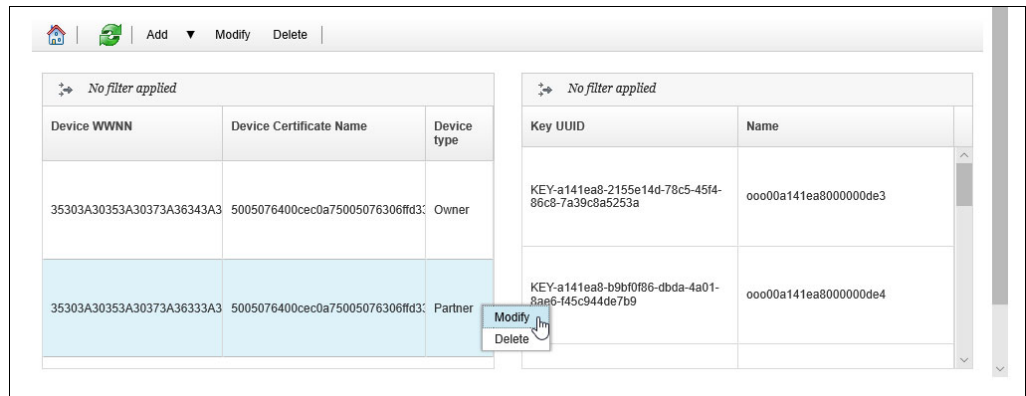


Figure 5-187 Selecting the Modify device group option

- d. Browse for the new DS8900F certificate that you imported and click **Modify** (see Figure 5-188).

Figure 5-188 Modify Device Certificate window

Repeat these steps for all device groups to which the DS8000 belongs.

- e. In the Welcome window, filter for the DS8000 WWNN again, and highlight the diagnostic device group whose name begins with the letter “D” followed by the DS8000 WWNN repeated twice. Right-click and select **Manage Keys and Devices**.

For this group, modify the owner and partner. For each, right-click and modify the certificate.

9. Upgrade the certificate on the DS8000.

If CLI is used, run the **managekeygrp** command, as shown in Example 5-47, to change from the Gen 2 to Gen 3 certificate on the DS8000.

Example 5-47 Updating the certificate from Gen 2 to Gen 3 on the DS8000

```
dscli> managekeygrp -action updatecert -certType GEN3 -key data 1
CMUC00472I managekeygrp: The certificate for key group 1 has been updated.
```

Run the **showkeygrp 1** command to verify that the Gen 3 certificate is now being used for data encryption (see Example 5-48).

Example 5-48 Verifying that the certificate was updated from Gen 2 to Gen 3

```
dscli> showkeygrp 1
ID                                1
numranks                         4
numpools                        4
state                           accessible
reckeystate                      configured
reckeydate                      10/10/2019 14:48:09 CEST
datakeydate                     10/15/2019 18:19:51 CEST
grpstatus                       normal
mgrstatus                       normal
label                           -
label2                          -
certificate                      GEN3
certificate not valid before     08/22/2019 21:55:04 CEST
certificate not valid after      08/12/2032 02:36:55 CEST
certificate issuer               CN=IBM Disk Intermediate
CA,OU=Storage,O=IBM,ST=Arizona,C=US
certificate subject              CN=2107-75xxxx1,O=ibmDisk,C=US,uid=DS8K-2107-75xxxx1
endpoint enabled                 Yes
certificate install state        Not Imported
pending cert valid not before   -
pending cert valid not after    -
pending cert issuer              -
pending cert subject             -
pending cert endpoint enabled    -
uuid                            KEY-4d74e7f-ba1db885-9ca3-49a7-b33c-94454a57eb3e
keyprotocol                     KMIP
type                            DAR
name                            DAR_1
```

If the DS GUI is used, complete the following steps:

- a. In the DS8000 GUI Welcome window, click **Settings**, then **Security**, and then **Data-at-rest**.

The System defined (Gen 2) certificate is listed. Select **Update Certificate**, as shown in Figure 5-189.

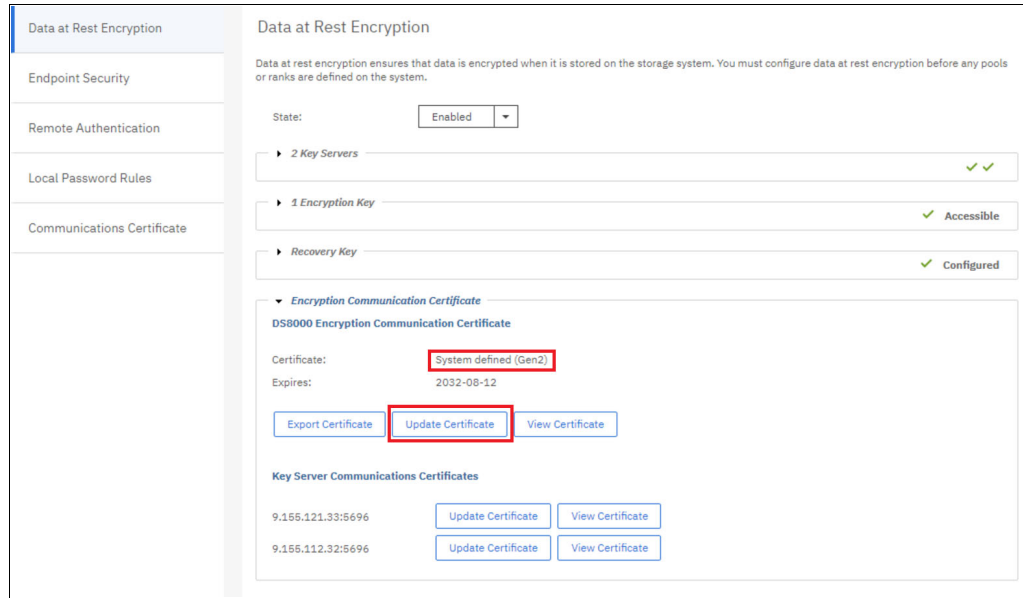


Figure 5-189 Update Certificate option

- b. Select **System Defined (Gen3)** and **Update** (see Figure 5-190).

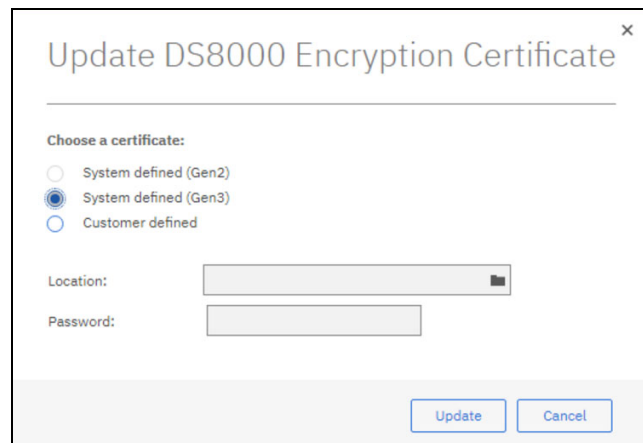


Figure 5-190 Update DS8000 Encryption Certificate window

If the SSL certificate was updated from the key server and the data encryption certificate was updated to Gen 3, the DS8000 encryption configuration is now compliant with NIST SP 800-131a.

5.10 Using a custom-generated Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate

A custom Gen 2 or Gen 3 certificate can be used for communication between the encryption key servers (typically IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager) and the storage system. You can update to a custom-defined certificate through the DS GUI or the DS CLI.

Note: If the current DS8000 encryption certificate is Gen 1, before you update to a customer-defined certificate, ensure that the CA-signed root certificate is installed on each key server. Encryption certificates must be digitally signed by a CA that is designated as a trusted root CA.

After you update a DS8000 encryption certificate to a customer-defined certificate, you can change the certificate back to Gen 2, but *not* Gen 1.

5.10.1 Configuring a custom certificate by using the DS GUI

Update the DS8000 encryption certificate with a custom certificate by using one of the following options:

- The encryption enablement wizard when encryption is not enabled.

Click **Settings** → **Security** → **Encryption**. Then, select **Enable Encryption** to start the wizard (see Figure 5-191).

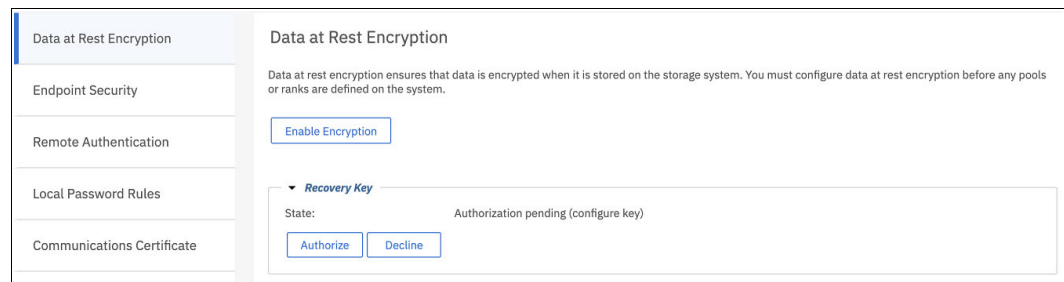


Figure 5-191 Enabling encryption

- Update Certificate on the Encryption Settings page when encryption is configured:
 - a. To update the certificate, on the DS GUI home page select **Settings** → **Security** → **Encryption**. The Encryption window is shown in Figure 5-192.

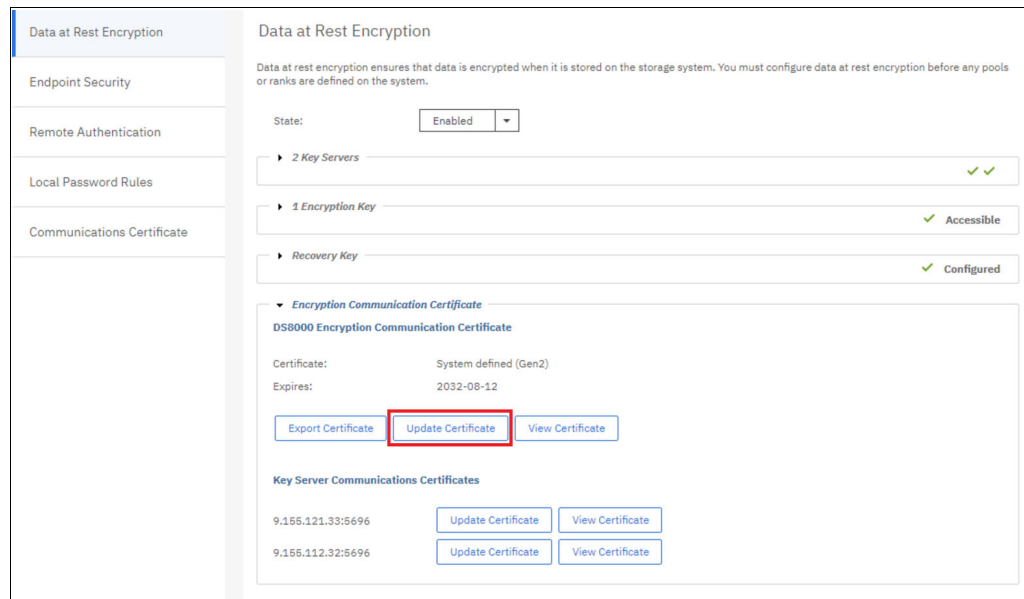


Figure 5-192 Settings Encryption window

- b. Click **View Certificate** to view the DS8000 Encryption Certificate. Click **Update Certificate**. The Update DS8000 Encryption Certificate window opens (see Figure 5-193).

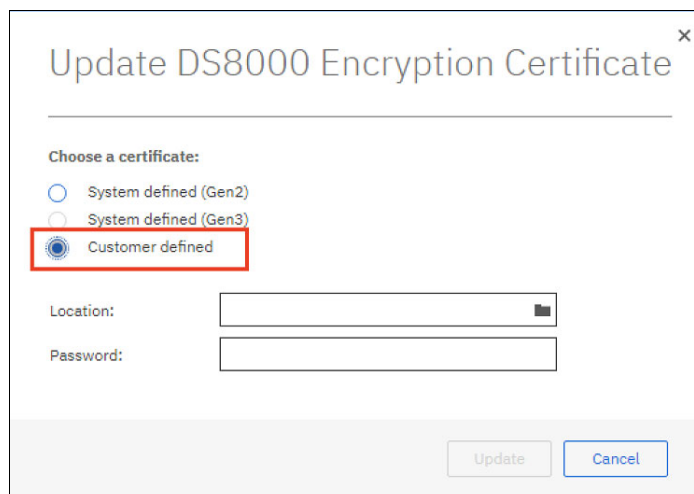


Figure 5-193 Encryption Settings Update Certificate

- c. Click the **Customer defined** option In the Update DS8000 Encryption Certificate window. Select the Customer that is defined. Browse for the certificate location and enter a password for the certificate. Click **Update** to update the certificate.

Note: The maximum length of a customer-generated machine password is 128 characters. An example of a file name for a customer-generated file name is 2107-75YZ123.mfg or 2107-75YZ123.p12 and the password is XyZABcPQRstu.

5.10.2 Configuring a custom certificate by using DS CLI

A custom-defined certificate can be specified by using **managekeygrp**, as shown in the following examples:

- **managekeygrp -action importcert -loc location -pw password encryption_group_ID** (see Example 5-49).

Example 5-49 Importing a custom certificate

```
dscli> managekeygrp -action importcert -loc /home/hscroot/rashm/da6.p12 -pw  
blah 1  
CMUC00489I managekeygrp: The certificate for encryption key group 1 has been  
imported.
```

- **managekeygrp -action updatecert -certType customer -key data encryption_group_ID** (see Example 5-50).

Example 5-50 Updating a custom certificate

```
dscli> managekeygrp -action updatecert -certType CUSTOMER -key data 1  
CMUC00472I managekeygrp: The certificate for encryption key group 1 has been  
updated.
```

Note: Specify option **-certType** with **updatecert**. If you do not specify this option, the default is the IBM Gen 2 option. Parameter **-key** is also required with the **updatecert** action.



Maintaining the IBM DS8000 encryption environment

This chapter provides information about the maintenance and use of your IBM DS8000 encryption environment. It focuses on data-at-rest (DAR) encryption with IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager.

Note: This chapter applies to DAR encryption only. Some figures in this chapter are based on former versions of IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and the DS8000 GUI, but the processes that are described are still valid.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 6.1, “Rekeying the data key for data-at-rest encryption” on page 210
- ▶ 6.2, “Recovery key usage and maintenance” on page 217
- ▶ 6.3, “Recovery key state summary” on page 234.

Important: For more information about maintaining the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager environment, see [IBM Documentation](#).

In particular, pay attention to the backup tasks. Failure to back up your keystore and other critical data correctly can result in the unrecoverable loss of all access to your encrypted data. Do not encrypt your backup file or store a backup file on an encrypting device.

Failure to back up data might also result in the inconsistency of the key manager and potential data loss on the storage device.

6.1 Rekeying the data key for data-at-rest encryption

The process of rekeying the data key (DK) depends on the communication protocol (IBM Proprietary Protocol or Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP)) between IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager and the DS8000.

It is also possible to rekey the DK when Local Key Management is used, as described “Rekey Data Key” on page 245.

6.1.1 Rekeying the data key when the IBM Proprietary Protocol is used

The Rekey Data Key option is available on the DS8000. You can use this option with the Storage Administrator role to rekey the DK by changing the DK label. A client might want to use this function to change periodically the DK.

The following procedure describes how to:

- ▶ Define a new certificate in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers.
- ▶ Rekey the DK labels in the DS8000.

Defining a new key label or certificate in the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers

To create a certificate, log in to the Primary/Master IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server, and complete the following steps:

1. Highlight **DS8000** under Device Group in the Key and Device Management page, as shown in Figure 6-1.

Important: Use the predefined DS8000 Device Group. The use of custom-defined device groups is *not* supported.

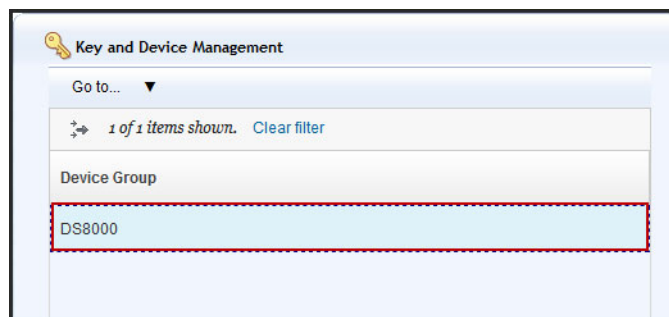


Figure 6-1 Key and Device Management window

2. Right-click **DS8000** and select **Manage keys and devices**, as shown in Figure 6-2 on page 211.

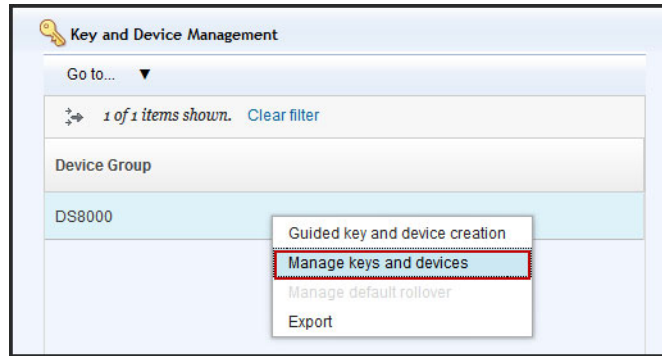


Figure 6-2 Managing keys and devices

The certificate that is in use is displayed on the left side. On the right side, the association to the Storage Image is indicated, as shown in Figure 6-3.

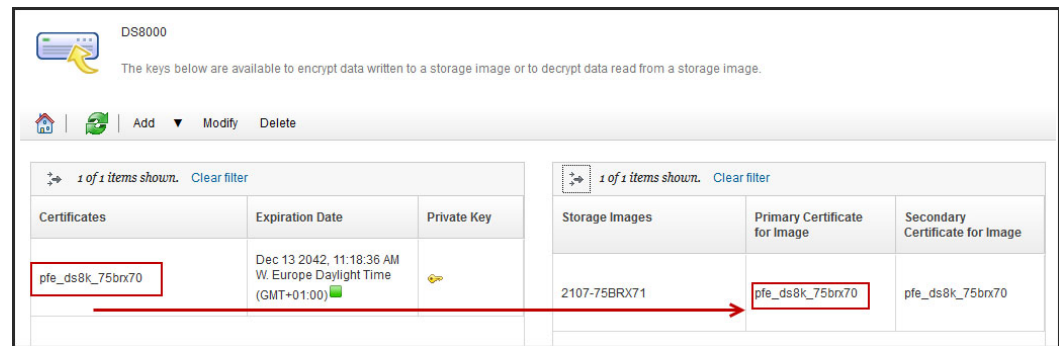


Figure 6-3 DS8000 devices and certificates

3. Select **Add** → **Certificate** to create a certificate, as shown in Figure 6-4.

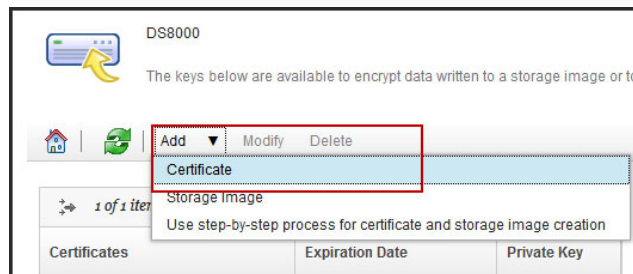


Figure 6-4 Adding a certificate

4. Create a self-signed certificate or Request certificate from a third-party provider, as explained in “Creating an TLS/KMIP server certificate” on page 84.

The new certificate appears in the list, as shown in Figure 6-5.

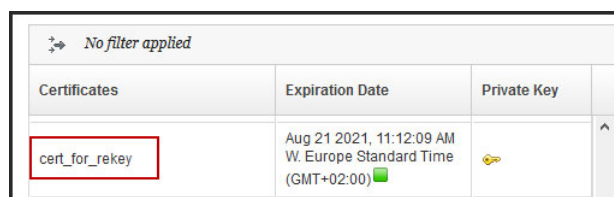
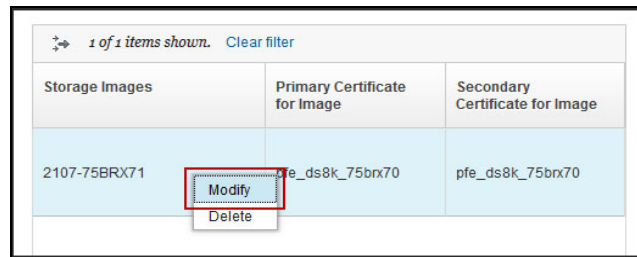


Figure 6-5 New certificate

- Highlight the Storage Image to be rekeyed on the right side, right-click, and select **Modify**, as shown in Figure 6-6.

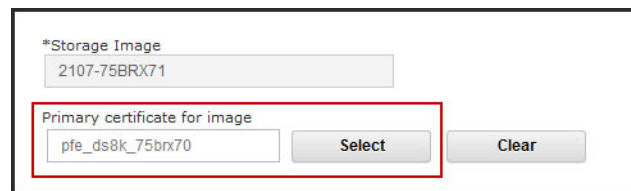


Storage Images	Primary Certificate for Image	Secondary Certificate for Image
2107-75BRX71	pfe_ds8k_75brx70	pfe_ds8k_75brx70

Figure 6-6 Modify Storage image

- The Storage Image properties are displayed.

Locate the Primary certificate for image section and click **Select** to assign a new primary certificate to the storage image, as shown in Figure 6-7.

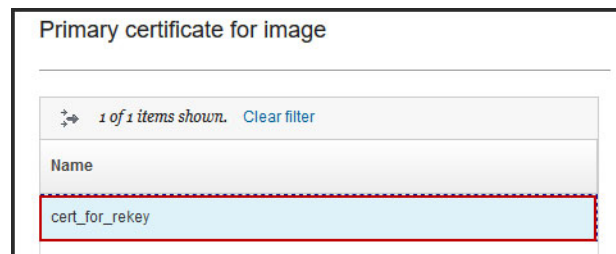


*Storage Image
2107-75BRX71

Primary certificate for image
pfe_ds8k_75brx70 Select Clear

Figure 6-7 Selecting a primary certificate

- Select the new certificate from step 4 on page 211, as shown in Figure 6-8.



Primary certificate for image

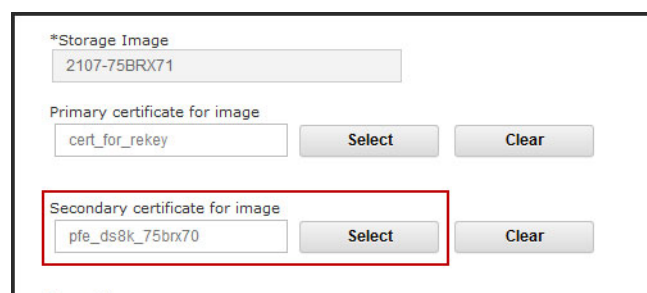
1 of 1 items shown. Clear filter

Name

cert_for_rekey

Figure 6-8 Selecting the new certificate

- Repeat steps 6 and 7 for the Secondary certificate for image, as shown in Figure 6-9.



*Storage Image
2107-75BRX71

Primary certificate for image
cert_for_rekey Select Clear

Secondary certificate for image
pfe_ds8k_75brx70 Select Clear

Figure 6-9 Selecting a secondary certificate

9. After the new certificate is assigned as a primary and secondary image certificate, click **Modify Storage Image**, as shown in Figure 6-10.

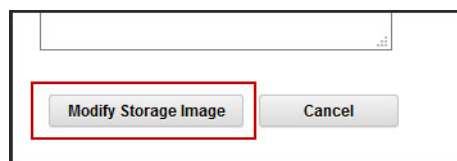


Figure 6-10 Modify Storage Image option

The Storage Image now shows the new assigned certificate as Primary and Secondary, as shown in Figure 6-11.

No filter applied		
Storage Images	Primary Certificate for Image	Secondary Certificate for Image
2107-75BRX71	cert_for_rekey	cert_for_rekey

Figure 6-11 New certificates for Image

10. Ensure that all modifications made to the Security Key Lifecycle Manager in the previous steps are replicated to all redundant Security Key Lifecycle Manager instances before moving on to DS8000 configuration:
 - If Non-Incremental remote replication is enabled, go to the **Replication configuration** menu and manually replicate, as described in step 5 on page 95, and wait for replication to complete before configuring DS8000.
 - If Incremental remote replication is enabled, go to the **Replication configuration** menu and manually replicate, as described in step 5 in “Creating a backup” on page 92, and wait for replication to complete before configuring DS8000.
 - In StandAlone with manual replication environments, if no backup was created, create one now, as described in “Backup and restore” on page 92. Restore the new backup to all clones prior to configuring DS8000.
 - In Multi-Master environments, the certificate and devices are automatically synchronized. No action is necessary to replicate before configuring DS8000.

Rekeying the data key in the DS8000

To rekey the DK, complete the following steps:

1. Log in to the DS8000 as a user with Administrator privileges, select **Settings** → **Encryption**, and expand **Key Labels**, as shown in Figure 6-12.



Figure 6-12 Starting the Rekey Data Key function

2. Select the key label that you want to change and from the **Actions** menu, select **Modify** (see Figure 6-13).

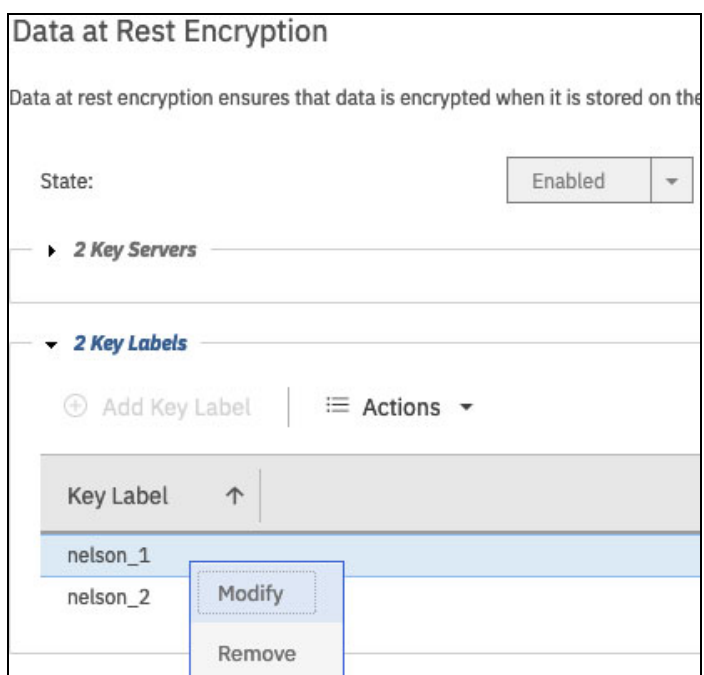


Figure 6-13 Selecting the Modify option

3. The Modify Key Label window opens, as shown in Figure 6-14. Enter the new DK label that is defined in step 4 on page 211 into the provided field, and then click **Modify**.

Figure 6-14 Modify Key Label window

4. When the rekey task is complete, the confirmation message appears.

In the Encryption window, the new key label is displayed under the Key Labels section.

6.1.2 Rekeying the data key when the KMIP protocol is used

The Rekey Data Key option is available on the DS8000.

You can use this option with the Storage Administrator role to rekey the DK. A client might want to use this function to change the DK periodically.

To rekey the DK, complete the following steps:

1. Log in to the DS8000 as a user with Administrator privileges and click **Settings** → **Encryption**.
2. Expand the Encryption key section, as shown in Figure 6-15. In the example, the current key is KEY-4d74e7f-3eebe180-3194-474d-a2af-cc96f12e999a.

Figure 6-15 Data-at-rest encryption

3. Click **Rekey** to start the Encryption Key Rekey process, as shown in Figure 6-16.

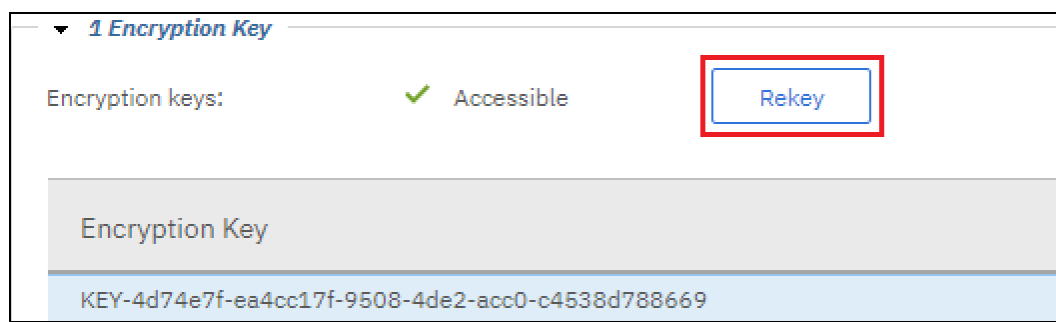


Figure 6-16 Rekeying

4. A window opens in which the rekey can be confirmed, as shown in Figure 6-17. Decide whether to delete the old keys from the server. Make your choice and click **Yes**.

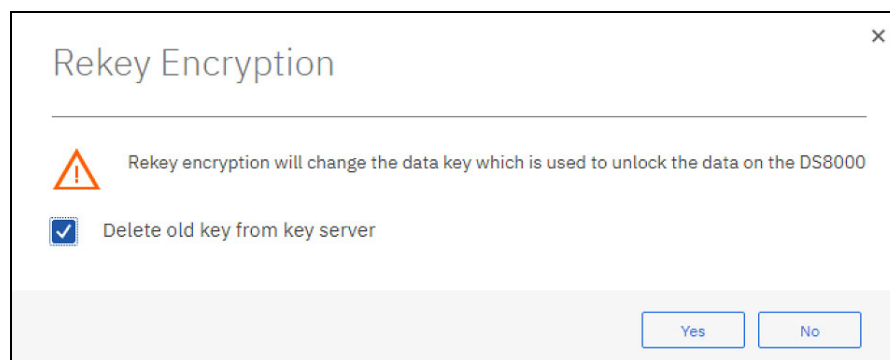


Figure 6-17 Confirming the rekey

A confirmation window is displayed to confirm a successful rekey operation, as shown in Figure 6-18.

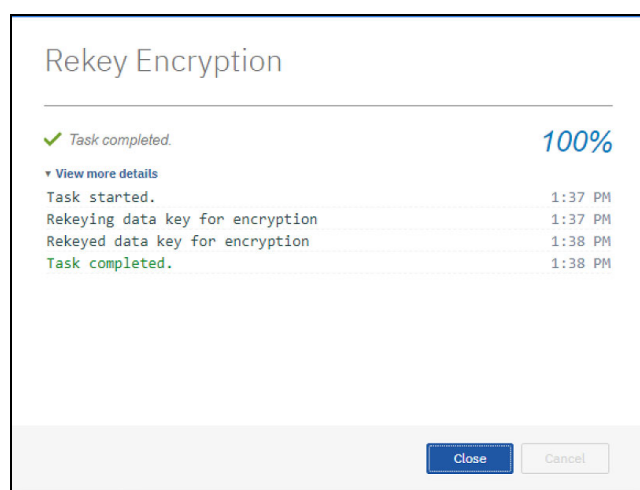


Figure 6-18 Rekey successful

5. Verify the new DK, as shown in Figure 6-19 on page 217. The new key is KEY-4d74e7f-3eebe180-3194-474d-a2af-cc96f12e999a.

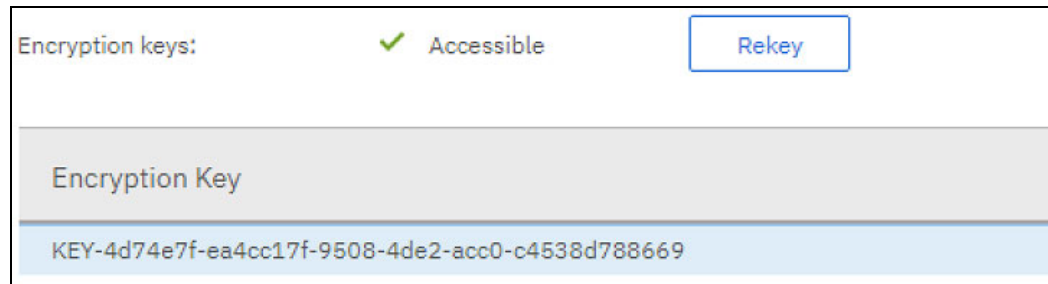


Figure 6-19 New data key

6.2 Recovery key usage and maintenance

The following recovery key-related options are available:

- ▶ Recovery key (RK) enabling
- ▶ RK disabling

The RK applies only to DAR. When the RK is enabled, the following functions are available to manage and use the RK after its creation:

- ▶ Validating or testing a recovery key
- ▶ Using the recovery key in an emergency-deadlock situation (recovery action)
- ▶ Rekeying the recovery key
- ▶ Deleting or deconfiguring a recovery key

When the RK is disabled, RK enablement is still possible. When Local Key Management is used, the RK is always disabled.

The details of each function are described in this section.

6.2.1 Validating or testing a recovery key

Part of the RK creation process is the verification of a newly created RK. Verification helps ensure that the RK was written correctly. However, after the encryption environment is operational, the RK is used only in a deadlock situation. Therefore, verify that the stored RK is still valid. The validation process can be performed occasionally and it can be included in your task list for the maintenance of the encryption environment. The Security Administrator can validate the RK at any time. Only users with the Security Administrator authority can validate the RK. Verifying the RK does not change anything in the system, and Storage Administrator approval is not needed.

To validate or test an RK, complete the following steps:

1. Log on as a user with the Security Administrator role, click **Settings** → **Encryption**, and click **Test**, as shown in Figure 6-20.

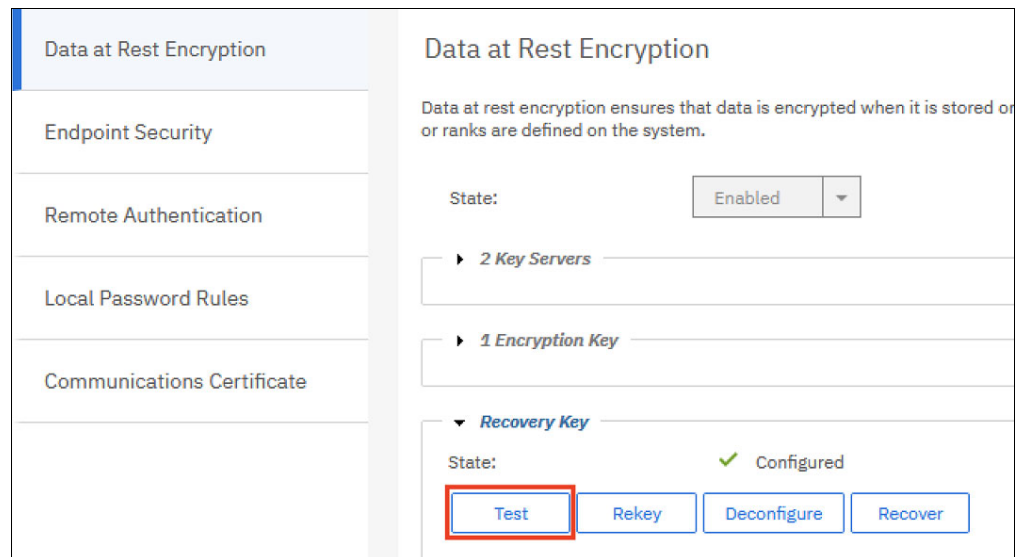


Figure 6-20 Starting the Validate/Test Recovery Key function

2. The Test Recovery Key window opens (Figure 6-21). Enter the key into the field and click **Test**.

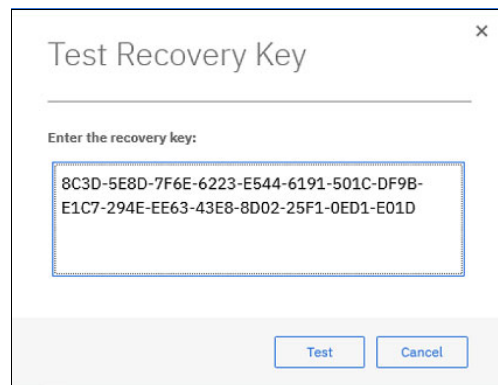


Figure 6-21 Test Recovery Key window

3. When the task is complete, the window in Figure 6-22 opens. Click **Close**.

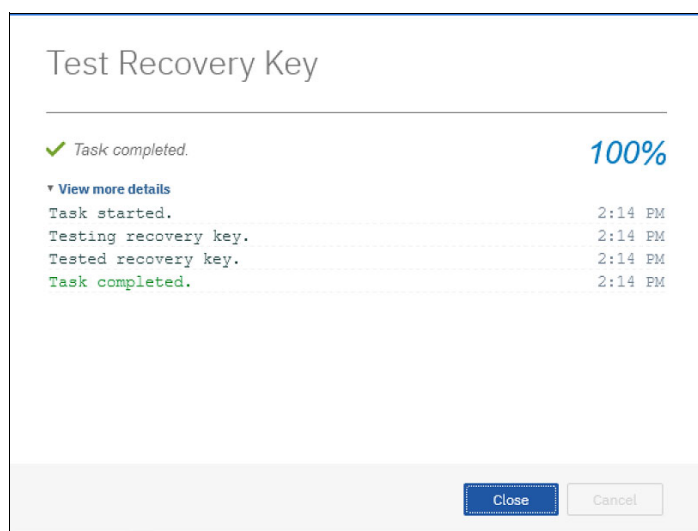


Figure 6-22 Task completed message

4. If the key is valid, a successful confirmation message is displayed, as shown in Figure 6-23. Click **OK** to return to the Encryption window.

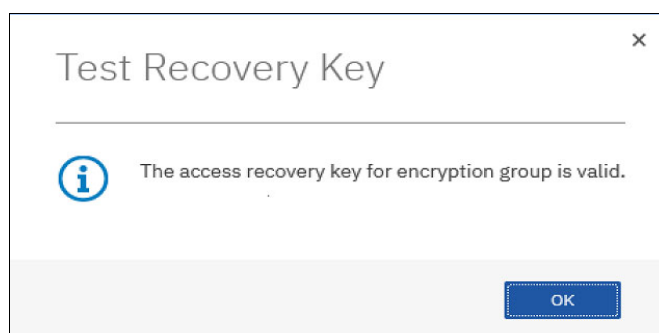


Figure 6-23 The recovery key is valid

6.2.2 Using the recovery key in an emergency-deadlock situation (recovery action)

If the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers are down or inaccessible for any reason, the DS8000 storage facility image cannot be started because without the keys the storage remains in locked mode. In this situation, the following choices are available:

- ▶ Repair at least one of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers or its network connectivity to serve the necessary key for the DS8000.
- ▶ Start the recovery process to unlock the DS8000 and to enable the volumes to be accessible again.

Consider the first option and check the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers status first. Attempt to fix the problem with key servers if the problem is not complex, and if you have time to meet your service-level agreement (SLA). Otherwise, use the RK to start the process to unlock DS8000 volumes.

Simulating an IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager failure

This section describes a real-life example to demonstrate how deadlock recovery works. You can use this scenario soon after implementing encryption in your environment to test and document system recovery in a deadlock situation.

Complete the following steps:

1. Shut down all IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers that are connected to the DS8000.
2. Check the key server status from the DS8000 Storage Manager GUI by clicking **Settings** → **Encryption** and expand the key servers section. The state of each server should change to *Inaccessible*, as shown in Figure 6-24.

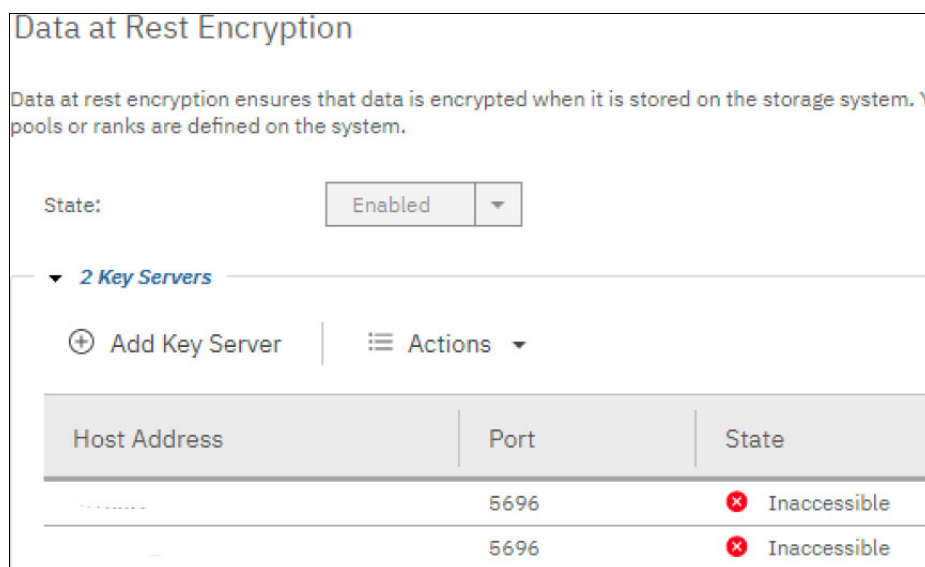


Figure 6-24 The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers status is *Inaccessible*

The Encryption keys status is still *Accessible* because the keys are stored in the DS8000 cache. However, if you power off and then on the DS8000, the encryption keys are removed from the cache. The only way to access the DS8000 data is by obtaining the key from one of the defined IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers.

The DS8000 HMC monitors the availability of the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers. The connection is verified every 5 minutes.

If the HMC detects an outage of a key server, the BE14EAF1 SRC is reported (see Figure 6-25), which is only an early notification. When the outage exceeds the 4-hour limit, the BE14EAF2 error is reported as a call-home event; therefore, both the client and IBM are alerted of this incident.

Manage Serviceable Events - Serviceable Event Details

Selected FRU

Actions

The upper table shows detailed information about the selected serviceable event. The lower table shows the FRU pulldown to display more information.

Serviceable event detailed attributes:

Field Name	Value
Problem number	621
Reference code	BE14EAF1
System reference code	BE14EAF1
Status	Open
First reported time	Sep 29, 2009 1:24:02 PM
Last reported time	Sep 29, 2009 1:44:36 PM
Primary data event timestamp	Sep 29, 2009 1:24:02 PM
Serviceable event text	HMC=7978PEN*KDZBPK: "DS8000 management console is unable to connect to
Event severity	0
Reporting partition name	unknown

FRUs associated with this serviceable event:

Select	Part number	Class	FRU description	Location code
<input type="radio"/>	MAP4980	Isolate procedure		MAP4980
<input type="radio"/>	MAP4980	Symbolic procedure		EKM_ID='1' at IP_Address='badtklm.tucson.ibm.com'

Cancel

Help

Figure 6-25 BE14EAF1 SRC on DS8000 HMC

The IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers are accessed only when the key is required by the DS8000 (excluding the heartbeat verification).

Usually, this situation occurs when the DS8000 is starting, but several of the reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) functions, such as Concurrent Code Load (CCL), also trigger a key retrieval from IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key server. The simplest way to reach this point is to turn off the DS8000 by using the DS8000 HMC GUI.

By starting the DS8000 again while the key servers are still down, you notice that the initialization progress is slower. The reason is that some warm starts are initiated to configure the storage devices.

In addition, the DS8000 waits 10 minutes for the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers to become available. However, without getting the necessary keys from the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager servers, the configuration phase fails and the DS8000 must give up and report the failure.

Starting the recovery process

When none of the defined IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers are accessible, the recovery process is started to regain access to the DS8000 data.

To start the recovery process, complete the following steps:

1. Log on to DS8000 GUI as a user with Security Administrator authority and click **Settings** → **Encryption**. As shown in Figure 6-28 (the figures are from the DS GUI R8.5, but the process is the same), the Encryption keys status is Inaccessible because of the broken communication between DS8000 and IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers. Click **Recover** to start the recovery process by using the RK.

The screenshot displays the DS8000 GUI interface for key management. At the top, there is a table titled 'Key Servers' with columns: Host Address, Port, State, and Type. Two entries are listed, both with a red 'x' icon and the state 'Inaccessible'. Below this table, the '1 Encryption Key' section shows 'Encryption keys: Inaccessible' with a warning triangle icon. A box displays the 'Encryption Key' value: KEY-4d74e7f-ba1db885-9ca3-49a7-b33c-94454a57eb3e. The 'Recovery Key' section shows 'State: Configured' with a green checkmark icon. At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Test', 'Rekey', 'Deconfigure', and 'Recover'. The 'Recover' button is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

Host Address	Port	State	Type
9.155.121.33	5696	Inaccessible	KMIP compatible
9.155.112.32	5696	Inaccessible	KMIP compatible

▼ 1 Encryption Key

Encryption keys: ▲ Inaccessible

Encryption Key ↑

KEY-4d74e7f-ba1db885-9ca3-49a7-b33c-94454a57eb3e

▼ Recovery Key

State: ✓ Configured

Test Rekey Deconfigure Recover

Figure 6-28 Starting the recovery process

2. The Recover Storage System window opens (see Figure 6-29). The recovery process requires the valid RK. Enter the key into the input field (uppercase characters with dash separation) and click **Recover**.

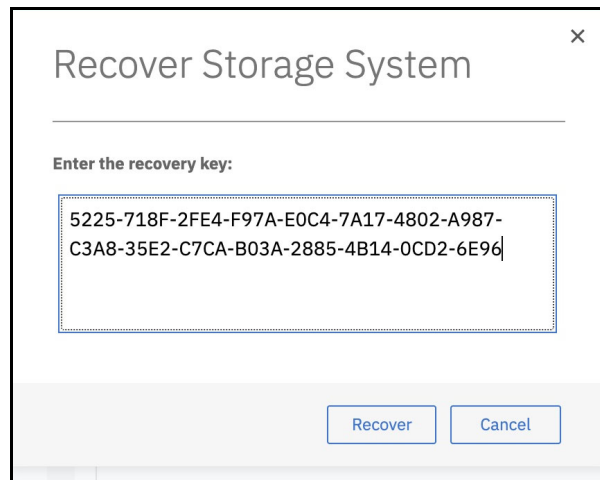
A dialog box titled "Recover Storage System" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title is a horizontal line. Underneath, the text "Enter the recovery key:" is displayed. Below this text is a text input field containing the recovery key: "5225-718F-2FE4-F97A-E0C4-7A17-4802-A987-C3A8-35E2-C7CA-B03A-2885-4B14-0CD2-6E96". At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Recover" and "Cancel".

Figure 6-29 Entering the recovery key

3. A task completion message is displayed when the recovery task completes.

Figure 6-30 shows that the RK has a pending authorization request that is addressed to the Storage Administrator user.

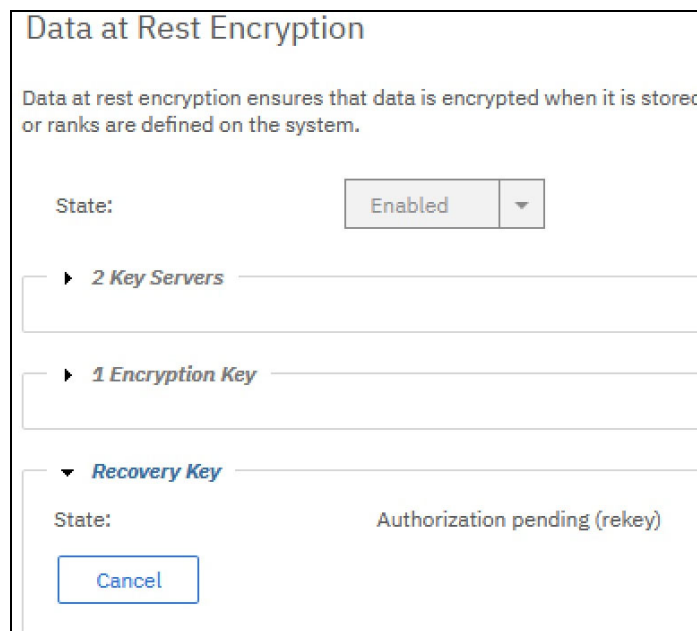
A window titled "Data at Rest Encryption". Below the title is a descriptive text: "Data at rest encryption ensures that data is encrypted when it is stored or ranks are defined on the system." Below this text is a "State:" label followed by a dropdown menu showing "Enabled" with a downward arrow. Below the dropdown are three expandable sections: "2 Key Servers", "1 Encryption Key", and "Recovery Key". The "Recovery Key" section is expanded, showing a "State:" label followed by the text "Authorization pending (rekey)". Below this text is a "Cancel" button.

Figure 6-30 Requesting the recovery authorization pending state

- At this stage, the user with Storage Administrator authority must approve this recovery request. Therefore, log on as a Storage Administrator and click **Settings** → **Encryption**. Expand the **Recovery Key Authorization pending (initiate recovery)** section. Two options are available: Authorize and Decline (see Figure 6-31).

2 Key Servers

▼ 1 Encryption Key

Encryption keys: ⚠ Inaccessible Rekey

Encryption Key

KEY-4d74e7f-ba1db885-9ca3-49a7-b33c-94454a57eb3e

▼ Recovery Key

State: Authorization pending (initiate recovery)

Authorize Decline

Figure 6-31 Starting the authorize recovery key update process

- The recovery process is now completed and you are logged off because of the DS8000 restart process.

You can follow the restart process by viewing the DS8000 status messages at the HMC (see Figure 6-32).

S ^	Name ^	Status ^	Availabl Process Units ^	Available Memory (GB) ^	Reference Code ^
<input type="radio"/>	Server-9117-MMA-SN106D7F4	⚠ Operating	0	0.625	
<input type="radio"/>	SF75LY980ESS01	⚠ Running			Starting kernel
<input type="radio"/>	Server-9117-MMA-SN106D824	Operating	0	0.625	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	SF75LY980ESS11	Running			Starting kernel
Total: 4 Filtered: 4 Selected: 1					

Figure 6-32 Storage facility image restart is in progress

- Depending on the DS8000 configuration, you must wait several minutes to finish the initialization. When it is running, log on with as a Storage Administrator user and click **Settings** → **Encryption**. The Encryption keys status changed to the Accessible state, which means that the DS8000 volumes are online and accessible from hosts (see Figure 6-33).

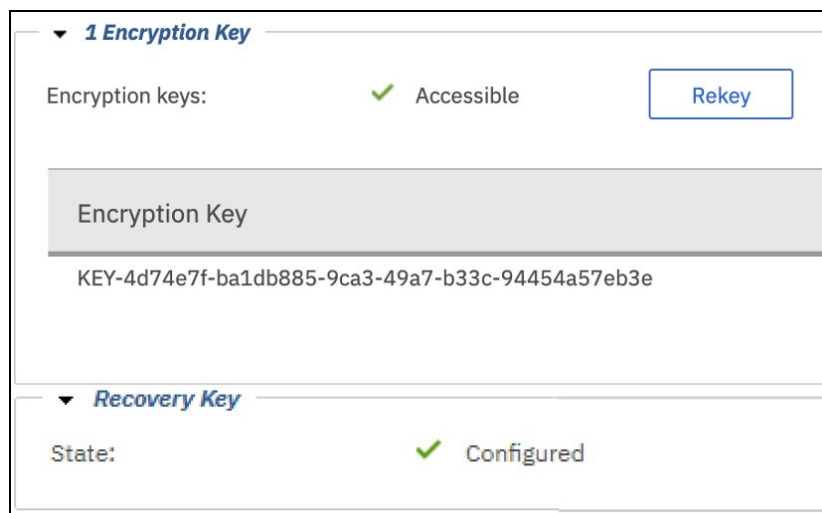


Figure 6-33 Encryption keys are accessible

Important: This operation is not permanent. The recovered DS8000 is unlocked only until the next power cycle. However, while the system is running, you have time to repair the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers and the communication links between key servers and DS8000. If all the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager key servers are lost forever (and no backup is available), the encryption must be reenabled in the future (which is a destructive process) and all the client data must be offloaded first.

Figure 6-34 shows the flowchart and corresponding DS Command-line Interface (DS CLI) commands of the recovery process.

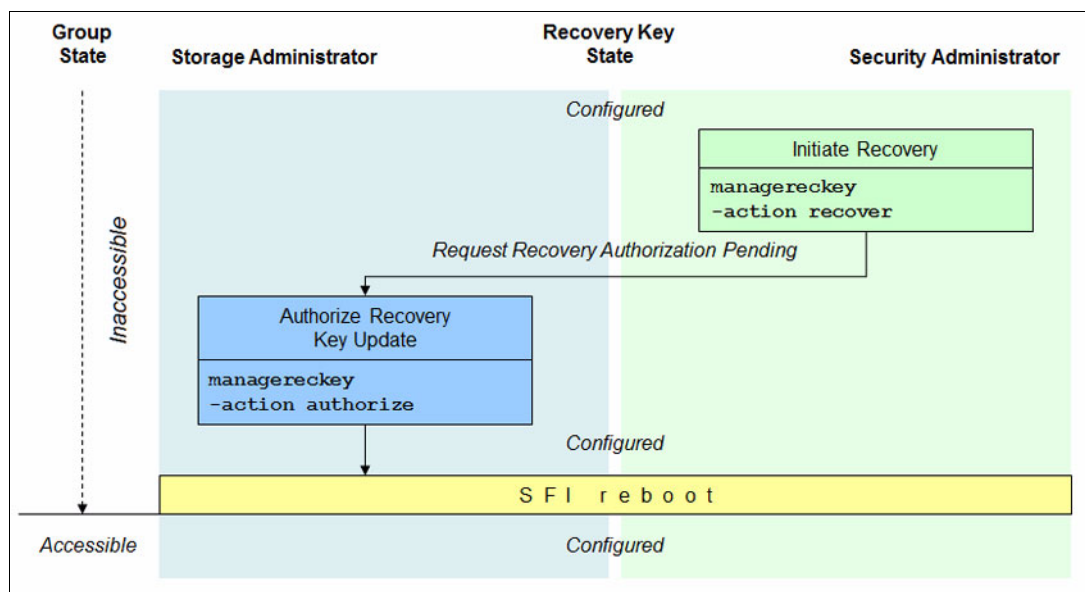


Figure 6-34 Initiate Recovery flowchart

6.2.3 Rekeying the recovery key

In the case of a lost RK or an unauthorized person is suspected to gain access to the key, the Security Administrator can generate a new RK. The old key is revoked and cannot be used anymore. The name of this process is *rekey RK*.

To rekey the RK, complete the following steps:

1. Log on to the DS8000 GUI as a user with Security Administrator authority and click **Settings** → **Encryption**. Expand the **Recovery Key** section and select **Rekey**, as shown in Figure 6-35.

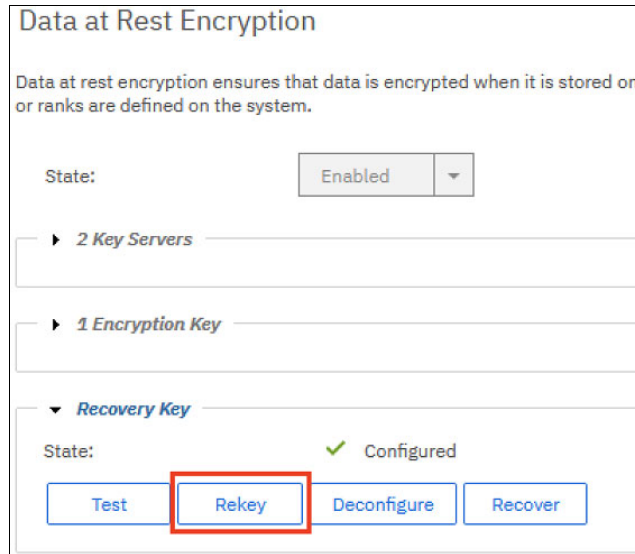


Figure 6-35 Rekeying recovery key

2. The rekey task starts. After it completes, the task completion message displays (see Figure 6-36). Click **Close** to continue.

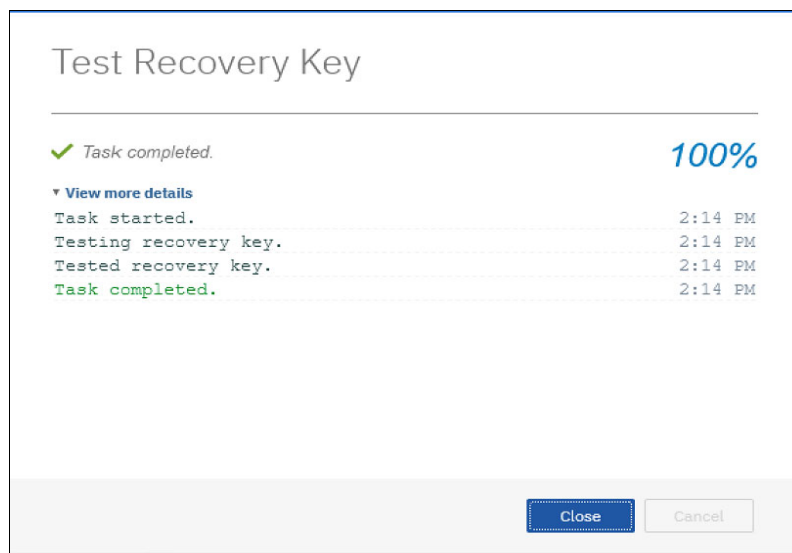


Figure 6-36 Task completion message

3. The next window (see Figure 6-37) displays the newly generated RK. Record the key (select and copy). It is required for validation in step 4. Click **Rekey**.

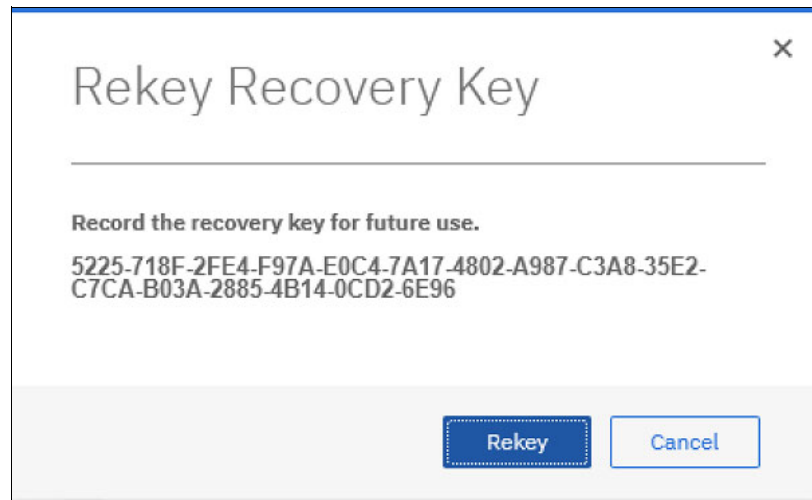


Figure 6-37 Rekey Recovery Key is generated message

4. Although the new key replaces the old one, do not destroy the old key yet because the old key is still active until the Storage Administrator approves the new RK. The process is similar to the process of creating a key (see "Creating the recovery key" on page 160).
Verify that the new key is written correctly by entering the key text into the input field and clicking **Test** (see Figure 6-38).

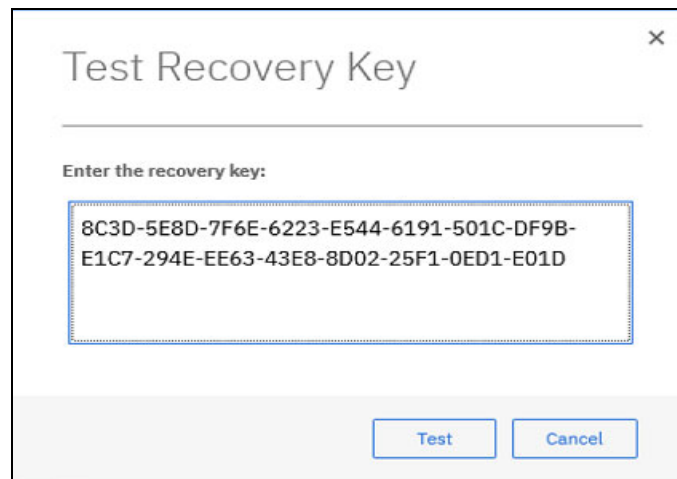


Figure 6-38 Entering rekey recovery key

- When the RK verification task completes, the confirmation message displays (see Figure 6-39). Click **Close**.



Figure 6-39 Verifying the rekey recovery key

The result is shown with instructions about the next step (see Figure 6-40).

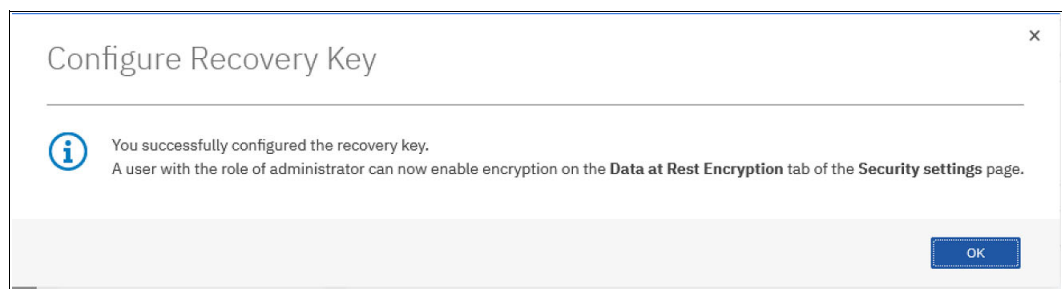


Figure 6-40 Configure Recovery Key window

- In the Encryption window (see Figure 6-41), the RK is now in the Authorization pending (rekey) state, which indicates that any user with Storage Administrator authority must approve this rekey request. Contact the Storage Administrator user to authorize the new RK.

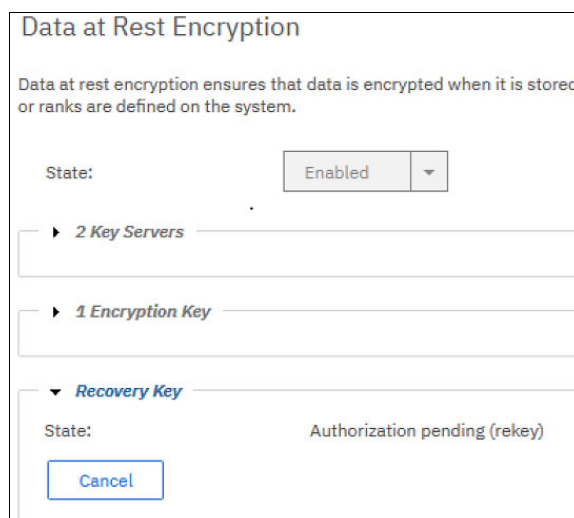


Figure 6-41 Authorization pending

7. A user with Storage Administrator authority logs on and clicks **Settings** → **Encryption**. Expand the Recovery Key section and click **Authorize**, as shown in Figure 6-42.

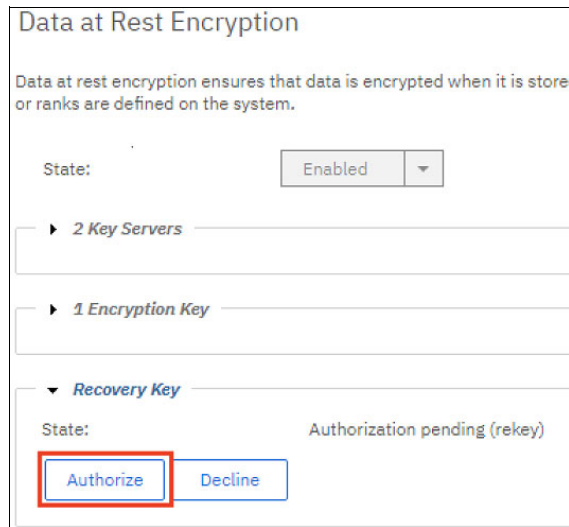


Figure 6-42 Authorizing the recovery key

8. The RK authorization task starts. After it completes, a window with the confirmation message opens, as shown in Figure 6-43. Click **Close**.

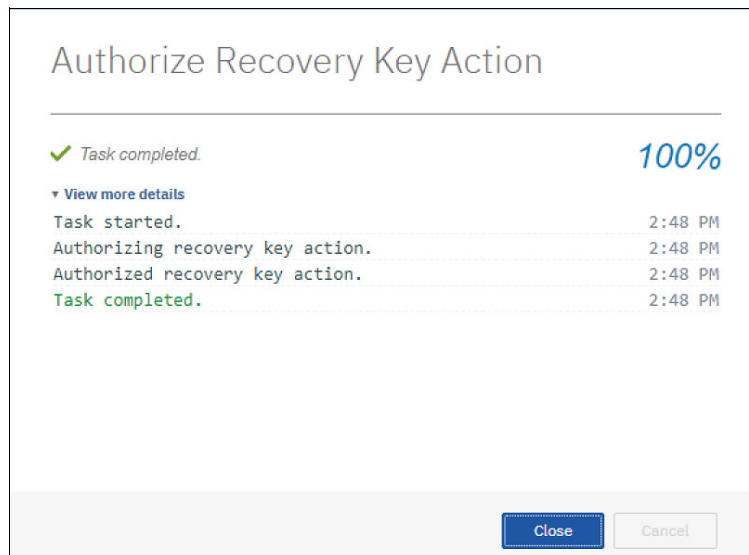


Figure 6-43 Task completion message

Now, only the new RK is valid. The old key is revoked. The state of the key changes back to a Configured state, as shown in Figure 6-44.

Data at Rest Encryption

Data at rest encryption ensures that data is encrypted wh
or ranks are defined on the system.

State: Enabled

2 Key Servers

1 Encryption Key

Recovery Key

State: Configured

Figure 6-44 Recovery key configured

The flowchart of the rekey RK process is shown in Figure 6-45. The corresponding DS CLI commands are also provided.

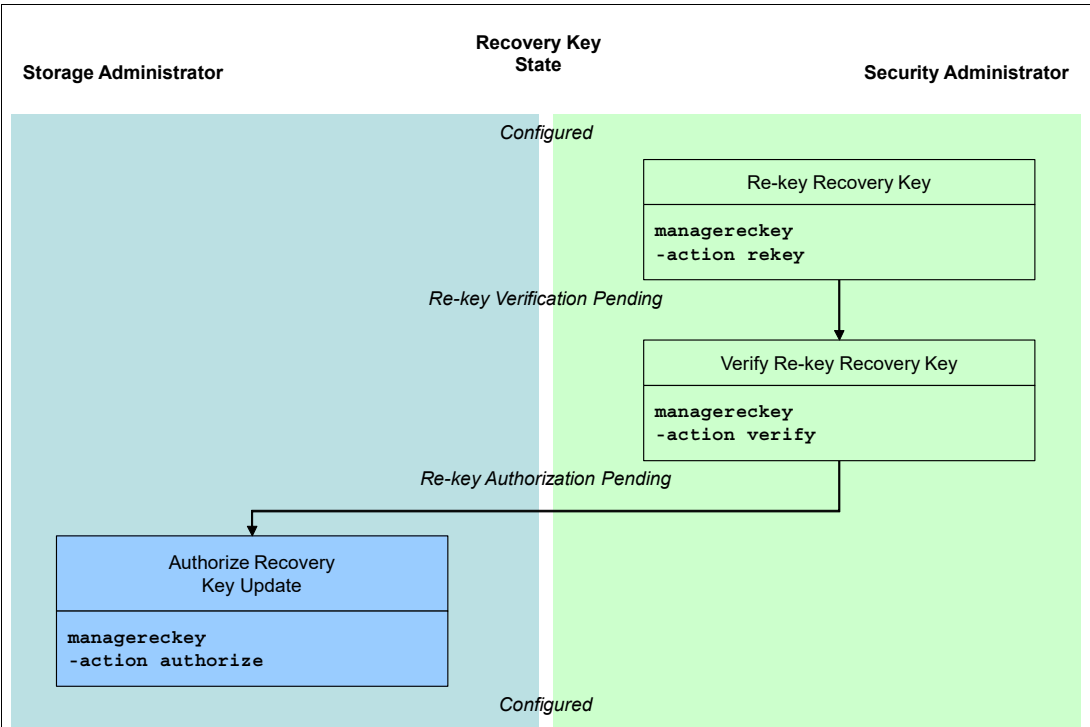


Figure 6-45 Rekey recovery key flowchart

6.2.4 Deleting or deconfiguring a recovery key

Deleting the RK might be needed only if the client wants to convert an encryption-enabled DS8000 to encryption-disabled mode. As a prerequisite, the encryption must be disabled; that is, delete all DS8000 volumes, ranks, and extent pools.

To delete or deconfigure an RK, complete the following steps:

1. Log on to the DS8000 GUI as a user with Security Administrator authority and click **Settings** → **Encryption**. Click **Deconfigure**, as shown in Figure 6-46.



Figure 6-46 Deleting or deconfiguring a recovery key

2. The Deconfigure Recovery Key task starts. After it completes, the window with the confirmation message opens, as shown in Figure 6-47. Click **Close**.

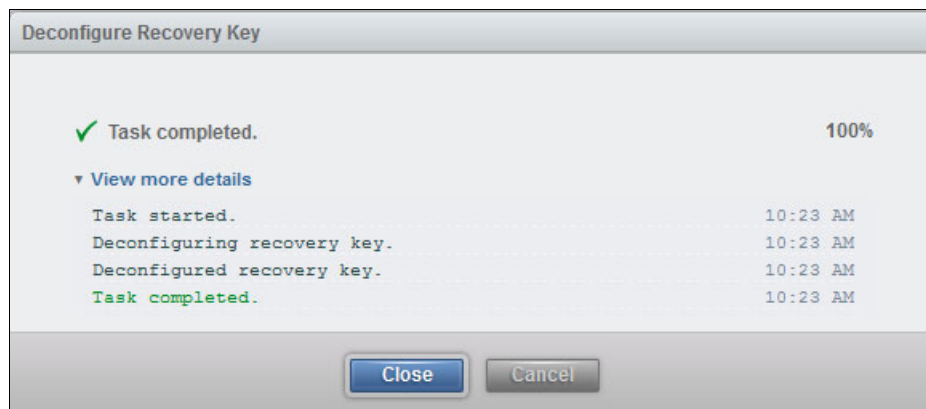


Figure 6-47 Deconfigure Recovery Key window

Figure 6-48 shows that the Recovery Key State changed to a Deconfigure Key Authorization Pending state.



Figure 6-48 Deconfigure key authorization pending

3. The system is waiting for a Storage Administrator to authorize this request. A user with the Storage Administrator authority logs on and clicks **Settings** → **Encryption**. Expand the **Recovery Key** section and click **Authorize**. This action completes the process of deleting RK. The encryption is disabled and starting from this state, non-encrypted arrays, and ranks can be created on this storage system.

Figure 6-49 shows the flowchart and the corresponding DS CLI commands of the delete RK process.

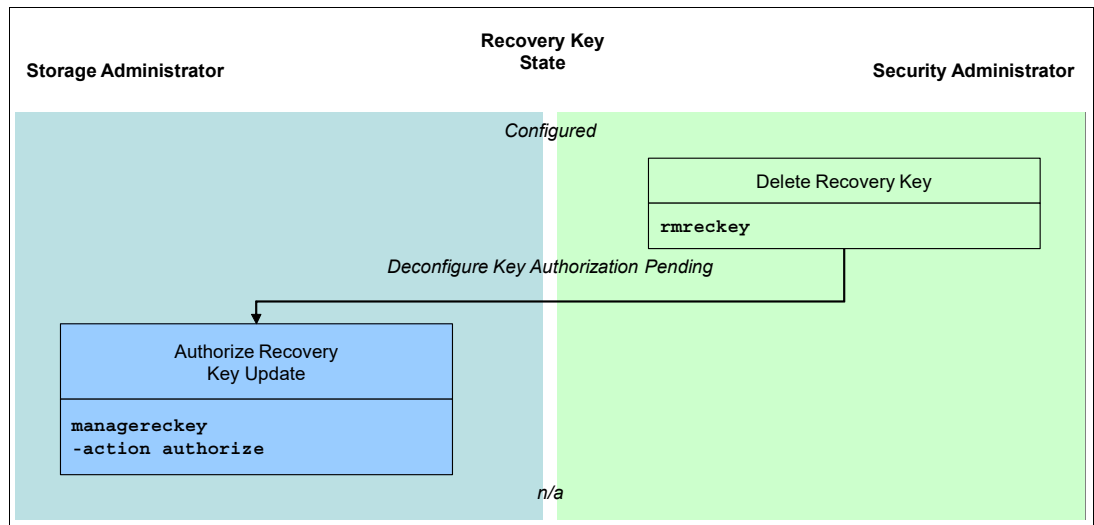


Figure 6-49 Delete recovery key flowchart

6.3 Recovery key state summary

This chapter introduced RK functions. Usually, the RK has multiple temporary states. Figure 6-50 summarizes the possible RK states and their relationships.

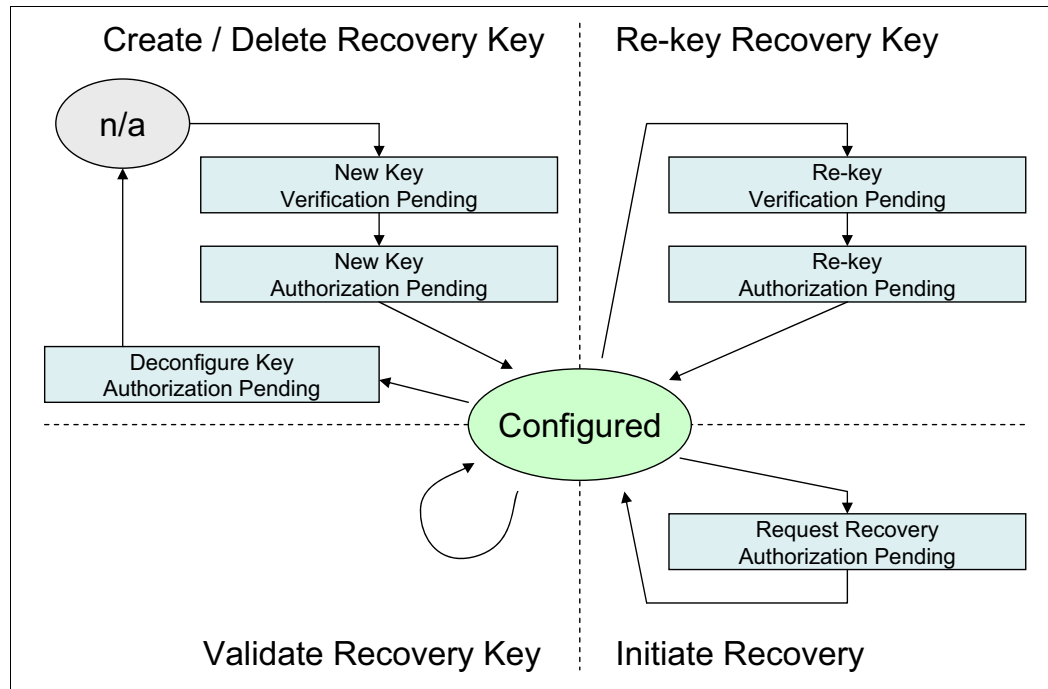


Figure 6-50 Recovery key states overview



Local key management

Local key management was introduced in DS8000 Release 9.2. It provides key management for data-at-rest (DAR) encryption without using external key managers. With DS8000 Release 10, local key management is part of the DS8A00 Base Function license.

For a small enterprise in which only one or two DS8000 storage servers exist, supporting external key servers can result in cost and management concerns.

Setting up and running an external key management environment that handles these few keys and certificates can also incur overhead and lead to even more management, maintenance, and cost. The key servers must be kept current with fixes and patches to prevent security breaches.

All keys and certificates in the environment must also be kept in sync between at least two key servers and another backup of the keys and certificates, and the key servers must be maintained.

However, in larger environments with multiple DS8000 Storage Systems or other storage systems, such as FlashSystem or tape, the IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager or other supported external key management encryption is still a best practice.

T

Important: DAR encryption without external key servers (local key management) has been available since DS8000 Release 9.2. With DS8A00 Release 10, it is part of the DS8000 Base License of a new system. For DS8900, the option to use this feature must be selected during the initial order process of the DS8000 because it cannot be activated by using a license function later.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ▶ 7.1, “Overview” on page 236
- ▶ 7.2, “Implementing local encryption” on page 241

7.1 Overview

Local key management for DS8000 provides DAR encryption and a key management solution to minimize the risk of exposure and reduce operational costs. It is simple to configure and offers good security for data on disk, even when a drive is physically removed with the intent of stealing the data.

However, data can be compromised if the entire DS8000 storage system is stolen because the data key (DK) is stored in the DS8000 central processing servers.

Table 7-1 lists the threats that local key management protects against with DS8A00 Release 10.

Table 7-1 Local key management protection with DS8A00 Release 10

Threat	Security	Details	Justification
Data drive theft or failure	Encryption	Drive locks on power loss.	N/A.
Data and CEC drive theft or failure	Encryption	The encrypted DK is stored on the CEC drive.	Customer provides physical security.

Note: Although local encryption is effective for many scenarios, it cannot protect against the theft of the entire DS8000 Storage System. However, external encryption offers extra security by keeping the encryption keys separate from the Storage System. Even if the DS8000 is stolen, external encryption, with its keys stored on a separate server, prevents unauthorized access to the encrypted data.

The DS8900 Storage System uses local key obfuscation of the DK, so DS8900 does not protect against a *data drive + CEC drive* theft.

DS8000 Storage Systems should operate autonomously in data centers without human intervention, especially during startup. To help ensure data security, the DS8900 model employs a technique that is called *local key obfuscation*. This technique involves scrambling the data encryption key (DEK) on the Storage System itself. This way, even if someone gains unauthorized access to the system, the key remains protected.

DS8A00 Release 10 takes a different approach. It uses an encrypted main key that is generated by a secure component within the system that is called the *CEC service processor*. This key is used to encrypt data on the storage system. In summary, both the DS8900 and DS8A00 offer robust data protection, but the DS8A00's encrypted main key provides an extra layer of security and centralized management.

Important: Local key management is available for DAR encryption only. It does not support IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security Encryption or TCT Encryption.

As with for DAR encryption with external key managers, the DS8000 ranks must all be encrypted or non-encrypted for DAR encryption with local key management. As a best practice, complete an environment verification process or solution assurance to help ensure that best practices regarding the configuration of the encryption solution are taken. This verification can be requested from IBM Lab Services or completed by the client's staff.

7.1.1 Concept and design

In this section, we describe at a high level how the DS8000 local key management creates the encryption keys by comparing it to the external key management.

External key manager

Figure 7-1 shows the key delivery process from an external key manager to the encrypted drives in the DS8000 (for more information, see Chapter 3, “IBM DS8000 encryption mechanisms” on page 31). An external key server creates the DK. It also provides physical and logical separation of key encrypting keys (KEKs) from the system that uses them to protect against these two attack vectors.

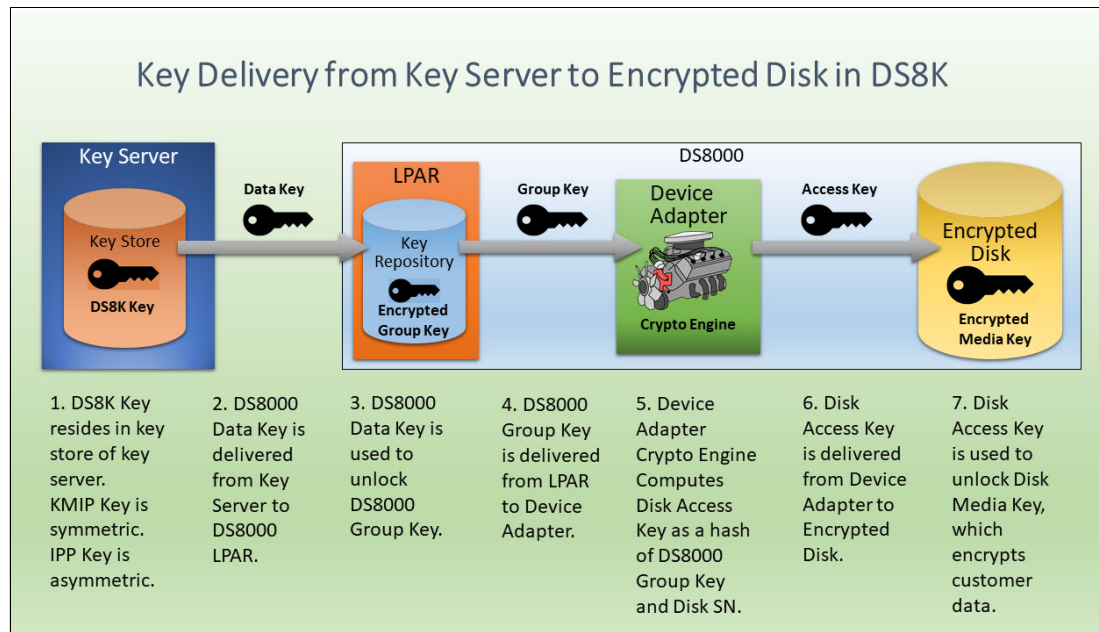


Figure 7-1 Key delivery from the external key manager

For more information about external key management and creating external keys, see 3.1, “DS8000 data-at-rest encryption” on page 32.

Local key manager

Figure 7-2 shows the local key creation and delivery to the encrypted disk in DS8000 Release 10 system.

Note: The DS8900 system uses an obfuscated DK in the logical partition (LPAR), so a DS8900 does not provide protection against a “data drive + CEC drive” theft.

The DK creation occurs within the DS8000 system. The subsequent steps are the same as the steps that are shown for the external key server method.

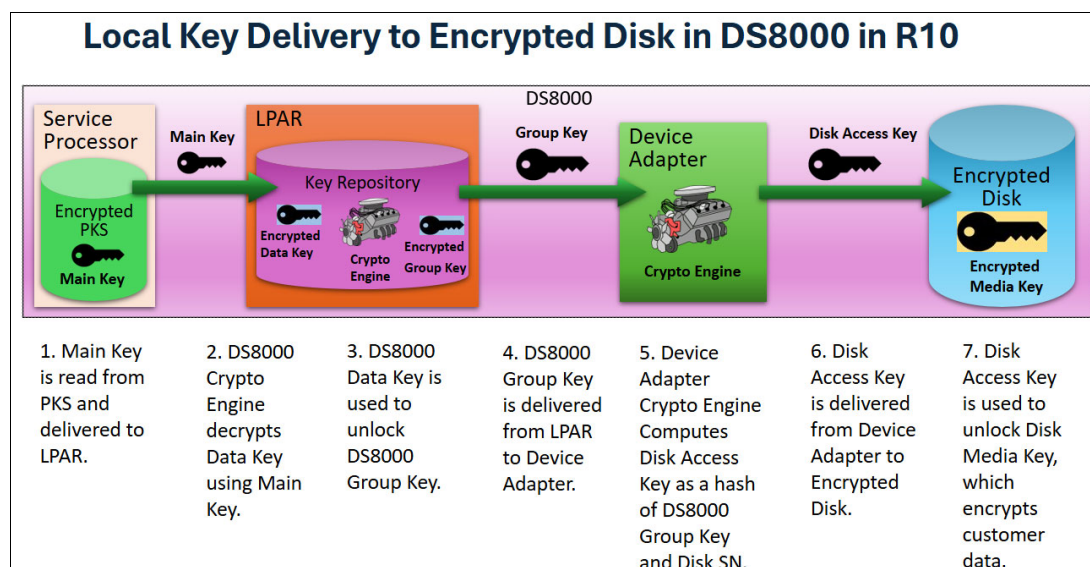


Figure 7-2 Key delivery from the local key manager in a DS8000 Release 10 system

No external key managers are required to provide the DK. Key management is a DS8000 internal process. After a power shutdown, when the DS8000 restarts, it automatically obtains the DK from its own key repository (KR). No manual intervention is required. Within DS8000 Release 10 systems, the encrypted DK is generated by using a Main Key that is stored in the Platform KeyStore (PKS) of the IBM Power9 service processor. For more information about PKS, see [Platform KeyStore](#).

Key creation

The following steps occur during local encryption activation:

1. The user is creating the key group by using **-keyproto1 LOCAL** and **-type DAR**.
2. The DS8000 Hardware Management Console (HMC) Java crypto engine creates a DK by using the Main Key.
3. The DS8000 HMC Java crypto engine creates a group key (GK).
4. Both keys are transferred to the DS8000 LPARs (servers that are also known as central processor complexes (CPCs)).
5. The DS8000 Device Adapter (DA) crypto engine creates drive access keys that are derived from the GK.
6. The GK is wrapped by the DK and stored as encrypted in the DS8000 LPAR KR.
7. The DK is stored obfuscated in the LPAR KR.

Key repository robustness

With external key managers, a set of such managers helps ensure the high availability of the DK for the DS8000. Subsequent functions also ensure key and certificate redundancy and the key availability after a disaster or any other event in which a key, certificate, key manager, or even the key management environment can be lost or fail.

Local key management must ensure the same level of high availability and disaster recovery (HADR) of the DK, which is stored in the internal KR of the DS8000 LPARs (CPCs). It achieves this KR robustness by mirroring the KR eight times, as shown in Figure 7-3. The DS8000 reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) features help ensure KR availability during a service action, such as a hardware replacement.

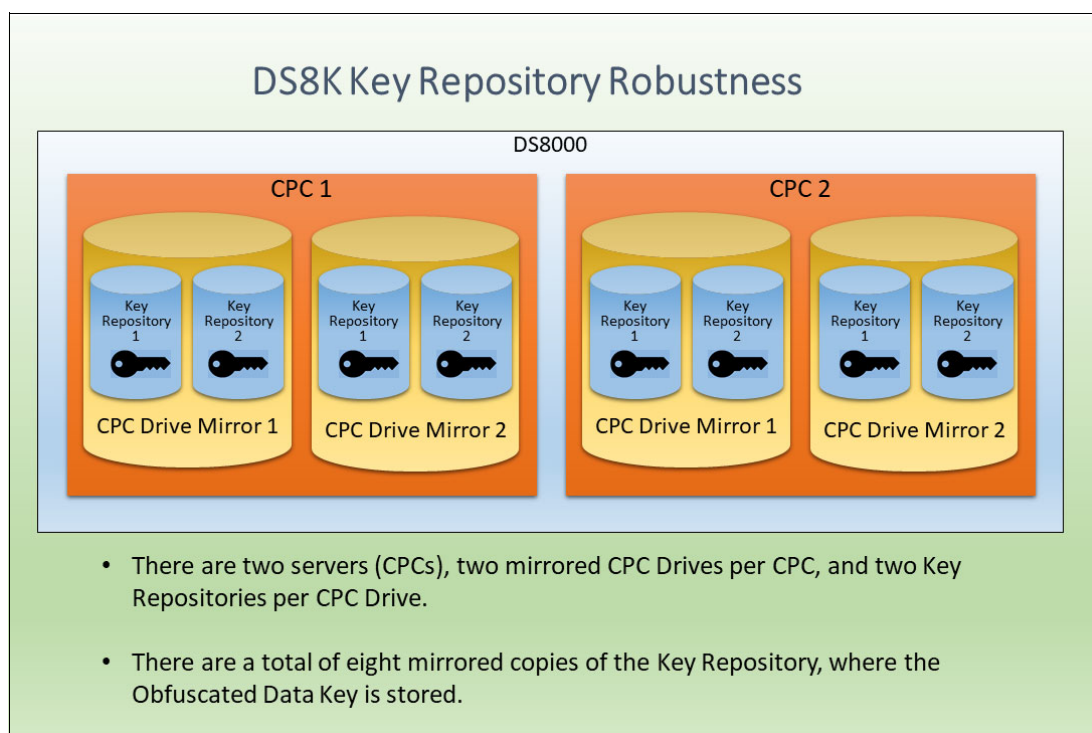


Figure 7-3 DS8000 key repository robustness

For the robustness of the Main Key in a DS8000 Release 10 system, each PKS contains two copies of the Main Key, which means that four mirrored copies exist in a DS8A00, as shown in Figure 7-4.

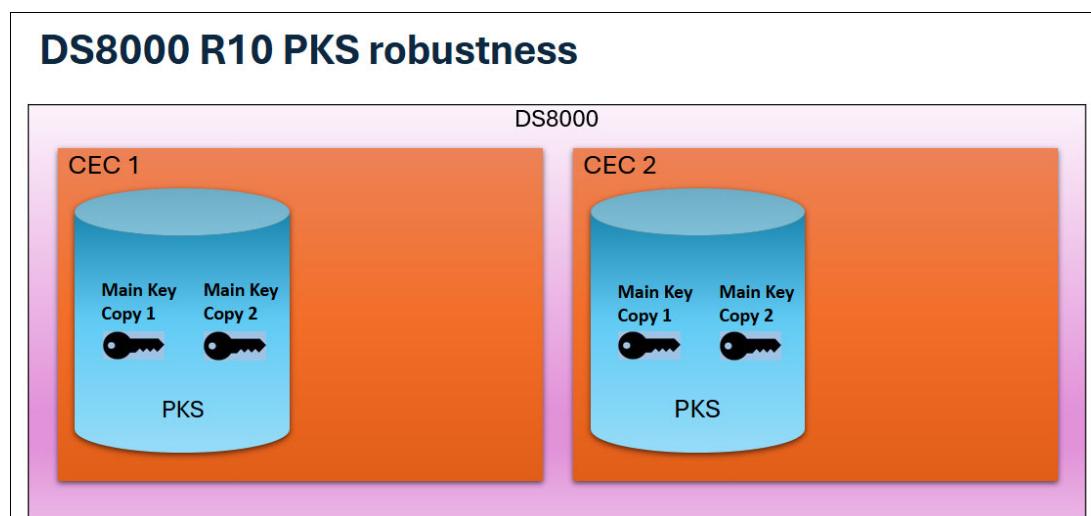


Figure 7-4 DS8A00 R10 PKS robustness for the Main Key

Comparing local and external key management

Table 7-2 shows a comparison between local and external key management. Both types of management features have advantages and disadvantages. Local key management does not protect against a machine theft because the DK, although obfuscated, is stored on the Storage System servers.

Table 7-2 Local versus external key management DS8000 Release 10 (DS8A00)

Description	Local key management	External key management
Must purchase key servers?	No	Yes
Must purchase local encryption?	Yes	No
Must configure and maintain key server?	No	Yes
Where is DK stored and generated?	DS8000	Key Server
Protects against data drive theft?	Yes	Yes
Protects against data and CEC drive theft?	Yes	Yes
Protects against entire DS8K theft?	No	Yes
Protects against entire DS8K theft and key server theft?	No	No
Supports TCT encryption?	No	Yes
Supports endpoint security?	No	Yes
Must maintain a recovery key (RK)?	No	Yes ^a
Separation of duties?	No	Yes

Description	Local key management	External key management
Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) 256-bit encryption?	Yes	Yes
FIPS 140-2 Level 1 capable? ^b	Yes	Yes

a. The RK for external encryption can be disabled or configured before making the encryption implementation and initial logical configuration. It is a customer decision. As a best practice, configure an RK.

b. See <https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/sklm-and-fips-140-2-level-3-compliance-0>.

7.2 Implementing local encryption

Local DAR encryption must be enabled after the DS8000 is physically installed by the IBM Support representative and before any logical configuration is done. The activation is a DS CLI-only procedure and is not supported by the DS GUI. It is supported by an embedded command-line interface (CLI).

If you enable local encryption, external key servers cannot be configured for DAR encryption at the same time. However, you can have external key managers configured at the same time for TCT encryption and IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security.

Switching between internal and external key management is not supported by the DS8000. Therefore, you cannot have DAR encryption with key managers activated and switch to DAR encryption without key servers, or vice versa, dynamically. The switch to another encryption mechanism always requires a deactivation of the current encryption mechanism. This process is destructive.

Prerequisites

Local DAR encryption includes the following prerequisites:

- ▶ The latest DSCLI version for Release 9.2 is installed (the minimum version is 7.9.20.440).
- ▶ The DS8000 must be shipped with microcode Release 9.2 or later.
- ▶ Feature Code 0405 was ordered for a DS8900. (Note: It is part of the DS8A00 base license.)
- ▶ External DAR encryption is *not* activated.
- ▶ No logical configuration (volumes, pools, or ranks) exists.

7.2.1 Preparing for local encryption

Before activating DAR encryption without key servers, the following conditions must be reviewed by a local DSCLI administration user:

- Verify whether the latest DSCLI level is installed by running the **ver** command in DSCLI (see Example 7-1).

Example 7-1 DSCLI verification

```
dscli> ver
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:05:41 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
-
DSCLI 7.10.0.749
dscli>
```

The latest DSCLI version is available at [IBM Fix Central](#).

- Verify the microcode level by using the **lsserver** command. In the Bundle column, 89.20.x.x or higher must be displayed (see Example 7-2).

Example 7-2 DSCLI microcode level

```
dscli> lsserver -l
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:06:13 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:

ID Image ID Image Name Power Control SFI State LIC Version OS Version Bundle
Version
=====
00 1          SF78NKG40ESS01 0 online 7.10.0.749 7.3.2.112 10.0.198.0
01 1          SF78NKG40ESS11 0 online 7.10.0.749 7.3.2.112 10.0.198.0
dscli>
```

- Verify that the DS8000 is local encryption is capable (see Example 7-3). The **lskey** command includes a new line for local encryption. It must show as On. If it shows as Off, you cannot activate local encryption for your machine. If the Local Data-at-Rest Encryption line is missing and you purchased it, you might need to update your DSCLI.

Example 7-3 Verifying the local encryption

```
dscli> lskey

Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:07:15 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
Activation Key                               Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Base function                               1266.6                          A11
Copy services                               1266.6                          A11
Encryption Authorization                     on                             A11
Global Mirror (GM)                           1266.6                          A11
High Performance FICON for IBM Z (zHPF)      on                             CKD
IBM HyperPAV                                on                             CKD
IBM System Storage DS8000 Thin Provisioning on                             A11
IBM System Storage Easy Tier                  on                             A11
IBM z/OS Distributed Data Backup              on                             FB
Local Data-at-Rest Encryption              on                            A11
Metro Mirror (MM)                            1266.6                          A11
Metro/Global Mirror (MGM)                    1266.6                          A11
Operating environment (OEL)                  1266.6                          A11
Parallel access volumes (PAVs)               1266.6                          CKD
```

Point in time copy (PTC)	1266.6	A11
RMZ Resync	1266.6	CKD
Transparent Cloud Tiering	1266.6	CKD
z-synergy services	1266.6	CKD

- Verify that no external DAR encryption exists. Example 7-4 shows that no external key manager exists.

Example 7-4 Verifying that there is no external encryption

```
dscli> lskeymgr
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:08:28 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
CMUC00234I lskeymgr: No Key Manager found.
```

```
dscli> lskeygrp -l
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:08:56 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
CMUC00234I lskeygrp: No Encryption Group found.
```

Attention: You can have key groups with external key management for ENDPOINT and TCT. However, a key group for DAR prevents the activation of local encryption.

- Verify that no local configuration exists (see Example 7-5).

Example 7-5 No logical configuration exists

```
dscli> lsrank
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:11:13 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
CMUC00234I lsrank: No Rank found.
```

```
dscli> lsxextpool
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:11:29 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
CMUC00234I lsxextpool: No Extent Pool found.
```

7.2.2 Implementing local encryption

With all preparation done and all prerequisites fulfilled, local encryption can be implemented.

Activation

Local encryption activation is achieved by using the **mkkeygrp** command (see Example 7-6). It requests the data and gk from the internal logical key manager and distributes the derivatives of the GK to the drives.

Depending on the number of installed drives, creating the encryption group can take a few minutes.

Complete the following steps:

1. Create the key group 1 (see Example 7-6), which might take a few minutes.

Example 7-6 mkkeygrp LOCAL

```
dscli> mkkeygrp -keyprotocol LOCAL -type DAR 1
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:12:18 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
CMUC00358I mkkeygrp: The key server key group 1 has been created
```

2. Verify that the key group 1 was created (see Example 7-7).

Example 7-7 Group verification

```
dsccli> lskeygrp
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:14:51 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
ID state      rekeystate rekeydate datakeydate keyprotocol type name
=====
1  accessible disabled    -          09/18/2024  LOCAL      DAR  DAR_1
```

3. Verify the details of the key group 1 (see Example 7-8).

Example 7-8 Key group details

```
dsccli> showkeygrp 1
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 at 3:15:56 AM EDT IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.749 DS:
ID                                1
...
state                            accessible
...
keyprotocol                      LOCAL
...
```

In the DSGUI, you are prevented from modifying encryption when local encryption was set up by using DSCLI and pools exist (see Figure 7-5). If no pools exist, the only possible action from this DSGUI window is to disable encryption.

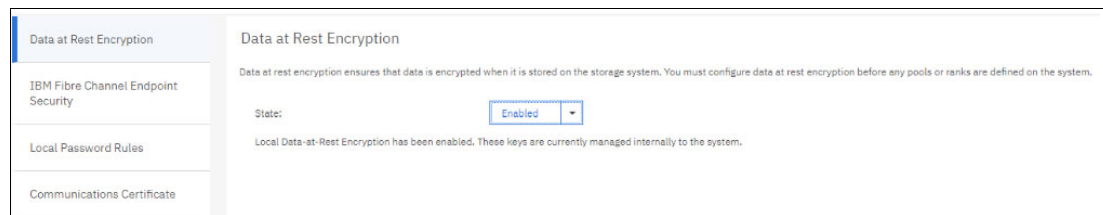


Figure 7-5 DSGUI LOCAL enabled

Now, you are ready for logical configuration; that is, create ranks, extent pools, and volumes. When you create the extent pools, you cannot disable the encryption unless you delete all volumes, ranks, and extent pools.

Another option is available to manage the encryption environment. You can rekey the DK. For more information, see “Rekey Data Key” on page 245.

In addition, DAR encryption without key managers eliminates the requirement and maintenance of an RK. During local encryption activation, an RK disable is performed automatically, as shown in Example 7-7 (rekeystate) and Figure 7-5 (*Recovery Key - State: - Disabled*).

If no pools exist yet, you can disable the local encryption from the DSGUI. If you disable it (which might occur by mistake), you can still re-enable it through the DSCLI.

However, when you disable local encryption, the system also automatically re-enables the RK. Therefore, to re-enable local encryption, you must first disable the RK. To disable the RK, log on to the DSCLI as secadmin and issue the **managereckey -action disable 1** command. Next, you must log on as storage administrator and issue the **managereckey -action authorize 1** command. Now, you can reactivate the local key protocol, as shown in Example 7-6 on page 243.

Rekey Data Key

The Rekey Data Key option is available on the DS8000.

You can use this option with the Storage Administrator role to rekey the DK. You might want to use this option to periodically change the DK; for example, if your company security policy requires it. Changing the DK with LOCAL encryption is only allowed through DSCLI.

Complete the following steps:

1. Rekey the DK by running the **managekeygrp** command (see Example 7-9).

Example 7-9 Rekeying the DK

```
dscli> managekeygrp -action rekey -key data 1
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 9:24:16 AM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.767 DS:
CMUC00429I managekeygrp: The key for key group 1 has been rekeyed.
```

2. Verify the new DK (see Example 7-10).

Example 7-10 Old versus new DK

Old DK:

```
dscli> showkeygrp 1
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 9:25:38 AM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.767 DS:
ID                                     1
numranks                             -
numpools                             -
state                                accessible
reckeystate                           disabled
reckeydate                            -
datakeydate                          09/18/2024 03:12:41 EDT
grpstatus                             -
...
```

New DK:

```
dscli> showkeygrp 1
Date/Time: September 18, 2024 9:25:38 AM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 7.10.0.767 DS:
ID                                     1
numranks                             -
numpools                             -
state                                accessible
reckeystate                           disabled
reckeydate                            -
datakeydate                          09/18/2024 09:24:18 CEST
grpstatus                             -
...
```

Abbreviations and acronyms

AES	Advanced Encryption Standard	JCE	Java Cryptography Extension
CA	certificate authority	JCEKS	Java Cryptography Extension KeyStore
CCL	Concurrent Code Load	KEK	key encrypting key
CEK	Cloud Encryption Key	KMIP	Key Management Interoperability Protocol
CLI	command-line interface	KR	key repository
CPACF	CP Assist Cryptographic Facility	KS	KeySecure
CPC	central processor complex	LEEF	Log Event Extended Format
DA	device adapter	LKM	local key manager
DAK	Device Authentication Key	LPAR	logical partition
DAR	data-at-rest	MGM	Metro/Global Mirror
DEK	data encryption key	MM	Metro Mirror
DES	Data Encryption Standard	OEL	operating environment
DK	data key	OMVS	Open MVS
DN	Distinguished Name	PAV	parallel access volume
DSM	Data Security Manager	PKS	Platform KeyStore
ECDSA	Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm	PRK	primary recovery key
ECEK	Encrypted Cloud Encryption Key	PTC	point in time copy
EDIF	encryption of data in flight	RAS	reliability, availability, and serviceability
EEDK	externally encrypted data key	RBAC	Role Based Access Control
EGK	encrypted group key	RK	recovery key
EGRK	encrypted group recovery key	RS	recovery signature
EKMF	Enterprise Key Management Foundation	RSA	Rivest-Shamir-Adleman
EPRK	encrypted primary recovery key	RVU	Resource Value Unit
FC	Fibre Channel	SAN	storage area network
FDE	Full Disk Encryption	SEDK	session encrypted data key
GID	group ID	SHA	Secure Hash Algorithm
GK	group key	SKE	Secure Key Exchange
GM	Global Mirror	SLA	service-level agreement
HADR	high availability and disaster recovery	SMF	System Management Facility
HDD	hard disk drive	SP	Special Publication
HMC	Hardware Management Console	SRK	secondary recovery key
HPFE	High Performance Flash Enclosure	SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
HSM	Hardware Security Module	TCT	Transparent Cloud Tiering
IBM	International Business Machines Corporation	TLS	Transport Layer Security
IOCDs	input/output control data set	UID	user ID
IOS	Input/Output Supervisor	UUID	universally unique identifier
IPL	initial program load	WWNN	worldwide node name
		zCX	z/OS Container Extensions

Related publications

The publications that are listed in this section are considered suitable for a more detailed description of the topics that are covered in this paper.

IBM Redbooks

The following IBM Redbooks publications provide more information about the topic in this document. They might be available in softcopy only:

- ▶ *IBM DS8000 Transparent Cloud Tiering: DS8000 Release 9.3*, SG24-8381
- ▶ *IBM Storage DS8900F Architecture and Implementation: Updated for Release 9.3.2*, SG24-8456
- ▶ *IBM Fibre Channel Endpoint Security for IBM DS8900F and IBM Z*, SG24-8455
- ▶ *IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager*, SG24-8472
- ▶ *IBM z15 Technical Introduction*, SG24-8850

You can search for, view, download, or order these documents and other Redbooks, Redpapers, web docs, drafts, and additional materials, at the following website:

ibm.com/redbooks

Other publications

IBM DS8900 Introduction and Planning Guide, GC27-9560

Online resources

The following websites are also relevant as further information sources:

- ▶ IBM DS8900 Documentation:
<https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/ds8900>
- ▶ IBM Security Guardium Key Lifecycle Manager Documentation:
<https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/sgklm>

Help from IBM

IBM Support and downloads

ibm.com/support

IBM Global Services

ibm.com/services



REDP-4500-11

ISBN 0738461938

Printed in U.S.A.

Get connected

